$v(t) = i(t)R$

$v = L\frac{di}{dt}$ $i = C\frac{dv}{dt}$

$\zeta \ \cos\theta_z \ \sigma \ \omega_n \ \omega_d \ \omega_{co} \ \omega_r$

$V_T \ Z \ Q \ V_P \ A_v \ i_C \ V_{BE} \ i_D \ V_{GS}$

eThinking
in Circuits
with PSpice©

V_{DD}

MOSFET

JFET

BJT

v_{in}

v_{out}

$+$

$-$

$v(t) = i(t)R$

$v = L\frac{di}{dt}$ $i = C\frac{dv}{dt}$

$\zeta \cos\theta_z \sigma \omega_n \omega_d \omega_{co} \omega_r$
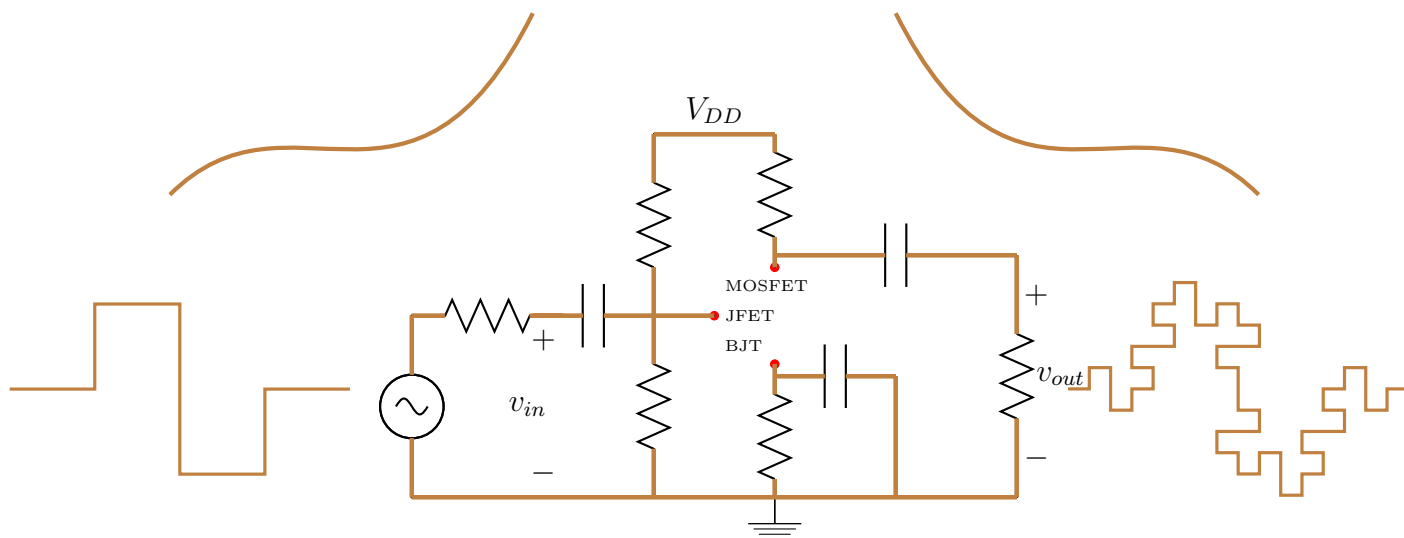
$V_T Z Q V_p A_v i_C V_{BE} i_D V_{GS}$

eThinking
in Circuits

with PSpice©

MOSFET
JFET
BJT

V_{DD}

v_{in}

v_{out}

$+$

$-$

<h1 style="text-align:center">Key Equations and Formulae</h1>

Units

G(iga)=10^9, M(ega)=10^6, K(ilo)=10^3, m(illi)=10^{-3}, μ(micro)=10^{-6}, n(ano)=10^{-9}, p(ico)=10^{-12}.

Current and Voltage

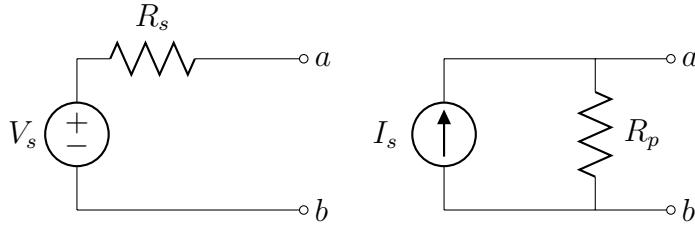<div style="text-align:center">Current has directions and voltage has polarities</div>

Element and Circuit Laws

$$v = iR, \quad v = L\frac{di}{dt}, \quad i = C\frac{dv}{dt}, \quad \sum \pm v_i = 0, \quad \sum \pm i_i = 0$$

$$\text{In series:} \quad R_{eq} = \sum R_i, \quad \text{In parallel:} \quad \frac{1}{R_{eq}} = \sum \frac{1}{R_i}$$

Note that R, Ls and $\frac{1}{Cs}$ are all resistances conceptually.

Thevenin and Norton Conversion

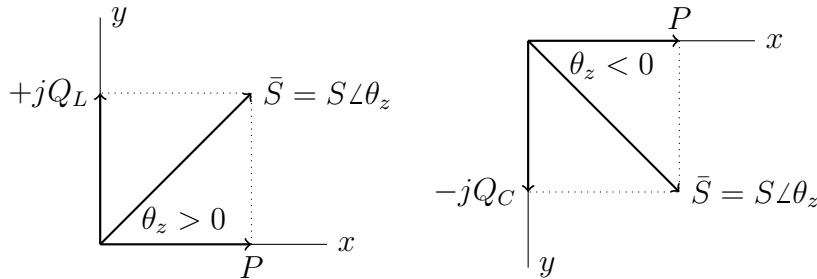$$V_s = I_s R_p, \quad I_s = \frac{V_s}{R_s}, \quad R_p = R_s$$

Impedance

$$\bar{Z}_R = R, \quad \bar{Z}_C = \frac{1}{jwC}, \quad \bar{Z}_L = jwL, \quad V_{\max} = \sqrt{2}V_{rms}, \quad \theta_z = \theta - \phi = \cos^{-1} pf$$
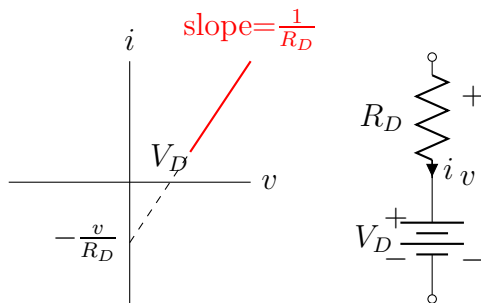
Power Triangle

$$P = V_{rms}I_{rms}\cos(\theta - \phi) = I_{rms}^2 R = \frac{V_{rms}^2 R}{Z^2}$$

$$Q = V_{rms}I_{rms}\sin(\theta - \phi) = I_{rms}^2 X = \frac{V_{rms}^2 X}{Z^2}$$

Diodes

Op-amp

Summing-point condition: $v_+ = v_-, i_s = 0$

BJT (to find Q-point)

(1) Determine V_{BB} (2) Solve for I_B using loop BE then $I_C = \beta I_B$, (3) Find V_{CE} using loop CE.

FET

Cutoff Region:	For $v_{GS} < V_{th}$, $i_D = 0$.
Triode Region (linear region):	$v_{DS} \leq v_{GS} - V_{th}$ and $v_{GS} \geq V_{th}$
	$i_D = K[2(v_{GS} - V_{th})v_{DS} - v_{DS}^2]$
Saturation Region:	$v_{DS} > v_{GS} - V_{th}$ and $v_{GS} \geq V_{th}$
	$i_D = K(v_{GS} - V_{th})^2$
Boundary Region:	$v_{DS} = v_{GS} - V_{th}$,
	$i_D = Kv_{DS}^2$

To my wife, Lisa; son, Albert; and daughter, Jannie.

Preface

After years of teaching, spark the thought providing students with a quick and basic understanding of the fundamentals of Electrical Engineering. The author diligently studied over existing textbooks and patiently accumulated from 10 years of class notes. Endless effort results in this Reader in which 11 chapters cover circuits and electronics:

Circuits:

Chapter 1 introduces basic electrical quantities and fundamental law of circuit elements, showing definitions and $v - i$ relationship of each elements – Ohm's law, Faraday's law and Henry's law.

Equipped with the basis, Chapter 2 addresses notions of circuits composed of electrical sources and circuit elements and introduces circuit laws that govern the currents flowing in branches and voltages across each elements. With the fundamentals established, we are ready to solve DC circuits.

Chapter 3 studies circuit theorems that can be utilized to find equivalent circuits that generate identical $v - i$ characteristics at the terminals of interests. Following the network reduction, loop-current and node-voltage techniques are introduced to analyze various circuits containing dependent and/or independent sources.

Chapter 4 begins to analyze of AC circuits. Exponential signal is first introduced to convert cosine functions into an exponential signals that preserve their exponential forms when a differentiating or integrating operator is executed. Following that, the concept of impedance is addressed and the phasor concept is debuted, removing the element of time characteristics and allowing AC circuits be analyzed by the Ohm's law techniques – those techniques found in DC analysis. Lastly in Chapter 4, AC power is taught and phasor diagram is addresses to introduce the notions of leading and lagging signals.

Having studied the steady-state analysis of AC circuits, Chapter 5 investigates transient response of AC circuits when switches are involved. Since AC circuits are linear systems in nature. The circuit elements – capacitors and inductors – are characterized by a first-order or second-order ordinary differential equation, unable to change instantaneously. As such, AC circuits inherits transient features that are interesting to analyze.

So much so for fixed frequency analysis in AC circuits, Chapter 6 investigates electrical network with varying frequency, introducing sinusoidal signals. In fact, all the electrical currents and voltages in a linear circuit are function of angular frequency, meaning the input signals are allowed to vary. In addition, the impedance of inductors and capacitors is also function of frequency, allowing special network such as filter to be analyzed and designed for special applications.

Electronics:

Starting from Chapter 7, we present basic electronic devices which pertain non-

linear property. Since diodes are the simplest nonlinear elements, its pn junction is presented, including diode physics. To make the nonlinear elements accessible by linear circuits, various linear models are introduced to mimic the diode behaviors. In addition, basic nonlinear circuit applications implemented by diodes are introduced. Lastly, the nonlinear phenomena such as saturation are emphasized whenever nonlinear elements involving pn junctions are used.

Chapter 8 addresses operational amplifiers. An voltage op-amp is first brought up and from which summing-point constraints are derived to speed up circuit analysis, resulting in an ideal voltage amplifier. Following that, other type of amplifier models are presented. Each has different input and output resistances, suitable for various applications. With that, many op-amp amplifier circuits are introduced, constituting instrumentation applications.

Chapter 9 contains bipolar junction transistor (BJT), its characteristic input-output curves, load-line analysis, large-signal, small-signal models and some commonly seen amplifier circuits.

Chapter 10 treats unipolar (field-effect) transistors that is different from BJT in manufacture structure. The unipolar physics is utilized to explain how the devices work.

Chapter 11 collects all PSpice simulations scattered in each chapter. Step by step procedure is itemized, side by side, with each PSpice circuit for readers to conduct simulations on PC, the simulation plots are not included for the sake of brief. It is intended that with the step by step procedures given, readers will be able to verify all theoretical analysis via PSpice, consolidating analytical theories and laboratory expectations, knowing hand-on implementation is tangible.

All problems, either end-of-chapter or at the bottom of each page, are designed to help students gain more insights and therefore, to consolidate the principles developed in this Reader. Moreover, brief answers are provided for reference.

The main goal of this Reader is to help students overcome the anxiety toward the study of Electrical Engineering that they sometimes bring with them when enrolling the class. I have been rewarded to witness that students move from anxiety to curiosity does happen.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

This Reader would not have come to being without the aid of references. Consequently, parts of the text concerning examples and problems are sometimes a combination of author's words and those of references. In any case, the author makes it clear where the material is taken from since the original sources will provides more details than what are covered here.

Happy Studying!
J.C. Lo
Mechanical Engineering

National Central University
Jhong-Li, Taiwan

What's new in Version 1.4:
- All graphs are re-drawn and, mostly, colored using pgfplots
- Typeset by LaTeX2e(MiKTex 2.9.3972.0), pgfCVS2010-9-28_TDS, circuitikz 0.2.3.
- Problem sets at the end of chapters and answers are provided.
- Four new chapters on electronics are attached.
- Summary sections for every chapter are added.
- Index and thumb index are formally added.
- Book front and back covers make their first debut.
- Preface rewritten and polished.
- Key equations and formulae added.
- Numerous typo errors corrected. (I take credits for all typos and mistakes in this Reader.)
- PSpice experiments are added and steps to do the labs are included.
- Apply for ISBN (09Nov2011).
- Also written by the author: **aThinking in Control with Matlab**.

Version 1.0
- Texts started typeset in Latex2e.
- MATLAB and PSpice were not emphasized but used.
- Graphs were plotted using Visio, some hand-drawn.

The author of this book has, in his best efforts, prepared the book and tested examples via PSpice to determine their correctness. The author makes no warranty with regard to the program. The author shall not be liable for any damages incurred due to using the same program or the documentation made in this Reader.

Contents

Chapter 1

Introduction

In this Reader, only fundamental electric circuits and electronics are taught and analyzed because they constitute the basis of all branches of Electrical Engineering. Mastery of analytical skills for circuits and electronics is essential for later courses in Electrical Engineering and other disciplines in engineering.

1.1 Electrical Components

Circuits components can be divided into two categories: passive elements that consume energy and active elements that generate energy.

Passive elements: resistor, capacitor, inductor, transformer

Active elements: transistor, motor, generator.

Eventually, we will discuss the characteristics of each elements, except generator, motor and transformer.

1.2 Electrical Quantities

How to quantify electrical measurements, we need to introduce the following terminologies first in order to establish the circuit theory.

1. Charge: The smallest unit of charge that exits in nature is

$$
\begin{aligned}
Electron(-q) &= -1.602 \times 10^{-19} coulomb \\
Proton(+q) &= +1.602 \times 10^{-19} coulomb
\end{aligned}
$$

Charge flows through conductors (i.e. wires in physical circuits), resulting in current flowing through a conductor or circuit element

2. Current: moving charges (positive charge & negative charge). It has magnitude and direction. To find the current flowing through a conductor, we select a reference direction. Then consider positive charges moving along the reference direction as a positive contribution to the net charge and negative charges moving in the reference direction is counted as a negative contribution to the net charge.[1] [2]

$$
\begin{aligned}
i &= \frac{dq}{dt} = \frac{dg^+}{dt} + \frac{dg^-}{dt} \quad (A = \frac{C}{s})^3 \\
&= \text{the rate of flow of (positive) charges}
\end{aligned}
$$

Current Convention:

$$
\begin{matrix} \oplus \rightarrow \\ \leftarrow \ominus \end{matrix} \} \text{ positive current (reference direction)} \rightarrow i
$$

When a current is constant with time, we always refer it as **direct currents**, abbreviated as DC. A current varies with time, alternating direction periodically, is called **alternating currents**, abbreviated AC. To find charge given current, integrating this equation yields

$$
q(t) = \int_0^t i(\tau)d\tau + q(0)
$$

where $q(0)$ is the initial charge at time $t = 0$.

Example 1.1 (Find Current Given Charge) *[1, Page 10] Given $q(t) = 2 - 2e^{-100t}$, $t \geq 0$, find the current[4]*

$$
i(t) = \frac{dq}{dt} = 200e^{-100t}, t \geq 0
$$

There are many examples, given $i(t)$ to find $q(t)$ or vice versa, such as the one given above. The skills remain the same as what was shown in Example 1.1, thus, we will not elaborate on those again to make this Reader concise. You may want to see another example in the problem set.

---

[1]What is the contribution to net charges for positive charges moving opposite to the reference direction? Ans: The contribution is minus, because a negative charge going left is equivalent to a positive charge going right.

[2]What is the contribution to net charges for negative charges moving against the reference direction? Ans: The contribution is positive.

[3]Based on the definition, what does one ampere of current mean?
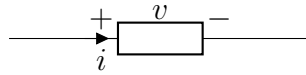
Figure 1.1: An Element: R, L, C

□

It is well known that charges of same sign repel each other, while charges of opposite sign attract. Since charges exert forces on other charges, energy must be consumed in moving a charge in the vicinity of other charges. Therefore, when charge flows through conductors, energy between circuit elements is transferred. A flashlight is a good example where chemical energy stored in the battery is delivered to and absorbed by the bulb where it appears as heat and light.

3. Voltage: Potential difference which is converted into kinetic energy ($\frac{1}{2}mv^2$),thus pushing charges forward. The notion is similar to gravitational potential difference when lifting a mass M to a height h requires work (energy) of $MghN - m$ on our part.

$$v \;=\; \frac{d\omega}{dq} \quad (V = \frac{J}{C})^5$$
$$=\; energy\ released\ per\ unit\ charge$$

Voltage Convention: Voltage has polarity indicating the direction of energy flow. + polarity has higher potential than - polarity.

If positive charge moves from + toward - (i.e. current entering an element from + polarity), the element absorbs energy and does work that appears as heat, mechanical energy, stored chemical energy or as some other form of energy. Such elements have a general name known as **load**. In particular, they are known as **resistors, capacitors, inductors**.

On the other hand, if positive charge moves from - toward + (i.e. current entering an element from - polarity), the element provides energy. Such elements have a general name known as **source**. In particular, they are known as **battery, DC, AC**.

The reference convention we have mentioned for load and source, respectively, is known as **passive reference configuration**. Having learned this notion, the elements in Figure 1.1 can be divided into two categories as shown in Figure 1.2.

---

[4]Plot the $q(t)$ and $i(t)$ to scale versus time. Noting that both $q(t)$ and $i(t)$ are exponentially decay functions, you can check $t = 0$ and $t = \infty$ to find the functional values at these time instants.

[5]Based on the definition, what does a 12V battery mean?

A DC voltage means its value is constant with time in both magnitude and polarity, while an AC voltage means its value is changing in magnitude and alternating in polarity with time. Keep the following remarks in mind.

Remarks:

(a) Current is a measure of charge flow through an element, whereas voltage is a measure of energy transferred when charge moves from one end to the other.

(b) Current has direction and voltage has polarity.

(c) In analyzing electrical circuits, we may not know the **actual** direction of current flowing though a conductor, the **actual** polarity of voltage across an element. Therefore, we start the analysis by assigning a current direction and voltage polarity arbitrarily. If we find at the end of calculation that the value of an electrical variable is negative then we know that the true direction/polarity is opposite of the direction/polarity selected initially. For example, referring to Figure 1.1, if the current i found after calculation is -5, then we know there is a 5 amperes current flowing from right to left, opposite to the reference direction initially assigned.

4. Energy & Power: Having understood the definitions of current and voltage, we investigate further the notions of energy and power.

$$
\begin{aligned}
dw &= v \cdot dq = v\frac{dq}{dt} \cdot dt = vidt \\
w &= \int_{t_1}^{t_2} vidt = \int_{t_1}^{t_2} pdt \\
p &= \frac{dw}{dt} = \frac{vdq}{dt} = vi \quad (volts \times amperes = \frac{J}{C} \times \frac{C}{s} = \frac{J}{s} = Watts) \\
&= the\ rate\ of\ energy\ transferred\ /\ transformed \\
P_{av} &= \frac{1}{t_2 - t_1} \int_{t_1}^{t_2} vi\ dt \\
&= The\ average\ power\ over\ a\ period\ of\ time, t_2 - t_1
\end{aligned}
$$

Similarly, we have energy/power convention described in the passive reference configuration 1.2. We use verbs like **provide, deliver, send, generate** to describe electrical quantities being generated by sources while using verbs like **absorb, consume, receive, draw** for loads. The focal point is to hand draw a diagram 1.2 on a sheet of paper when one reads the verbal phrases.

How to determine whether the energy/power calculated represents energy supplied or absorbed by the element. Based on the diagram 1.2, a positive value of p indicates that energy is absorbed by the element and a negative value shows that energy is supplied by the element. The notion is best illuminated by the following example.
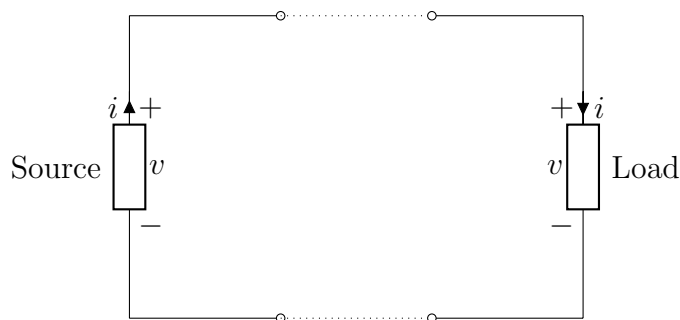
Figure 1.2: Source/Load Diagram

Example 1.2 (Power and Energy Calculations) *[1, Page 10] Assume that the current direction and voltage polarity are initially assigned in Figure 1.2. Find the power consumptions for the the following conditions.*
Solution:

- *For the load on the right:*

1. *If $i = 2A$, $v = 12$, then $p = 12V \times 2A = 24W$, the load absorbing power.*

2. *If $i = -2A$, $v = 12$, then $p = 12V \times -2A = -24W$, the load absorbing negative power or equivalently, the load generating power.*

- *For the source on the left:*

1. *If $i = 2A$, $v = 12$, then $p = 12V \times 2A = 24W$, the source supplying power.*

2. *If $i = 2e^{-t}A$, $v = -12$, then $p = -12V \times 2e^{-t}A = -24e^{-t}W$, the source supplying negative power or equivalently the source absorbing power. The energy transferred for the interval $[0 \ \infty]$ is given by*

$$w = \int_0^\infty p(t)dt = \int_0^\infty -24e^{-t}dt = 24e^{-t}|_0^\infty = -24J$$

The source generates $-24J$ joules of energy, absorbing $24J$. That is, the energy is absorbed by the source.

The focal point here is to let one be familiar with formulas, learning the trick between integrations and derivatives. Also be aware of the proper interpretation of signs.

□

Example 1.3 *Given figure 1.2, Let $i(t) = 2t$ and $v(t) = 10t$ for the source and $i(t) = 10$ and $v(t) = 20 - 2t$ for the load, respectively, find the power as a function of time and energy transferred between $t_1 = 0$ and $t_2 = 10s$ for each case.*
Solution: *(a) $p = vi = 20t^2 W$ and $P_{av} = \frac{1}{10}\int_0^{10} 20t^2 \ dt = \frac{2000}{3}$, supplying. (b) $p = vi = 200 - 20t W$ and $P_{av} = \frac{1}{10}\int_0^{10}(200 - 20t) \ dt = 100 W$, consumed.*

□

1.3   Electrical Laws

These laws establish mathematic model among electrical quantities and various circuit elements, expressing voltage across and current flowing in an element.

1.3.1   Ohm's law

The law, in honor of George Ohm, is used to describe relationship of resistor voltage, resistor current and resistance.
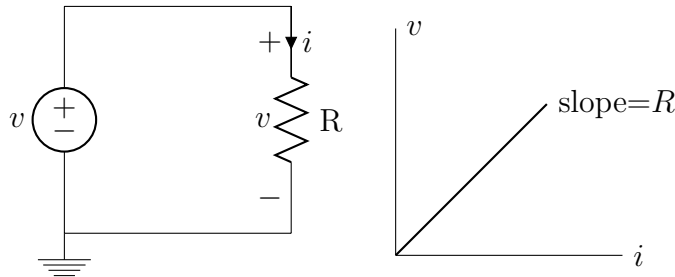
Figure 1.3: Ohm's Law

$$v = iR$$

where

$$R = \rho\frac{l}{A}, l = length, R = resistance(\Omega), \rho = resistivity$$

Note that the resistor above is labeled according to the passive convention. Consequently, a plus sign in the ohm's law is assumed. In situation for which the reference current **enters the negative polarity of the voltage**, Ohm's law becomes

$$v = -iR$$

An example to illustrate the techniques is given in Example 2.1, Chapter 2, to be taught later.

The Ohm's law enables us to find current (knowing v and R), power and energy consumption of a resistor, which is displayed below:

$$i = \frac{v}{R} = Gv$$

where $G = \frac{1}{R}$ is called conductance. Moreover,

$$\begin{aligned} p &= vi = (iR)i = i^2 R = \frac{v^2}{R} \\ w &= \int_{t_1}^{t_2} p\,dt = R \int_{t_1}^{t_2} i^2 dt = \frac{1}{R} \int_{t_1}^{t_2} v^2 dt \end{aligned}$$

PSpiceLab 1.1 (Ohm's Law) *Use PSpice to verify Ohm's law using DC sweep analysis.*
Solution:
Objectives: (1) Understand the linear relationship between DC voltage and current. (2) Learn DC sweep technique.
PreLab: DC sweep will activate a solver in PSpice that generates a sequence of v and i electric quantities corresponding to a user-defined range of DC inputs. The generated datum can be plotted on a two dimensional graph. This is a useful analysis for DC circuits.
Lab: Follow the steps to find the answer as expected.
PostLab: Exchange x and y axes will not change the linear relationship, but the meaning of slop is different.

□

1.3.2 Faraday's law

The law, in honor of Michael Faraday, is used to describe the voltage and current relationship of a capacitor
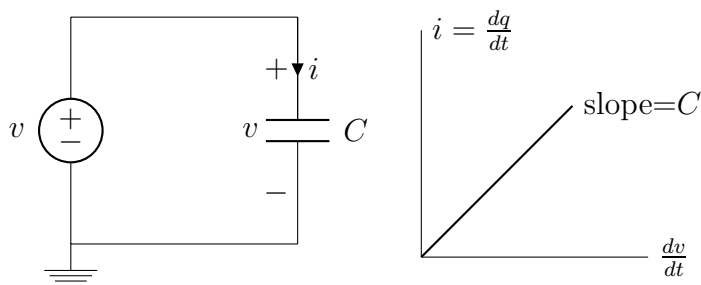

Figure 1.4: Faraday's Law

$$i = \frac{dq}{dt} = C\frac{dv}{dt}$$

where

$$C = \epsilon\frac{A}{d}, C = capacitance(F), \epsilon = permittivity(F/m)$$

The typical values of C range from $pF(10^{-12}F)$ to $0.01F$. Note that the capacitor above is labeled according to the passive convention. Consequently, a plus sign in the Faraday's law is assumed. If the references **were opposite to** the passive configuration, Faraday's law takes the following form

$$i = -C\frac{dv}{dt}$$

Faraday's law enables us to derive the following quantities

$$
\begin{aligned}
q &= Cv \\
v(t) &= \frac{1}{C}\int_{-\infty}^{t} i(\tau)d\tau = \frac{1}{C}\int_{-\infty}^{t_0} i(\tau)d\tau + \frac{1}{C}\int_{t_0}^{t} i(\tau)d\tau = v(t_0) + \frac{1}{C}\int_{t_0}^{t} id\tau \\
p &= vi = v(C\frac{dv}{dt}) \\
w &= \int_{-\infty}^{t} p(\tau)d\tau = C\int_{-\infty}^{t} v(\tau)\frac{dv(\tau)}{d\tau}d\tau = \frac{1}{2}Cv^2(t) = \frac{q^2(t)}{2C}
\end{aligned}
$$

PSpiceLab 1.2 (Faraday's Law) *Use PSpice to verify Faraday's law using time domain transient analysis.*
Solution:
Objectives: (1) Understand rate of change. (2) Represent a PWL time function. (3) Learn time domain transient analysis.
PreLab: (1) Consider the following PieceWise Linear (PWL) time function where each point requires a coordinate.
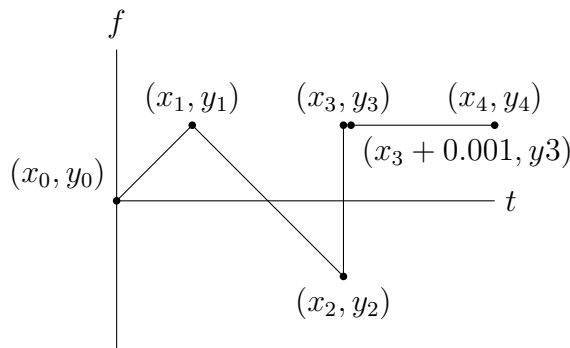

Figure 1.5: Piecewise Linear Function Representation

(2) Time domain transient analysis performs a real-time simulation that generates a time behavior of $v(t)$ and $i(t)$ over a user-defined time frame with an appropriate time step. The generated datum can be plotted with a default time variable on the x-axis. This is a useful analysis for AC circuits.

Lab: Follow the steps to see the results which are consistent with analysis.

PostLab: How to represent a pulse function using PWL? (Hint: two points yields a line.)

□

1.3.3 Henry's law

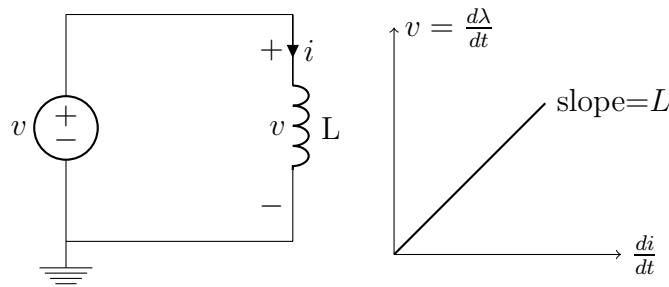The law, in honor of Joseph Henry, is used to describe voltage and current quantities of an inductor.

Figure 1.6: Henry's Law

$$v = \frac{d\lambda}{dt} = L\frac{di}{dt}$$

where

$$L = \frac{\mu n^2 A}{l + \frac{9}{10}r}, L = inductance(H), \mu = permeability(H/m)$$

The typical values of L range from μH to $0.1H$. Note that the inductor above is labeled according to the passive convention. Consequently, a plus sign in the Henry's law is assumed. If the references **were opposite to** the passive configuration, Henry's law takes the following form

$$v = -L\frac{di}{dt}$$

Again, Henry's law makes the following derivations possible

$$
\begin{aligned}
\lambda &= Li \\
i(t) &= \frac{1}{L}\int_{-\infty}^{t} v(\tau)d\tau = \frac{1}{L}\int_{-\infty}^{t_0} v(\tau)d\tau = i(t_0) + \frac{1}{L}\int_{t_0}^{t} v(\tau)d\tau
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
p(t) &= vi = (L\frac{di}{dt})i \\
w(t) &= \int_{-\infty}^{t} p(\tau)d\tau = L \int_{-\infty}^{t} \frac{di}{d\tau}i\ d\tau = \frac{1}{2}Li^2(t) = \frac{\lambda^2(t)}{2L}
\end{aligned}
$$

1.4 Continuity of Stored Energy

An instantaneous change in energy requires an infinite power since $p = dW/dt \to \infty$ when $dt \to 0$. Thus, the stored energy must be a continuous function of time — energy could not change instantaneously. This property indicates that **inductor currents** ($\frac{1}{2}Li^2$) and **capacitor voltages** ($\frac{1}{2}Cv^2$) can not change instantaneously, a powerful notion when one studies transient response of AC circuits.

1.5 Electrical Sources

1.5.1 Ideal independent sources

Independent sources have such property that their output voltage (current) measured at output terminals are independent of loads. That is, whatever the loads are, the voltage or current remain constant at the output terminals. They are customary represented by a circle in circuit diagrams.

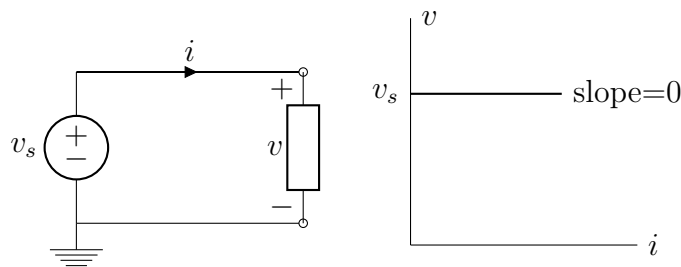1. Ideal voltage source: The characteristic of an independent voltage source is that

Figure 1.7: Ideal Voltage Source

its voltage v is independent of current i, meaning the voltage v is kept constant regardless of the value of the current. Thus $R = \frac{dv}{di} = 0$. This establishes the fact that **independent voltage source has zero resistance.**

However, in real world, when the current is drawn from the terminals, this terminal voltage drops and therefore is not kept constant. This is known as

the loading effect. To model such phenomena, we have the following circuit model (known as Thevenin equivalent.) It is readily seen that the $v - i$ property characterizing the input and output relation is
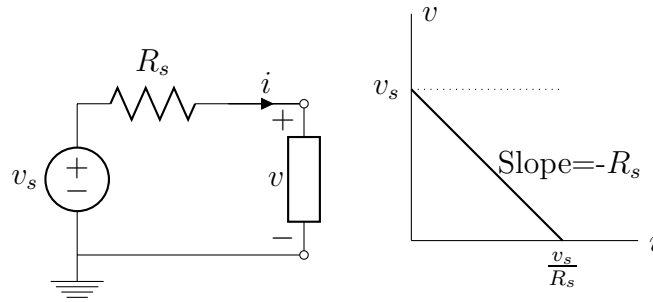
$$v = v_s - iR_s \qquad (1.1)$$

Figure 1.8: Non-Ideal Voltage Source

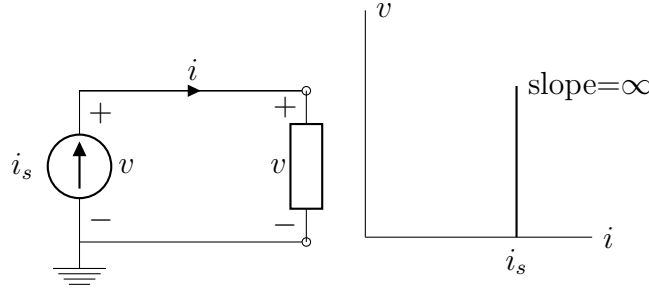2. Ideal current source: The characteristic of an independent current source is that

Figure 1.9: Ideal Current Source

its current i is independent of voltage across the source v, meaning the current i is kept constant regardless of the value of the voltage. Thus $R = \frac{dv}{di} = \infty$. This establishes the fact that **independent voltage source has ∞ (huge) resistance.**

Again, in real world, the current is not kept constant and we have the following model (known as Norton equivalent.) It is readily known that the $v - i$ property characterizing the input and output relation is

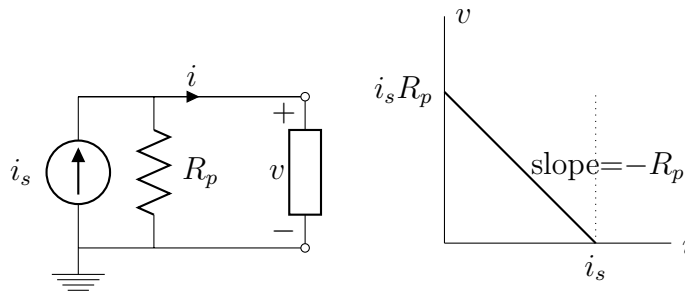$$i = i_s - \frac{v}{R_p} \qquad (1.2)$$

Figure 1.10: Non-Ideal Current Source

1.5.2   Ideal dependent sources

These sources are also known as ideal controlled sources because it is controlled by other voltage or current in a circuit. Instead of a circle representing an independent source, the symbol for dependent source is customary a diamond shape in circuit diagrams. Four types of dependent sources are shown below:

1. Voltage-Controlled Voltage Source (VCVS): A voltage source that is controlled by voltage v_1 elsewhere in a circuit. Usually, the v_1 is an unknown variable to be determined. In PSpice, VCVS is symbolized by E.
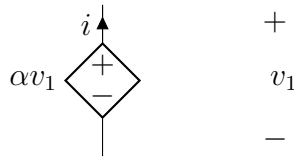

Figure 1.11: Voltage-Controlled Voltage Source/VCVS

2. Voltage-Controlled Current Source (VCCS): A current source that is controlled by voltage v_1 elsewhere in a circuit. Again, the v_1 is an unknown variable to be determined. In PSpice, VCCS is symbolized by G. When wiring, the controlling variable should be wired to the terminals on the left-hand side whilst the energy source terminals are on the right-hand side.   An example is drawn to illustrate
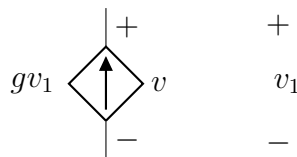

Figure 1.12: Voltage-Controlled Current Source/VCCS

the idea. A diamond shape with an arrow says that it is a dependent current source. What does it depend on? the information on the right says $2v_1$, so it depends on a voltage somewhere in the circuit. After searching, v_1 is labeled below the element at the upper right corner.
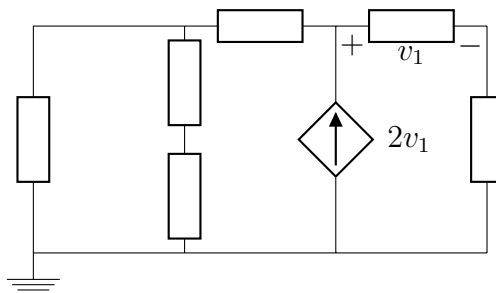

Figure 1.13: Voltage-Controlled Current Source/VCCS

3. Current-Controlled Voltage Source (CCVS): A voltage source that is controlled by current i_1 elsewhere in a circuit. Usually, the i_1 is an unknown variable to be determined. In PSpice, CCVS is symbolized by H. An example to show the
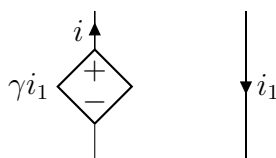

Figure 1.14: Current-Controlled Voltage Sources/CCVS

dependency is displayed below. Again, the diamond shape with polarity and the information above it means this is a current dependent voltage source. Further investigation shows it depends on current flowing through 5Ω resistor. Notice that an independent source remains a known constant value, say 5 volts, all the time, while an ideal dependent source does remain constant but unknown. You will know the value only after solving the circuit problem.

4. Current-Controlled Current Source (CCCS): A current source that is controlled by current i_1 elsewhere in a circuit. Likewise, the i_1 is an unknown variable to be determined. In PSpice, CCCS is symbolized by F.
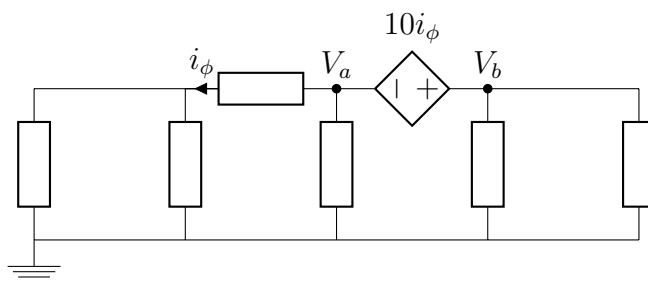
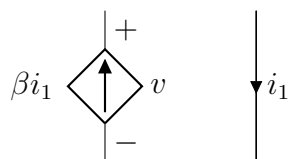Figure 1.15: Current-Controlled Voltage Source/CCVS

Figure 1.16: Current-Controlled Current Sources/CCCS

1.6   Recap

In this chapter, we learned the followings.

• Voltage has polarities and you need to assign it before embarking any analysis. + always has a higher potential voltage than -. It does not imply + is a positive value and - is of negative value.

• Current has directions and you need to assign it before embarking any analysis too.

• Power has signs and we define active elements provide energy while passive elements absorb energy.

• Element laws describe the relationship of $v - i$, $v - \frac{di}{dt}$, $\frac{dv}{dt} - i$ and element parameters (R, L, C). Be aware that their assignment on voltage polarities and current directions should be defined first. This is crucial when applying element laws.

• Sources have two types: dependent and independent sources. A diamond shape means dependent sources while a circle shape means independent sources.

• Whenever a dependent source is used in PSpice, don't forget to right click the mouse to edit the element property and key in the gain value.

1.7   Problems

Problem 1.1 *A heater is rated for 1200W when operated at 110V, find the resistance of the heater and the operating current. (Hint: $p = \frac{v^2}{R}$)*
Answer: $R = 10.08\Omega$, I=10.9A.

Problem 1.2 *For the Figure 1.17, find the current i_R and the power of each element in the circuit and state whether each is absorbing or delivering energy.*
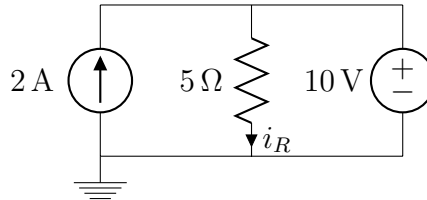

Figure 1.17: Circuit Diagram for Problem 1.2

Answer: *(a) $i_R = 2A$ (b) $P_{2A} = 10 \times 2 = 20W$, delivering; $P_{5\Omega} = 20W$, absorbing; $P_{10V} = 10 \times 0 = 0W$.*

Problem 1.3 *Given the Figure 1.18, solve for i_x.*
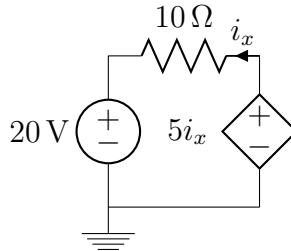
Figure 1.18: Circuit Diagram for Problem 1.3

Answer: $i_x = -4A$.

Problem 1.4 *The current flowing to the right is depicted in the Figure 1.19, find the movement of net charge past a point to the right.*

   Remark: [Draw Inferences] Note that the problem could have given you a charge $(q - t)$ plot and ask you to find current $(i - t)$ plot. Likewise, the problem may, say, give you a $v - t$ plot for an inductor whose $v - i$ is governed by $v = L\frac{di}{dt}$ and ask you to find its $i - t$ plot. The same applies to capacitors.

Problem 1.5 *Determine the power delivered to (absorbed by) the elements shown in Figure 1.20.*
Answer: *(a) -6 W. (b) 50 W. (c) 40 W. (d) -16 W. (e) -42 W. (f) 90 W.*
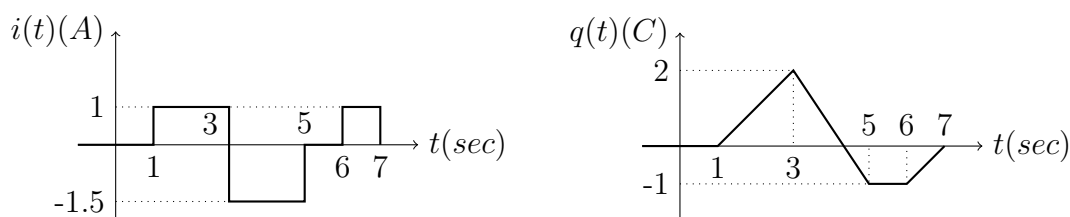
Figure 1.19: (a) Problem 1.4 and (b) Answer to Problem 1.4
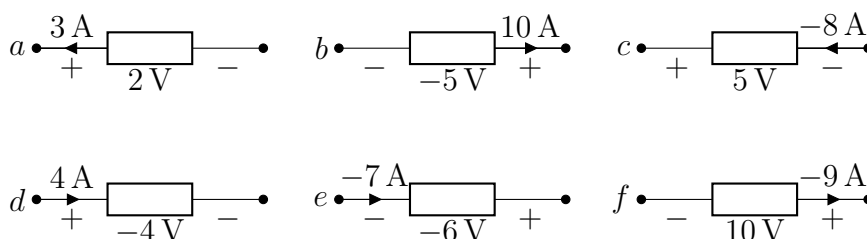
Figure 1.20: Circuit Diagram for Problem 1.5
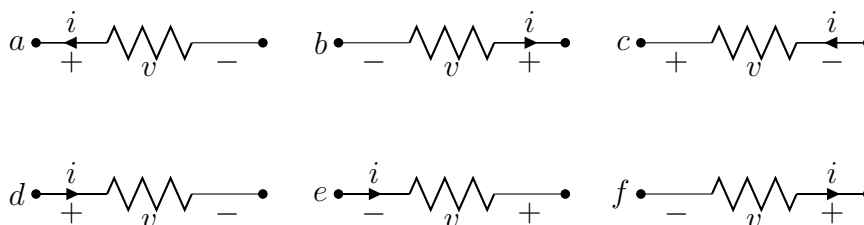
Figure 1.21: Circuit Diagram for Problem 1.6

Problem 1.6 *Write the correct Ohms' law for the elements shown in Figure 1.21.*
Answer: *(a) $v = -iR$ (b) $v = -iR$ (c) $v = -iR$ (d) $v = iR$ (e) $v = -iR$ (f) $v = -iR$.*

Problem 1.7 *If the two equations(1.1) and (1.2) are identical (ie., both v and i are identical in these two equations), find the relationship between Thevenin and Norton equivalents. (Hint: read the $v - i$ plots and compare)*
Answer: $v_s = i_s R_p$ *and* $R_s = R_p$.

Chapter 2

Circuit Laws

Having established the fundamental quantities of current, voltage, and power, we show that for every passive element there exists a linear law[1] governing their $v - i$ characteristics and the element itself. A group of elements constitute a circuit, but then how to describe the electrical behavior of a group of circuit elements is the focus of this chapter.

2.1 Circuit Laws (In Honor of Gustav Kirchhoff)

Given Figure 2.1, we define the following terms.

1. An electrical circuit is a group of circuit elements connected in a closed path by conductors.

2. A node in an electrical circuit is a point at which two or more circuit elements are jointed together, as shown by the black dots.

3. A loop in an electrical circuit is a closed path that starts from a node, going clockwise/counterclockwise through circuit elements, and back to the starting node.

4. A branch is a conductor that has an element attached to it, as shown by lines $1 - 2$, $2 - 3$, and $3 - 0$, etc.

5. A branch without any element attached is considered as a node because there is no voltage drop.

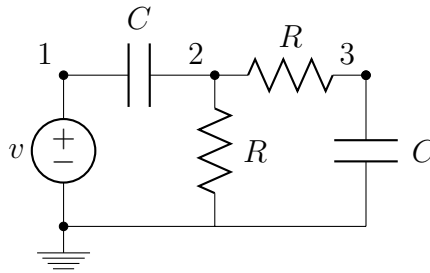[1]What are they and write down their form

Figure 2.1: Definitions for Nodes and Loops

2.1.1 Kirchhoff's voltage law (KVL)

KVL provides relationships among the element voltages in a loop of a circuit. It has two translations.

- The algebraic sum of the voltages around a loop is zero.
  A convenient convention is to use the first polarity mark encountered for each voltage to decide if it should be added or subtracted in the algebraic sum. That is, if polarity marks + are encountered, the voltage carries a plus sign. If polarity marks - are encountered, the voltage carries a minus sign.

- In a specified direction (**not necessarily the current direction**), the algebraic sum of the voltage rises is equal to the algebraic sum of the voltage drops. Here a voltage rise means in the specified direction the voltage rises from negative polarity to positive polarity. A voltage drop would mean the voltage drops from positive to negative polarity. In shorts, $\sum$ voltage rises = $\sum$ voltage drops

Remarks:

1. KVL must be satisfied for all loops of a circuit.

2. KVL also applies to larger, closed loop of a circuit called **supermesh** where a large closed path is selected and viewed as a super mesh/loop.

3. KVL is essentially a statement of conservation of energy since traveling around a loop the total energy is zero due to $p = vi = i(v_1 - v_2 + v_3) = 0$.

2.1.2 Kirchhoff's current law (KCL)

KCL provides relationships among the element currents at a node of a circuit. It again has two interpretations.

- The algebraic sum of all currents entering (leaving) a node is zero.
  To compute the net current entering a node, we add the currents entering and

subtract the currents leaving. Or equivalently, we add the currents leaving and subtract the current leaving. The focal point is to pick one particular direction (entering or leaving) as positive and the other as negative.

- At a node, the algebraic sum of all currents entering the node is equal to the algebraic sum of all currents leaving the node. In shorts, $\sum$ current leaving = $\sum$ currents entering.

Remarks:

1. KCL must be satisfied for all nodes of a circuit.

2. KCL also applies to larger, closed regions of a circuit called supernodes where a group of elements is clustered together and viewed as a super node.

3. KCL is a statement of conservation of charge. That is, nodes can not accumulate or store charge. Charge entering a node must leave that node immediately and go. $\left(i_1 - i_2 + i_3 = \frac{dq_1}{dt} - \frac{dq_2}{dt} + \frac{dq_3}{dt} = 0\right)$

Example 2.1 (Circuit Analysis using Arbitrary References) *[1, Page 35] Referring to Figure 1.2 where $v_s = 10\,V$ and $R = 5\Omega$, now assign any reference except the passive convention.*
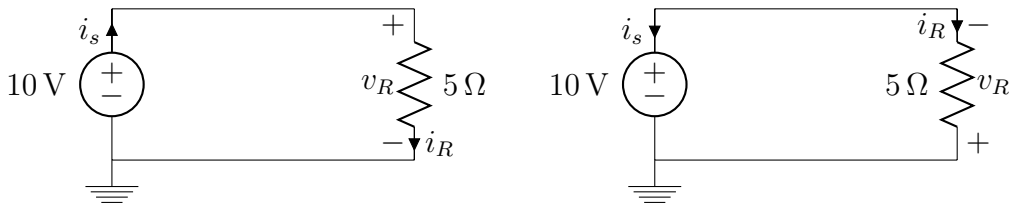

Figure 2.2: Circuit Diagram for Example 2.1

Solution: *Traveling clockwise via KVL, we have*

$$-v_s - v_R = 0$$

yielding $v_R = -v_s = -10$. By Ohm's law, we have $i_R = -v_R/R = 2A$. Also, by KCL at the top node, we have $i_s + i_R = 0$, yielding $i_s = -i_R = -2A$. The power for the voltage source is $p_s = v_s i_s = 10(-2) = -20\,W$, absorbing. And the power for the resistor is $p_R = v_R i_R = (-10)(2) = -20\,W$, delivering.

Alternatively, you may think the source and the resistor labeling does not follow the passive convention. Thus for the source $p_s = -v_s i_s = -10(-2) = 20\,W$, delivering and for the resistor $p_R = -v_R i_R = -(-10)(2) = 20\,W$, absorbing.
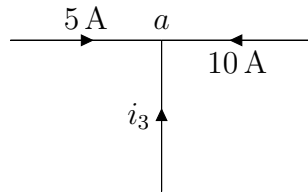
Figure 2.3: Circuit Diagram for Example 2.2

This example shows that application of circuit laws will tell us not only the magnitudes of the currents and voltages but the true voltage polarities and current directions as well.

Example 2.2 (One Variable, One Equation) *: Solve for the $i_3(t)$.*
Solution: *Applying KCL at the node, we have $\sum i_a = 0 = 5 + 10 + i_3$. Thus, $i_3 = -15A$, leaving the node.*

$\square$

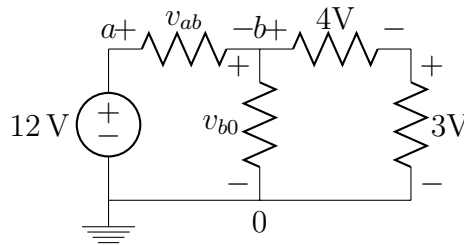**Example 2.3 (Two Variables, Two Equations)** *: Solve the following circuit.*

Figure 2.4: Circuit Diagram for Example 2.3

Solution: *Applying KVL around the outer loop yields*

$$-12 + v_{ab} + 4 + 3 = 0 \quad equivalently, \ 12 = v_{ab} + 4 + 3$$

giving $v_{ab} = 5V$. Note that choosing outer loop provides one equation with one variable.

Applying KVL around the loop 0ab0 gives

$$-12 + 5 + v_{b0} = 0, \quad equivalently, \ 12 = 5 + v_{b0}$$

from which we obtain $v_{bo} = 7V$.

The trick here is to find a loop that has only one unknown variable attached to it.[2] These examples demonstrate that one algebraic equation can only be used to solve for one unknown variable. Two (three, $\cdots$) unknown variables need two (three, $\cdots$) algebraic equations to obtain a solution. The same is true for KCL.

---

[2]Try the loop 0ab0, what do you get? Can you solve the single equation for two unknowns?
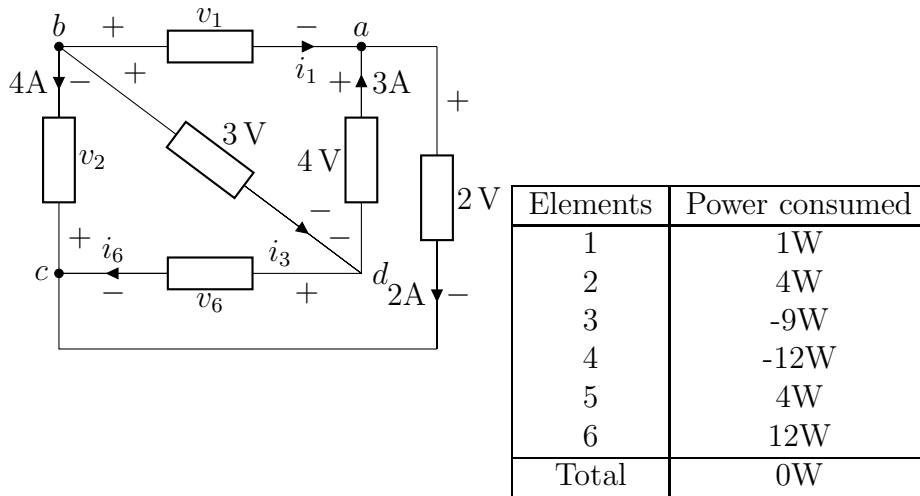
Figure 2.5: Conservation of Energy for Example 2.4

□

Example 2.4 (Another Trick Problem) *[2, Page 14] Find the unknown currents and voltages and check the conservation of energy.*
Solution: *The key to such problem is to find one variable for one node so that KCL can be applied. To this end, writing KCL at node a yields $i_1 + 3 = 2$, resulting $i_1 = -1A$. Node b generates $i_1 + i_3 + 4 = 0$, resulting $i_3 = -3A$. Lastly, node d provides $i_3 = 3 + i_6$, yielding $i_6 = -6A$. Moreover, we could also use supernode technique to find i_3. Assuming a supernode is located at the top, we have $3 = 2+4+i_3$, yielding $i_3 = -3A$.*

To continue, we find one variable for one loop so that KVL can be used to determine $v_1 = v_2 = -1V$, and $v_6 = -2V$. Actually, you still can use supermesh technique to verify the voltages you just obtained.

Lastly, let's check whether the conservation of energy holds. The result is shown in Table 2.5, where row 3 and 4 are actually generating powers since they consume negative power and that means they generate positive powers.

□

Example 2.5 *Given the circuit shown in figure 2.6, solve the following circuit for currents i_1, i_2 and i_3.*
Solution: *KCL at node b is*

$$i_1 + i_2 - i_3 = 0^3 \quad (clockwise\ direction)$$

Since there are 3 unknown currents to determine, we need 3 equations to obtain a feasible solution. Two more equations are needed and can be found via KVL:
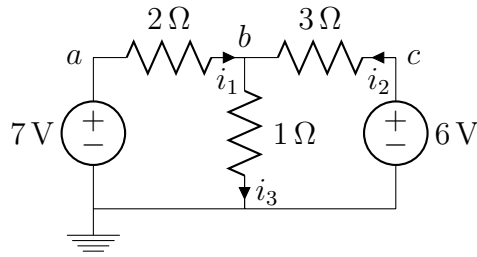
---

[3]How about nodes a, c, and 0?

Figure 2.6: Circuit Diagram for Example 2.5-2.8

KVL for loop oabo is

$$-7 + 2i_1 + i_3 = 0$$

and for loop obco:

$$-i_3 - 3i_2 + 6 = 0^4$$

Solving these equations simultaneously, we obtain $i_1 = 2A$, $i_2 = 1A$, and $i_3 = 3A$.
A MATLAB script written to solve the above problem ($Ai = V$) is displayed below.

```
A=[1 1 -1; 2 0 1; 0 -3 -1];
V=[0; 7; -6];
i=inv(A)*V
```

□

Example 2.6 (Node Voltage Method) *Same circuit shown in Figure 2.6, solve the following circuit.*
Solution: *Take node 0 as the reference ground, thus $v_{ao} = 7$, $v_{co} = 6$ and v_{bo} is to be determined.*
KCL at node b leads to

$$i_1 + i_2 - i_3 = \frac{7 - v_b}{2} + \frac{6 - v_b}{3} - \frac{v_b}{1} = 0$$

Solving, we have $v_b = 3V$, $i_1 = 2A$, $i_2 = 1A$, $i_3 = 3A$.

□

Example 2.7 (Loop Current Method) *Same circuit shown in Figure 2.6, solve the following circuit.*
Solution: *Arbitrarily assuming a clockwise direction for both loops and assigning polarity as shown in the circuit, we write KVL for loop oabo*

$$-7 + 2i_a + 1(i_a - i_b) = 0$$

---

[4]How about loop *oabco*?

and KVL for loop obco

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 &= -[-(i_b - i_a)] - [-3i_b] + 6 \\
&= (i_b - i_a) + 3i_b + 6
\end{aligned}
$$

Solving these equations simultaneously, we have $i_a = 2A$ and $i_b = -1A$.
A MATLAB script, displayed below, is written for this problem.

```
A=[3 -1;-1 4];
v=[7; -6];
i=inv(A)*V
```

However, in determining the voltages, we observe that the voltages of $R = 1$ and $R = 2\Omega$ are NOT labeled with the passive sign convention with respect to i_b, so that a minus sign must be inserted into the Ohm's law

$$
v_{3\Omega} = -i_b R = -(-1)3 = 3V, \quad v_{1\Omega} = -(i_b - i_a)R = -(-1 - 2)1 = 3V
$$

What do we learn from this example? The focal point is **if the element voltage and current are not labeled with the passive sign convention, a minus sign must be inserted into the Ohm's law**. *Thus, the safest way is, when given the choice, to label the resistor voltage and current according to the passive sign convention.*

□

2.1.3 Voltage divider/division, EE lab verification

When a voltage is applied to a series combination of resistances, a fraction of the voltage appears across each of the resistance. To see this, consider the following series circuit of two resistances with a voltage source applied across the series connection.
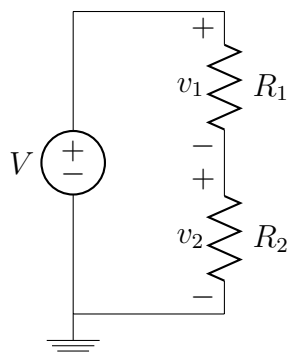

Figure 2.7: Voltage Divider

Applying KVL to the single loop yields current

$$i = \frac{v}{R_1 + R_2}$$

Ohm's law finds the voltage distribution across each resistance

$$v_2 = v\left(\frac{R_2}{R_1 + R_2}\right), \quad v_1 = v\left(\frac{R_1}{R_1 + R_2}\right)$$

We therefore conclude that the fraction of the total voltage that appears to $R_2(R_1)$ in a series circuit is the ratio of $R_2(R_1)$ to the total resistance. Notice that the largest voltage appears across the largest resistance in series.

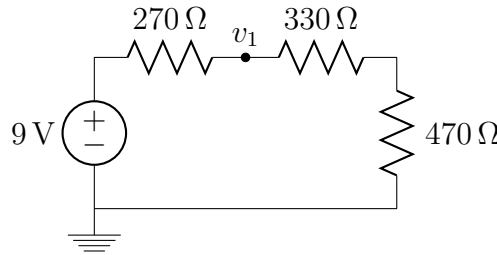**Example 2.8 (Voltage Divider)** *: Solve the following circuit*

Figure 2.8: Circuit Diagram for Example 2.8

Solution: *Voltage divider formula yields*

$$v_1 = 9 \cdot \frac{330 + 470}{270 + 330 + 470} = 9 \cdot \frac{800}{1070} = 6.729V$$

Thus,

$$v_{270\Omega} = 9 - 6.729 = 2.271V$$

□

Example 2.9 (Voltage Divider) *Solve the following circuit.*
Solution: *Find the equivalent resistance for the parallel resistance and apply voltage divider formula to find v_1 displayed below*

$$v_1 = v_0 \cdot \frac{\left(\frac{R_2 R_3}{R_2 + R_3}\right)}{R_1 + \left(\frac{R_2 R_3}{R_2 + R_3}\right)} = \frac{v_0 \cdot R_2 R_3}{R_1 R_2 + R_1 R_3 + R_2 R_3}$$
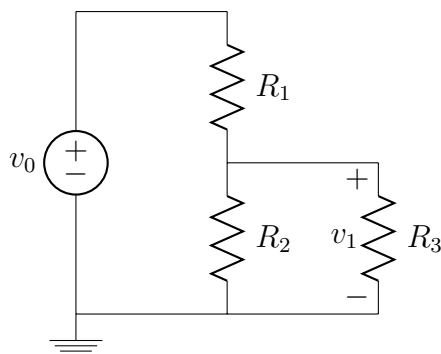
Figure 2.9: Circuit Diagram for Example 2.9

□

Although we have derived the voltage division for two resistances in series, it applies for any number of resistances as long as they are connected in series. Therefore, a general form for a total of r resistances in series is

$$v_{R_i} = v \left(\frac{R_i}{\sum_{i=1}^{r} R_i} \right)$$

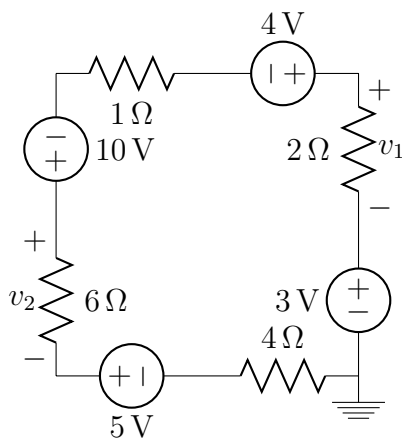**Example 2.10 (Voltage Division)** *[2, Page 59] Determine the voltage v_1 and v_2.*

Figure 2.10: Circuit Diagram for Example 2.10

Solution: *Arbitrarily assigning a loop current in the clockwise direction and forming KVL yield*

$$-(-6i) + 10 + i - 4 + 2i + 3 + 4i - 5 = 0, \quad equiv. \quad i = \frac{-4}{13} = -0.308A$$

Thus, $v_1 = 2i = -0.615A$ and $v_2 = -6i = 1.846V$ due to passive sign convention.
   Another approach(voltage division):

$$v_1 = -4\left(\frac{2}{6+1+2+4}\right) = -0.615, \quad v_2 = 4\left(\frac{6}{6+1+2+4}\right) = 1.846$$

□

Example 2.11 (Pspice Program for EE Lab – Voltage Divider) *Re-do your lab examples for voltage divider by checking the theoretical/true values using Pspice program.*

□

2.1.4   Current divider/division, EE lab verification

When a current is flowing to a parallel combination of resistances, it divides and a fraction of the total current flows through each resistance. The next rule, current division, is similar to the voltage division rule. To see this, consider the parallel combination of two resistances across which a current is applied as shown below.
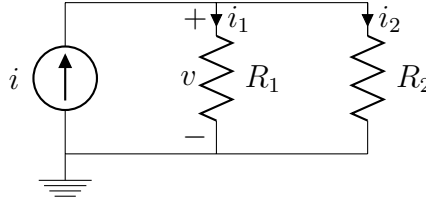

Figure 2.11: Current Divider

First label the voltage v at the top node. Then the corresponding KCL translates to

$$i = i_1 + i_2 = \frac{v}{R_1} + \frac{v}{R_2} = v\left(\frac{R_2 + R_1}{R_1 R_2}\right) = v\left(G_1 + G_2\right)$$

Rearranging, we have the voltage across the resistances, which are of the same magnitude and polarity

$$v = \frac{R_1 R_2}{R_1 + R_2} i = \frac{i}{G_1 + G_2}$$

Ohm's law finds the current distribution in each resistance

$$i_1 = i\left(\frac{R_2}{R_1 + R_2}\right) = i\left(\frac{1/G_2}{1/G_1 + 1/G_2}\right) = i\left(\frac{G_1}{G_1 + G_2}\right)$$

and

$$i_2 = i\left(\frac{R_1}{R_1 + R_2}\right) = i\left(\frac{1/G_1}{1/G_1 + 1/G_2}\right) = i\left(\frac{G_2}{G_1 + G_2}\right)$$

For two resistances in parallel, the fraction of the total current flowing through one resistance is the ratio of the *opposite* resistance to the sum of two resistances. Notice that this formula only applies to two resistances in parallel structure. If there are more than two resistances connected in parallel, we should combine them into two equivalent resistances in parallel so that we have only two resistances before applying the formula.

However, if conductance expression is used, rather than resistance expression, to derive the formula, for a total of r conductances in parallel we have the following general form

$$i_{R_i} = i\left(\frac{G_i}{\sum_{i=1}^{r} G_i}\right)$$

Notice that the formula is expressed in conductance, not resistance.

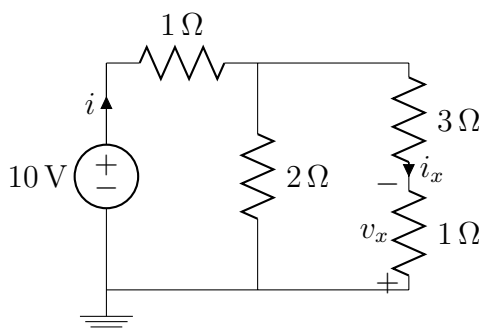**Example 2.12 (Current Division)** *[2, Page 82] Determine the voltage v_x in the circuit.*

Figure 2.12: Circuit Diagram for Example 2.12

Solution: *First label the currents i and i_x for the purpose of using current division. The current i may be determined by*

$$i = \frac{10}{1 + (2//4)} = \frac{30}{7}A$$

Next moving back to the original circuit, we apply current division formula and obtain

$$i_x = \frac{30}{7}\left(\frac{2}{2+4}\right) = \frac{10}{7}A$$

From this we obtain

$$v_x = -i_x 1 = -\frac{10}{7}V$$

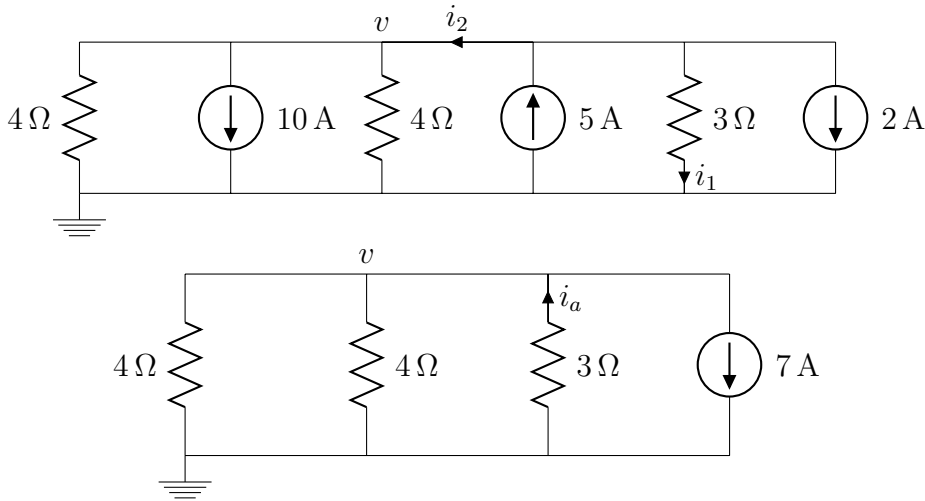*Again observe the minus sign in this last result, required by the passive sign convention.*

Figure 2.13: Circuit Diagram for Example 2.13

□

Example 2.13 (Current Division) *[2, Page 65] Determine the currents i_1, i_2 in the circuit.*
Solution: *First label voltage at the top with positive polarity assigned, write KCL for this node (assuming entering currents are positive)*

$$5 - (\frac{v}{3}) - 2 - 10 - \frac{v}{4} - \frac{v}{4} = 0, \quad or \quad -7 = \frac{v}{3} + \frac{v}{4} + \frac{v}{4}$$

From which we obtain $v = -8.4V$, and

$$i_2 = \frac{v}{4} + \frac{v}{4} + 10 = 5.8A, \quad i_1 = (-8.4/3) = -2.8A$$

Observe the minus sign in the last result, required by the passive sign convention.
   Another approach:

$$i_a = 7 \left(\frac{\frac{1}{3}}{\frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{3}} \right) = 2.8A$$

Notice that i_a is the current direction flowing out of $7A$ current source and entering the negative polarity of 3Ω resistor while the i_1 is opposite to it. Therefore, $i_1 = -i_a = -2.8A$ and $v = 3i_1 = -3i_a = -8.4V$.

□

Example 2.14 (Pspice Program for EE Lab – Current Divider) *Re-do your lab examples by checking the theoretical/true values using Pspice program.*

□

   The methods we have studied are useful, but they alone can not solve all circuit problems. We need more tools and that is discussed in the next chapter.

2.2   Recap

In this chapter, we have gained the following knowledge.

• KCL and KVL are the backbone of circuit theory, enabling us to solve for electrical quantities.

• Understand and memorize voltage divider and current divider can speed up computation.

• Current sources connected in parallel can be lumped together as a single current source by adding them up (be aware of the directions).

• Voltage sources connected in series can be lumped together as a single voltage source by adding them up (be aware of the polarities).

• The key in this chapter is to assign the voltage polarities, current directions, and to understand and interpret the meanings of sign after computation.

2.3 Problems

Problem 2.1 *In the Figure 2.14, (a) find the value i_3, (b) the value of i_6, (c) the value of v_s, and (d) the power dissipated in each resistor, (e) the power delivered by 12A source.*
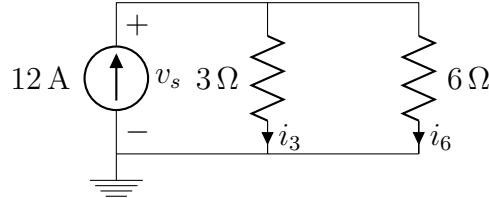

Figure 2.14: Circuit Diagram for Problem 2.1

Answer: *(a) $i_3 = 8A$, (b) $i_6 = 4A$, (c) $v_s = 24V$, (d) $192W$ and $96W$, (e) $288W$.*

Problem 2.2 *Given the Figure 2.15, solve for i_s. (Hint: i_x enters 15Ω resistor from negative polarity.)*
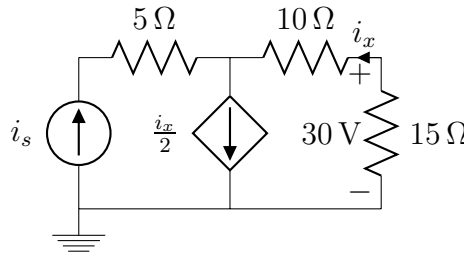
Figure 2.15: Circuit Diagram for Problem 2.2

Answer: *$i_s = 1A$.*

Problem 2.3 *Device X requires 4V at 1.5mA and device Y operates at 2V at 1mA. The two devices are to be operated from a 9V as shown in Figure 2.16. Specify the values of R_1 and R_2.*
Answer: *$R_1 = 2K\Omega$, $R_2 = 4K\Omega$.*

Problem 2.4 *In the circuit for problem 2.17, determine the unknown voltages and currents and verify conservation of power. After computation, check the bigger closed loop (supermesh) to verify the KVL.*
Answer: *$i_x = 2A, i_y = -1A$, and $i_z = 5A$. $v_x = -2V, v_y = -1V$, and $v_z = 3V$. For elements located from top to down and left to right, we have -1W, 4W, -4W, 15W, -8W, -6W and the total is zero.*
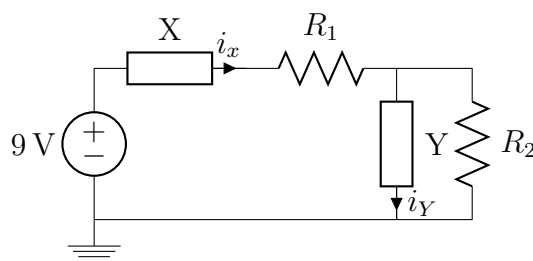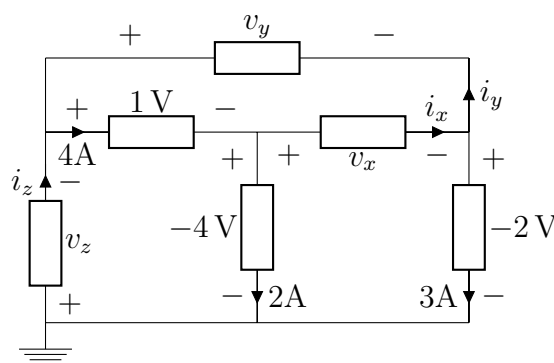
Figure 2.16: Circuit Diagram for Problem 2.3

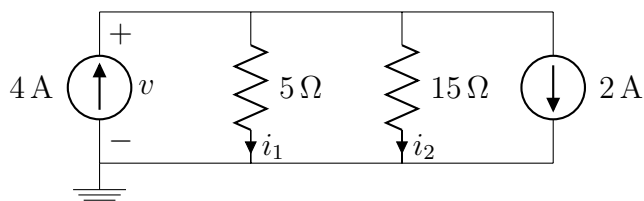Figure 2.17: Circuit Diagram for Problem 2.4

Figure 2.18: Circuit Diagram for Problem 2.5

Problem 2.5 *Find v and the power of each element in the circuit of Figure 2.18 and state whether each is absorbing or delivering energy.*
Answer: *$v = 7.5V$, $p_{4A} = 30W$ delivering, $p_{5\Omega} = 11.25W$ absorbing, $p_{15\Omega} = 3.75W$ absorbing, $p_{2A} = 15W$ absorbing.*

Problem 2.6 *Find the values of v, v_1, v_2 and i in Figure 2.19.*
Answer: *$i = 1A$, $v_2 = 20V$, $v_1 = 100V$, $v = 140V$.*

Problem 2.7 *Assume $i_{ab}=0$ and $v_{ab}=0$, find R_x given R_1, R_2 and R_3 in Figure 2.20*
Answer: *$R_x = \frac{R_2}{R_1} \times R_3$.*

Problem 2.8 *Find the current, voltage and power for each element in the circuit shown in Figure 2.21 and state whether each is absorbing or delivering energy.*
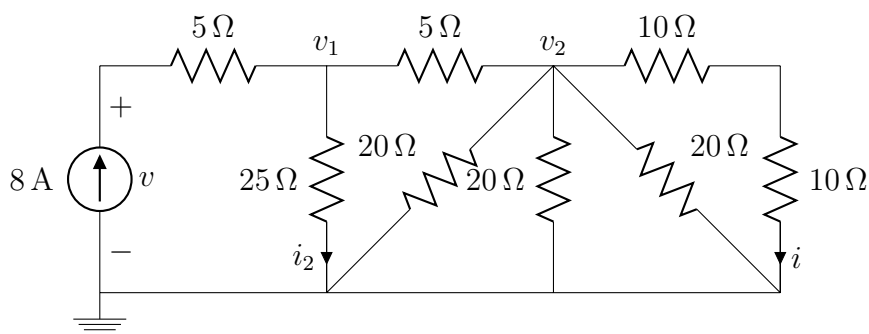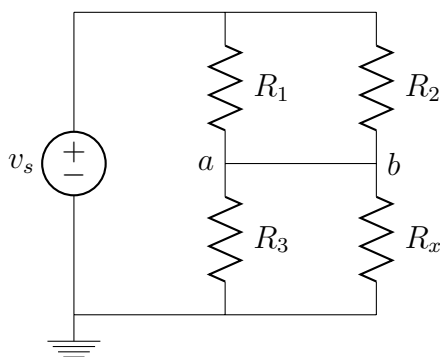
Figure 2.19: Circuit Diagram for Problem 2.6

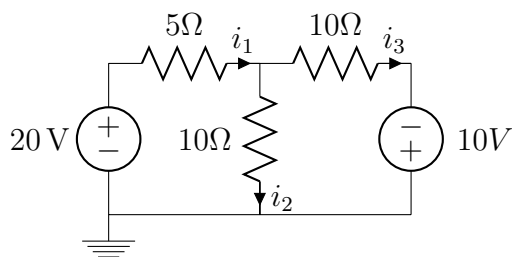Figure 2.20: Circuit Diagram for Problem 2.7

Figure 2.21: Circuit Diagram for Problem 2.8

Answer: $v = 7.5V$, $i_1 = 2.5A$, $i_2 = 7.5A$, $i_3 = 1.75A$, *Resistors: absorbing* $30.25W$, $6.625W$, $30.625W$ *and sources: delivering* $50W$, $17.5W$.

Chapter 3

DC Circuits

After learning the two fundamental laws – KVL and KCL – governing the electrical quantities, v and i, in a circuit, we now focus ourselves on the circuit theorems that can speed up calculations, allowing us to replace an original circuit with an equivalent circuit.

3.1 Network Theorems / Circuit Theorems

The concept of network theorems are a very important and powerful circuit analysis tool that we will frequently employ on many occasions, thereby, speeding up computations of voltages and currents when analyzing a circuit.

3.1.1 Equivalence

Two electrical circuits are equivalent if they have the same $v - i$ characteristics at the external terminals, $\forall R$. So **equivalence** simply says that the load attached to external terminals (or terminals of interest) can not tell differences which circuit the load is attached to.

It should be clear to the readers that **equivalence does not mean the internal structure of the underlying two circuits must look the same**. Generally, they are not.

Example 3.1 (Equivalence) *[2, Page 33] Find the current i so that circuit A and B are equivalent.*
Solution: *For circuit A, we obtain KVL*

$$v_A = 3i_A + 5$$

From circuit B, we have

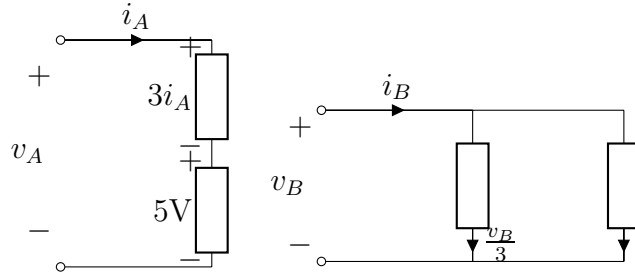$$i_B = \frac{v_B}{3} + i, \quad (or \quad v_B = 3i_B - 3i)$$

Figure 3.1: Example 3.1, Notion Equivalence

To have equivalence, we must require $i_A = i_B$ and $v_A = v_B$, yielding $i = -\frac{5}{3}A$.

□

3.1.2 Source transformations

Independent voltage source and independent current source can be converted into each other mutually. That is, one can always convert a voltage source in series with a resistor into the corresponding current source in parallel with the same resistor. To illustrate, consider the following circuit diagram and if the two circuits are identical in terms of their external behaviors, having the same current and voltage measured at the terminals a and b, the load can not tell what type of sources is attached. The notion is demonstrated below.
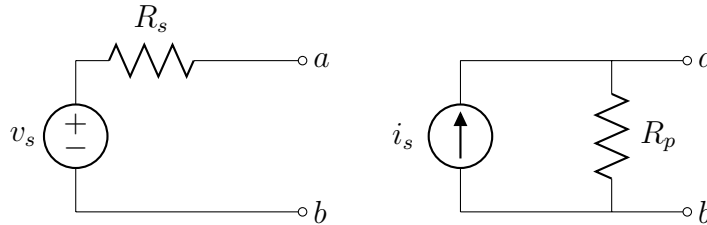

Figure 3.2: Source Transformation

Notice that the voltage polarity $+$ is labeled at the top where the arrow of current direction is. By definition of equivalence, the two circuits have the same $v - i$ characteristics for **all** resistances. Although we can try two resistors of any values, these two resistors – $R = \infty$ and $R = 0$ – are used since they have physical meanings. To start, we use open circuit technique to the circuits shown above and find

$$\text{Open circuit } (R = \infty) : v_{ab} = v_s \text{ and } v_{ab} = i_s R_p, \text{ respectively}$$

Similarly, short circuit analysis yields

$$\text{Short circuit } (R = 0) : i_{ab} = v_s/R_s \text{ and } i_{ab} = i_s, \text{ respectively}$$

By definition of equivalence, we have

$$i_s = \frac{v_s}{R_s}, \quad R_p = R_s \tag{3.1}$$

The identity (3.1) says that given v_s and R_s (a voltage source in series with a resistor) can be converted into current source i_s in parallel with a resistor R_p and vice versa.

3.1.3 Network reduction

Network reduction can enable us to simplify a complex circuit into a simple circuit by converting resistors into one equivalent resistor, depending on their series or parallel structures. We start our analysis for resistor networks displayed in Figure 3.3 for a series network and Figure 3.4 for a parallel network.
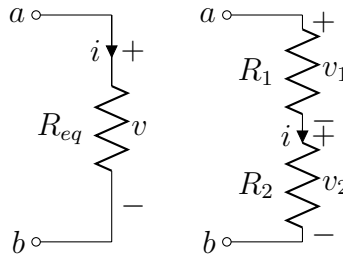
Resistors in series

Figure 3.3: Series Equivalent

Since resistors in series have the same current flowing in the resistors, we have, applying KVL,

$$v = iR_{eq}$$

for the circuit on the left and

$$v = v_1 + v_2 = iR_1 + iR_2 = i(R_1 + R_2)$$

for the circuit on the right in Figure 3.3. By equivalence, we must have

$$R_{eq} = R_1 + R_2$$

In general, we have

$$R_{eq} = R_1 + R_2 + \cdots + R_n = \sum_i^n R_i$$
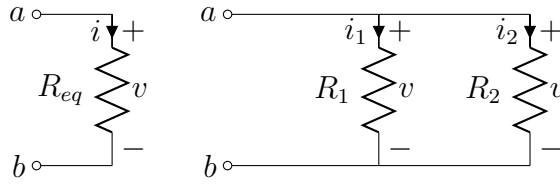
Resistors in parallel

Figure 3.4: Parallel Equivalent

Parallel circuits have same voltage across the parallel combinations. The circuit on the right yields

$$i = i_1 + i_2 = \frac{v}{R_1} + \frac{v}{R_2} = v(\frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2})$$

and the circuit on the left gives

$$i = v\frac{1}{R_{eq}}$$

Therefore, by equivalence, we have

$$\frac{1}{R_{eq}} = \frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} \; or \; G_{eq} = G_1 + G_2$$

In general, we have

$$\frac{1}{R_{eq}} = \frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \cdots + \frac{1}{R_n} = \sum_i^n \frac{1}{R_i} = \sum_i^n G_i$$

Inductors in series

Now replacing the resistors R_1, R_2 and R_{eq} in Figure 3.3 with L_1, L_2 and L_{eq} and using the same derivation techniques shown for resistors, we immediately have

$$v = v_1 + v_2 = L_1\frac{di}{dt} + L_2\frac{di}{dt} = (L_1 + L_2)\frac{di}{dt}$$

and

$$v = L_{eq}\frac{di}{dt}$$

Therefore, the equivalence condition yields

$$L_{eq} = L_1 + L_2$$

In general, we have

$$L_{eq} = L_1 + L_2 + \cdots + L_n = \sum_i^n L_i$$

Inductors in parallel

Now replacing the resistors R_1, R_2 and R_{eq} in Figure 3.4 with L_1, L_2 and L_{eq}, we have

$$i = i_1 + i_2 = \frac{1}{L_1} \int_0^t v d\tau + \frac{1}{L_2} \int_0^t v \, d\tau = (\frac{1}{L_1} + \frac{1}{L_2}) \int_o^t v \, d\tau$$

and

$$v = \frac{1}{L_{eq}} \int_o^t v \, d\tau$$

Therefore, we have

$$\frac{1}{L_{eq}} = \frac{1}{L_1} + \frac{1}{L_2}$$

In general, we have

$$\frac{1}{L_{eq}} = \frac{1}{L_1} + \frac{1}{L_2} + \cdots + \frac{1}{L_n} = \sum_i^n \frac{1}{L_i}$$

Capacitors in series

Now replacing the resistors R_1, R_2 and R_{eq} in Figure 3.3 with C_1, C_2 and C_{eq}, we have

$$v = v_1 + v_2 = \frac{1}{C_1} \int_0^t i \, d\tau + \frac{1}{C_2} \int_0^t i \, d\tau = (\frac{1}{C_1} + \frac{1}{C_2}) \int_0^t i \, d\tau$$

and

$$v = \frac{1}{C_{eq}} \int_o^t i \, d\tau$$

Therefore the following identity holds

$$\frac{1}{C_{eq}} = \frac{1}{C_1} + \frac{1}{C_2}$$

In general, we have

$$\frac{1}{C_{eq}} = \frac{1}{C_1} + \frac{1}{C_2} + \cdots + \frac{1}{C_n} = \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{1}{C_i}$$

Capacitors in parallel

Now replacing the resistors R_1, R_2 and R_2 in Figure 3.4 with C_1, C_2 and C_{eq}, we have

$$i = i_1 + i_2 = C_1 \frac{dv}{dt} + C_2 \frac{dv}{dt} = (C_1 + C_2) \frac{dv}{dt}$$

and

$$i = C_{eq} \frac{dv}{dt}$$

Therefore

$$C_{eq} = C_1 + C_2$$

In general, we have

$$C_{eq} = C_1 + C_2 + \cdots + C_n = \sum_{i=1}^n C_i$$

Example 3.2 (Network Reduction) *Use circuit reduction technique and solve the following circuit to find the power delivered by the 6V voltage source.*
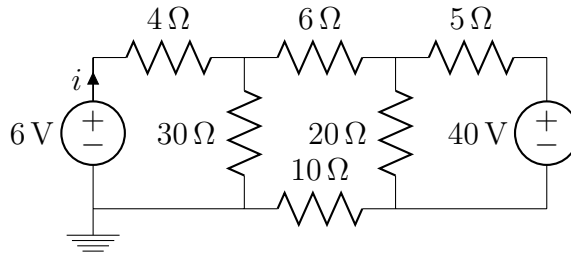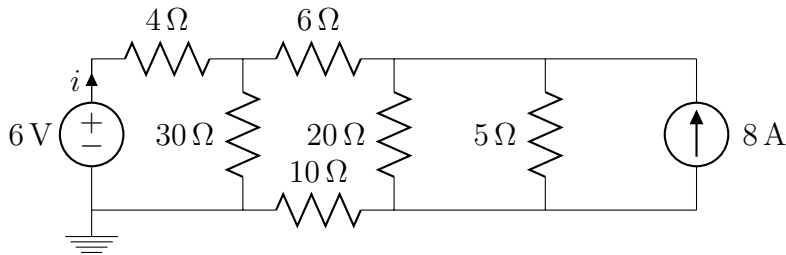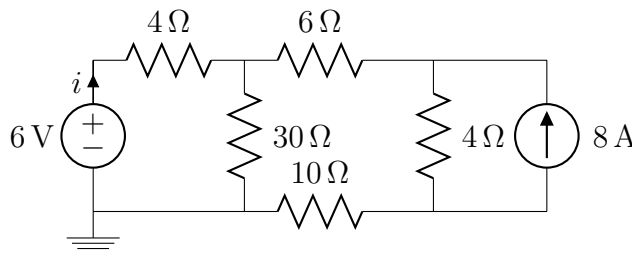

Figure 3.5: Circuit Diagram for Example 3.2

Solution:

Step 1: Convert 40V voltage source in series with a resistor into 8A current source in parallel with the same resistor.

*Step 2: Parallel reduction 20//5 = 4Ω*

Step 3: Convert 8A current source in parallel with 4Ω into 8V voltage source in series with the same resistor.

Step 4: Apply source conversion on the 32V voltage in series with 4Ω resistor.

Step 5: Repeat the process mentioned above again to generate a single loop circuit. For the single loop circuit, simple calculation obtains $i_a = \frac{19.2-6}{16} = 0.825A$. $P_{6V} = vi = 6(-0.825) = -4.95W$, generating. This is equivalent to say 4.95W, consuming.

□
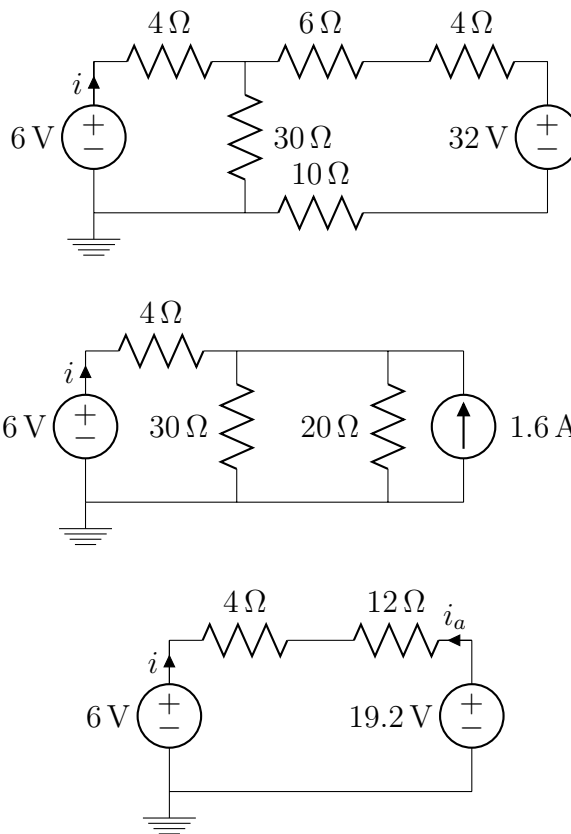
3.1.4 Thevenin equivalent circuit. EE lab verification
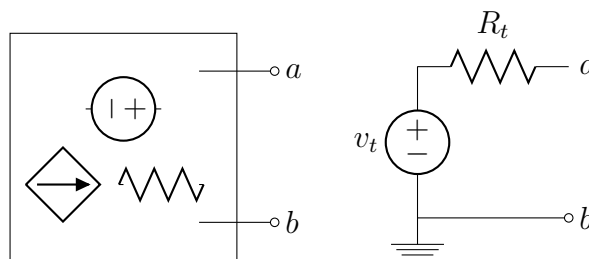

Figure 3.6: Thevenin Equivalent

Thevenin theorem, in honor of M.L. Thevenin, is given below as the circuits shown in Figure 3.6. We inspect the open circuit first, realizing that no current can flow through an open circuit. Thus the Thevenin source voltage v_t is equal to the open circuit voltage of the original network, an equivalent constraint

$$v_{ab} = v_t = v_{oc}$$

Secondly, we analyze the short circuit, realizing that the current of the Thevenin equivalent can be obtained by Ohms's law v_t/R_t. Thus the Thevenin short circuit current v_t/R_t is equal to the short circuit current of the original network, an equivalent constraint.

$$i_{ab} = \frac{v_t}{R_t} = i_{sc}$$

In addition, observing the Thevenin circuit in Figure 3.6, we find that zeroing / deactivating the Thevenin voltage source, replacing it by a short circuit, the resistance seen at the terminals is the Thevenin resistance. This also implies that if deactivating all independent voltage sources, we can find the equivalent resistance immediately.

PSpiceLab 3.1 *Use PSpice to find Thevenin equivalent circuit using (1) open and short circuit techniques and (2) a switching element.*
Solution:
PreLab: Understand the equivalence between open and short, compared with a switch. To find v_{oc} simply attach a resistance, say 5 Mega, to the terminals of concern. To find I_{sc}, just close the terminal with a line representing short-circuit. Once these voltage and current are found, resistor is determined by $R = \frac{v_{oc}}{I_{sc}}$. A fairly quick method is to attach a switch that will open at some time, say $t_0 > 0$, after simulation taken place. Then plot the v (y) vs. i (x) of the same terminals and the slope means R.
Lab: Follow the steps to see the results.
PostLab: What happens if the pin is chosen wrongly?

□

3.1.5 Norton equivalent circuit, EE Lab verification
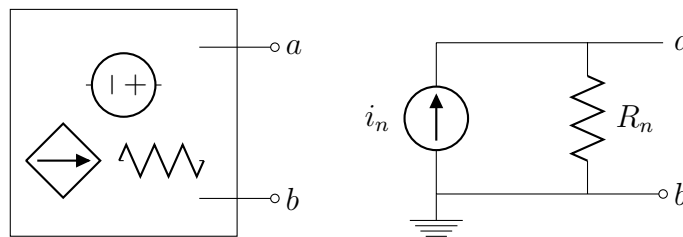

Figure 3.7: Norton Equivalent

Norton theorem, in honor of Edward Norton, is given below as the Norton equivalent shown in Figure 3.7. We follow the derivation shown for Thevenin equivalent, yielding

$$\text{Short circuit } (R = 0) \quad : \quad i_{ab} = i_n = i_{sc}$$
$$\text{Open circuit } (R = \infty) \quad : \quad v_{ab} = i_n R_n = i_s R_n = v_{oc}$$

If we zero/deactivate the Norton current source in Figure 3.7, replacing it by an open circuit, the Norton equivalent becomes a resistance of R_p. Just as deactivation of voltage sources holds for finding equivalent resistance, we can find the equivalent resistance immediately by deactivating current sources. In sum, we conclude that

- If a network has NO dependent sources, we can find the Thevenin/Norton resistance by zeroing the independent sources, a zero voltage being shorted and a zero current source being opened.

- It should be noted that the network must be resistive.

- What shall we do if the network contains dependent sources? We will answer this concern after some examples.

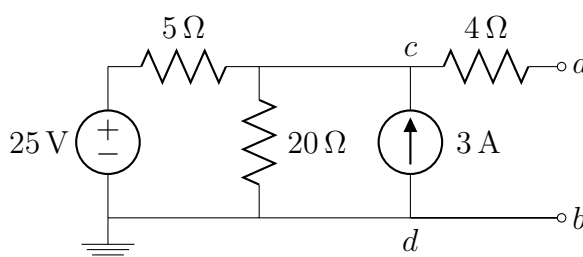**Example 3.3 (Thevenin Theorem)** *Find the Thevenin equivalent circuit seen by terminal ab.*

Figure 3.8: Circuit Diagram for Example 3.3

Solution: *We will demonstrate this example by analyzing open circuit ($R = \infty$) and short circuit ($R = 0$) analysis.*
v_{ab}=*open circuit voltage*

$$\frac{v_{ab} - 25}{5} + \frac{v_{ab}}{20} - 3 = 0 \rightarrow v_{ab} = 32V$$

i_{ab}=*short circuit current*

$$\frac{v_{cd} - 25}{5} + \frac{v_{cd}}{20} - 3 + \frac{v_{cd}}{4} = 0 \rightarrow v_{cd} = 16V$$

From which, we obtain

$$i_{ab} = \frac{v_{cd}}{4} = \frac{16}{4} = 4A \quad R_t = \frac{v_{ab}}{i_{ab}} = \frac{32}{4} = 8\Omega$$

There is another way of determining the Thevenin resistance by zeroing the voltage sources and current sources respectively. Then find the equivalent resistance from the

terminals of concern. For this example, we see the equivalent resistance seen from terminal ab is $4 + 5//20 = 8\Omega$. An equivalent Thevenin circuit is given below.

Another approach is to use different resistances, for example, $R = 6\Omega$ and $R = 16\Omega$. Actually, we can select any two resistances when analyzing the problem.[1]

Assume that $R = 6\Omega$ is connected to the ab terminals. To find i_{ab}, we need to find v_{cd} first. Thus we label the node-voltage v_{cd} at the top, picking ground node at the bottom. KCL yields

$$\frac{v_{cd} - 25}{5} + \frac{v_{cd}}{20} - 3 + \frac{v_{cd}}{10} = 0 \rightarrow v_{cd} = \frac{160}{7}V$$

from which we find

$$i_{ab} = \frac{16}{7}A$$

Repeat step 1 just shown one more time for the case where $R = 16\Omega$ is attached at terminals ab

$$\frac{v_{cd} - 25}{5} + \frac{v_{cd}}{20} - 3 + \frac{v_{cd}}{20} = 0 \rightarrow v_{cd} = \frac{80}{3}V$$
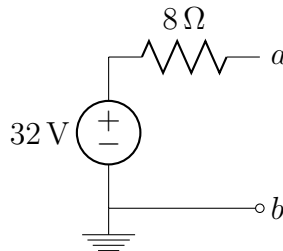
from which we find

$$i_{ab} = \frac{4}{3}A$$

To find the equivalent circuit, we need to find the corresponding i_{ab} for the Thevenin circuit which satisfies the following constraint when $R = 6\Omega$ and $R = 16\Omega$ are attached, respectively.

$$i_{ab} = \frac{v_t}{R_t + 6} = \frac{16}{7} \quad or \quad 7v_t - 16R_t = 96$$

$$i_{ab} = \frac{v_t}{R_t + 16} = \frac{4}{3} \quad or \quad 4v_t - 8R_t = 64$$

Solving, we obtain the same Thevenin circuit as the first method did.

This example shows that to find Thevenin/Norton equivalents, we need two different resistors to form two simultaneous equations to solve for $v_s(i_n)$ and R_s. Yet $R = 0$ and $R = \infty$ are recommended for their simplicity.

---

[1]Why is that two resistances are sufficient to solve the problem?

□

Example 3.4 (Thevenin Theorem) *Given the same circuit in the last example 3.3, find the Thevenin equivalent circuit seen by the 20Ω resistance, (assuming that a 6Ω is attached at terminal cd.)*
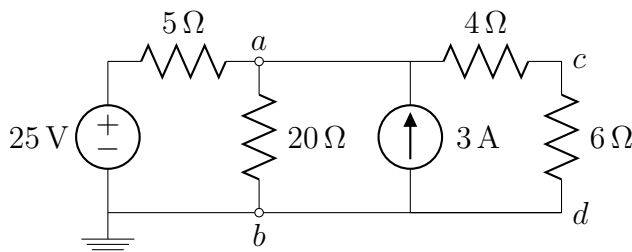

Figure 3.9: Circuit Diagram for Example 3.4

Solution: *We will demonstrate this example by analyzing open circuit $(R = \infty)$ and short circuit $(R = 0)$ analysis.*

v_{ab}=open circuit voltage

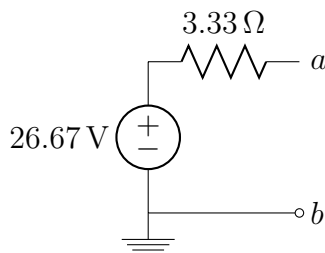$$\frac{v_{ab} - 25}{5} + \frac{v_{ab}}{10} - 3 = 0 \rightarrow v_{ab} = \frac{80}{3}$$

i_{ab}=short circuit current

$$i_{ab} = \frac{25}{5} + 3 = 8A$$

From which, we obtain

$$R_t = \frac{v_{ab}}{i_{ab}} = \frac{10}{3}\Omega$$

To find the equivalent resistance via zeroing independent sources, we find $5//10 = \frac{10}{3}\Omega$.

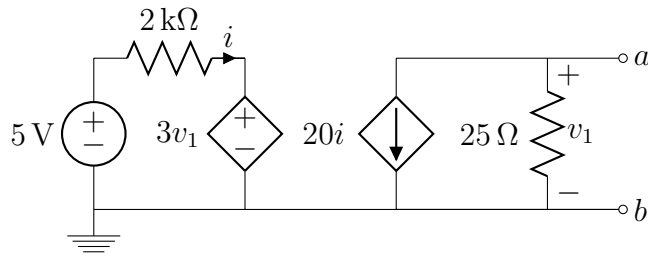*Another approach is to use different resistances, for example, $R = 6\Omega$ and $R = 16\Omega$.*

□

Figure 3.10: Circuit Diagram for Example 3.5

Example 3.5 (Thevenin Equivalent with Dependent Source) *Solve the following circuit.*
Solution: *Open circuit analysis yields*

$$v_{ab} = v_1 = -20i \times 25 = -500i$$

where

$$i = \frac{5 - 3v_1}{2K}$$

Thus, we have

$$v_1 = -5V$$

Short circuit analysis finds

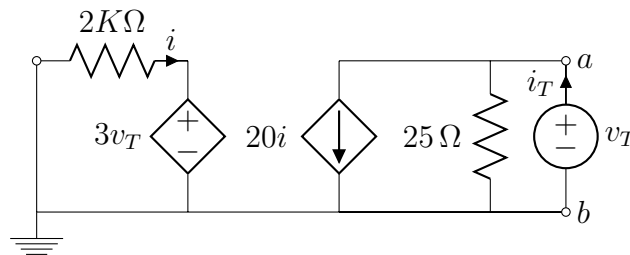$$i_{sc} = -20i = -20\frac{5}{2K}$$

This is because ab is shorted, and thus $v_1 = 0$. This means that the dependent source $3v_1 = 0$. Thus,

$$i_{sc} = -50mA$$

Ohm's law gives

$$R_{TH} = \frac{-5}{-50} \times 10^3 = 100\Omega$$

Another method to find equivalent resistance: Zeroing the independent voltage source

is equivalent to replace independent voltage source by a short circuit. Thus we have

$$i_T = \frac{v_T}{25} + 20i$$

Furthermore,

$$i = \frac{0 - 3v_T}{2K} = -\frac{3v_T}{2K}$$

Thus

$$G_{TH} = \frac{i_T}{v_T} = \frac{1}{25} - \frac{6}{200} = \frac{1}{100}\Omega, \ \ meaning \ R_{TH} = 100\Omega$$

Noting that the numerical values of v_T and i_T are NOT important, only their ratio matters. Therefore, one may assume $v_T = 1$ and solve for the corresponding numerical values of i_T so that $R_{TH} = \frac{1}{i_T}$.

□

Although there exists a way zeroing independent sources to determine equivalent resistance when only independent sources are involved, we will frequently be asked to determine equivalent resistance when dependent sources are involved. How to solve such problems? The following diagrams illustrate the idea.
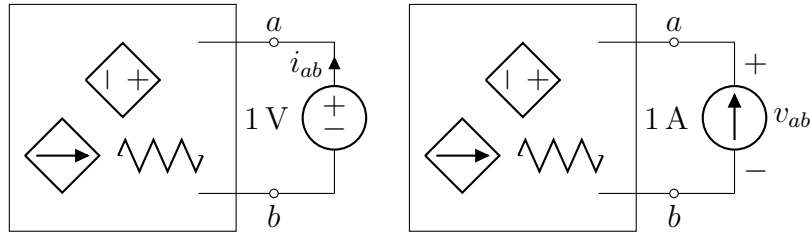

Figure 3.11: Determination of Equivalent Resistance

It is readily clear from the diagram that the equivalent resistance is obtained as

$$R_{eq} = \frac{1}{i_{ab}} \ \ or \ \ R_{eq} = \frac{v_{ab}}{1}$$

Also be aware that only dependent sources are allowed. If there are independent sources, deactivate the independent source first.

Example 3.6 *[2, Page 103] Determine the equivalent resistance at terminals ab for the circuit below.*
Solution: *Applying a 1-V voltage source across terminals ab and using KCL at node c, we have*

$$\begin{aligned} i_y &= i_z + 4i_y \\ i_y &= \frac{1 - 3i_z - v_c}{2} \\ v_c &= 3i_z \end{aligned}$$
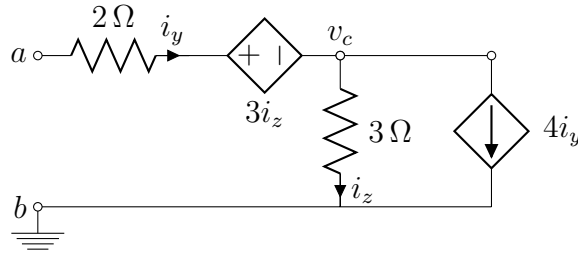
Figure 3.12: Circuit Diagram for Example 3.6

Substituting, we have

$$\frac{v_c}{3} + 3\frac{1 - 2v_c}{2} = 0$$

Solving for v_c, we have $v_c = \frac{9}{16}$, $i_z = \frac{3}{16}$ and $i_y = -\frac{1}{16}$. This means

$$R_{eq} = \frac{v_{ab}}{i_{ab}} = \frac{1V}{i_y = -1/16} = -16\Omega$$

A second method, which is the best compared with the first method, is to apply a 1-A current source to terminals ab. Accordingly, we constrain the controlling variable i_y, which becomes

$$i_y = 1A$$

The current i_z then becomes, with KCL applied at node c

$$i_z = -4i_y + i_y = -3A$$

Applying KCL around the left loop gives

$$v_{ab} = 2i_y + 3i_z + 3i_z = -16V$$

This means

$$R_{eq} = \frac{v_{ab}}{i_{ab}} = \frac{-16}{i_y = 1} = -16\Omega$$

Obviously, the choice of test sources (whether a voltage source or current source) is somewhat arbitrary since either will lead to the same result. However, if a choice will pin down a controlling variable of a controlled source, that will be the best choice.[2]

□

Example 3.7 *Given the circuit in Figure 3.13, (a) attach a test source at terminal ab to determine the equivalent resistance seen by terminal ab. (b) Find the Thevenin*
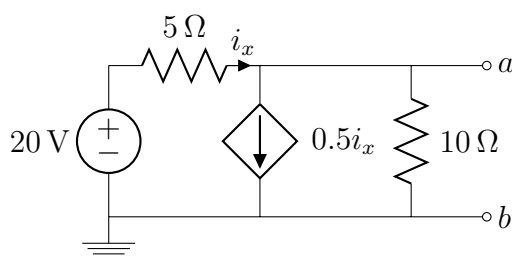
Figure 3.13: Circuit Diagram for Example 3.7

and Norton equivalent circuit seen by terminal ab and draw the circuit diagram.
Solution: *Firstly, disable the independent source.*
(a) *Use a unity voltage source* to find $i_{sc} = 0.2A$ and thus $R_t = \frac{1}{0.2} = 5\Omega$. (b)
$V_{oc} = 10V$, $I_{sc} = 2A$, $R_t = 5\Omega$.

□

PSpiceLab 3.2 (Pspice Simulation for EE Lab) *Re-do your lab examples by checking the theoretical/true values using Pspice program.*

□

3.2 Circuits Analysis

When circuit elements and electrical sources are connected by wires, becoming a network, it is concerned by a circuit engineer to understand the currents flowing in each elements and the voltage across each elements. Two methods are introduced to answer the concerned.

3.2.1 Loop-current approach (Mesh method)

This section explains how to solve a circuit problem based on solving a set of simultaneous KVL equations. In loop-current analysis, we write voltage equations and solve for the loop-current eventually. Once the loop-currents are found, it is relatively easy to find the currents, voltages, and powers for each element in the circuit.

Circuits with no current sources (i.e. only voltage sources)

Example 3.8 *Solve the following circuit.*

---

[2]Solve Example 3.5 with current source attached to terminals *ab*. Hint: Assume a current flowing into 25 Ω.
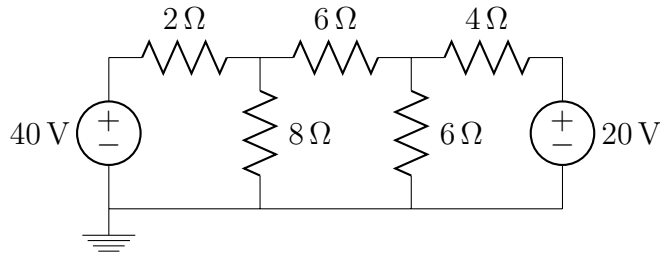
Figure 3.14: Circuit Diagram for Example 3.8

Solution: *After labeling the loop currents for each mesh in a clockwise direction and assigning the voltage polarity arbitrarily, we have, traveling around the loop clockwise and summing voltages,*

$$-40 + 2i_1 + 8(i_1 - i_2) = 0$$
$$-[-8(i_2 - i_1)] + 6i_2 + 6(i_2 - i_3) = 0$$
$$-[-6(i_3 - i_2)] + 4i_3 + 20 = 0$$

*Solving these simultaneous equations yields $i_1 = 5.6A$, $i_2 = 2A$, $i_3 = -0.8A$. To solve these equations, a MATLAB script **inv** can be used. Put the equations into a compact matrix form displayed below:*

$$\begin{bmatrix} 10 & -8 & 0 \\ -8 & 20 & -6 \\ 0 & -6 & 10 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} i_1 \\ i_2 \\ i_3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 40 \\ 0 \\ -20 \end{bmatrix}$$

which has the standard form $Ax = b$, yielding $x = A^{-1}b$ for a solution. For MATLAB, key in the following statements under MATLAB environment.
A=[10 -8 0; -8 20 -6; 0 -6 10]
b=[40; 0; -20]
*x=inv(A)*b*

□

Example 3.9 *Solve the following circuit.*
Solution: *Defining loop currents clockwise for 3 meshes and labeling the voltage polarities, we find*

$$-28 + 6(i_1 - i_2) + 2(i_1 - i_3) = 0$$
$$8i_2 + 5(i_2 - i_3) + 6(i_2 - i_1) = 0$$
$$2(i_3 - i_1) + 5(i_3 - i_2) + 4i_3 + 24 = 0$$

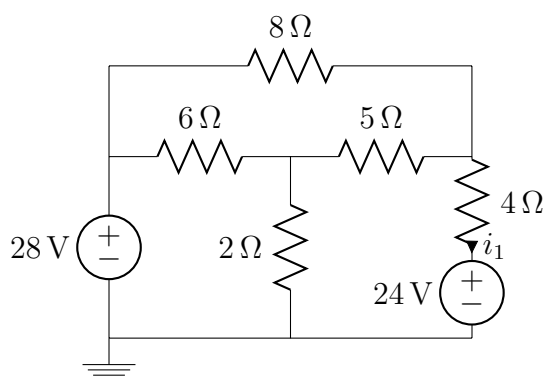*Solving these simultaneous equations generates $i_1 = 4A, i_2 = 1A, i_3 = -1A$.*
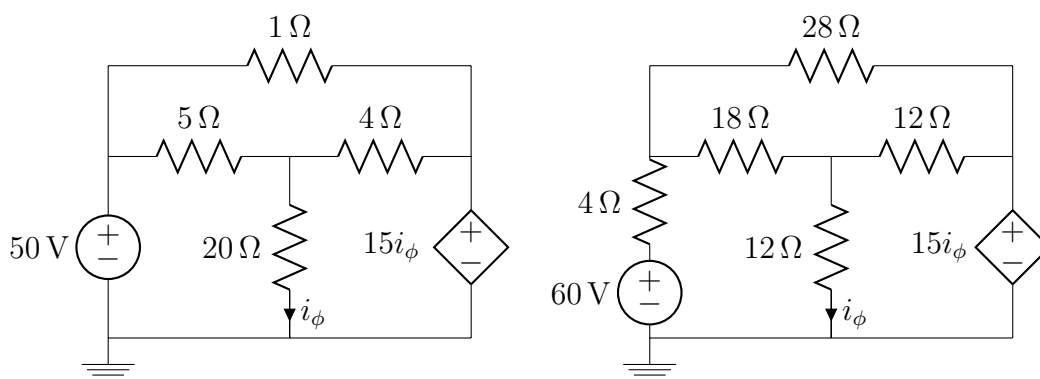
Figure 3.15: Circuit Diagram for Example 3.9

Figure 3.16: Circuit Diagram for Example 3.10-3.11

□

Example 3.10 *Solve the following circuit.*
Solution: *Defining a clockwise loop current direction to all meshes, after the standard procedure stated above is applied, we have*

$$-50 + 5(i_1 - i_2) + 20(i_1 - i_3) = 0$$
$$i_2 + 4(i_2 - i_3) + 5(i_2 - i_1) = 0$$
$$20(i_3 - i_1) + 4(i_3 - i_2) + 15i_\phi = 0$$
$$i_\phi = i_1 - i_3 - \text{Imposed by the presence of dependent source}$$

Solving these simultaneous equations leads to $i_1 = 29.6A$, $i_2 = 26A$, $i_3 = 28A$.

□

Example 3.11 *Solve the following circuit.*
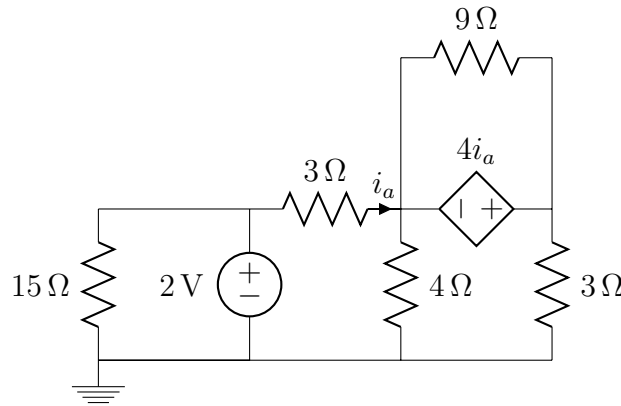
Figure 3.17: Circuit Diagram for Example 3.12

Solution: *Defining a clockwise loop current direction to all meshes, we have*

$$-60 + 4i_1 + 18(i_1 - i_2) + 12(i_1 - i_3) = 0$$
$$18(i_2 - i_1) + 28i_2 + 12(i_2 - i_3) = 0$$
$$12(i_3 - i_1) + 12(i_3 - i_2) + 15i_\phi = 0$$
$$i_1 - i_3 = i_\phi$$

Solving, we have $i_1 = 2.25A$, $i_2 = 0.75A$, $i_3 = 0.25A$.

☐

Example 3.12 *Solve the following circuit.*
Solution: *Defining a clockwise loop current direction to all meshes, we have*

$$15i_1 + 2 = 0$$
$$-2 + 3i_2 + 4(i_2 - i_4) = 0$$
$$9i_3 + 4i_a = 0$$
$$4(i_4 - i_2) - 4i_a + 3i_4 = 0$$
$$i_a = i_2$$

Solving these simultaneous equations, we have $i_1 = -0.1333A$, $i_2 = 0.8235A$, $i_3 = -0.366A$, $i_4 = 0.9412A$.

☐

Circuits with current sources

Sometimes it is impossible to write voltage equations when current sources are encountered. To solve the problem a variable for the unknown voltage at the current

sources is required, an extra algebraic equation needed for the additional variable. However, if we do not want to increase the system equations, supermesh method can be used.

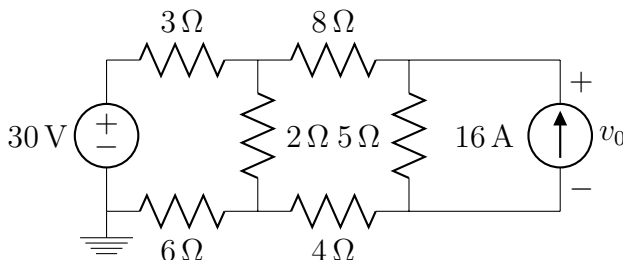**Example 3.13** *Solve the following circuit.*

Figure 3.18: Circuit Diagram for Example 3.13

Solution: *Defining a clockwise loop current direction to all meshes, we have*

$$-30 + 3i_1 + 2(i_1 - i_2) + 6i_1 = 0$$
$$2(i_2 - i_1) + 8i_2 + 5(i_2 - i_3) + 4i_2 = 0$$
$$i_3 = -16$$
$$5(i_3 - i_2) = -v_o$$

Solving these simultaneous equations, we have $i_1 = 2A$, $i_2 = -4A$.

□

Example 3.14 *Solve the following circuit.*
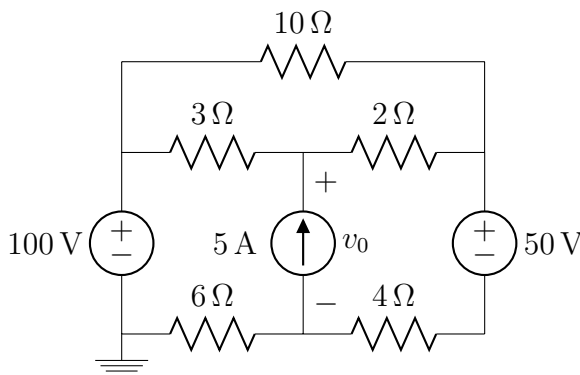
Figure 3.19: Circuit Diagram for Example 3.14

Solution: *Assuming clockwise directions in every mesh, we have*

$$-100 + 3(i_1 - i_2) + v_o + 6i_1 = 0$$
$$10i_2 + 2(i_2 - i_3) + 3(i_2 - i_1) = 0$$
$$-v_o + 2(i_3 - i_2) + 50 + 4i_3 = 0$$
$$i_3 - i_1 = 5$$

Solving these simultaneous equations, we have $i_1 = 1.75A$, $i_2 = 1.25A$, $i_3 = 6.75A$, $v_0 = 88V$. As seen in this example, an extra equation results due to the unknown v_0. To reduce the system number, we apply supermesh method, traveling the outer loop, and obtain

$$-100 + 3(i_1 - i_2) + 2(i_3 - i_2) + 50 + 4i_3 + 6i_1 = 0$$
$$10i_2 + 2(i_2 - i_3) + 3(i_2 - i_1) = 0$$
$$i_3 - i_1 = 5$$

Solving, we have the same solutions. Or better yet, try a bigger current mesh (i.e., supermesh)

$$i_1 = -5$$
$$10i_2 + 2(i_2 - i_3) + 3(i_2 - i_1 - i_3) = 0$$
$$-100 + 3(i_3 + i_1 - i_2) + 2(i_3 - i_2) + 50 + 4i_3 + 6(i_3 + i_1) = 0$$
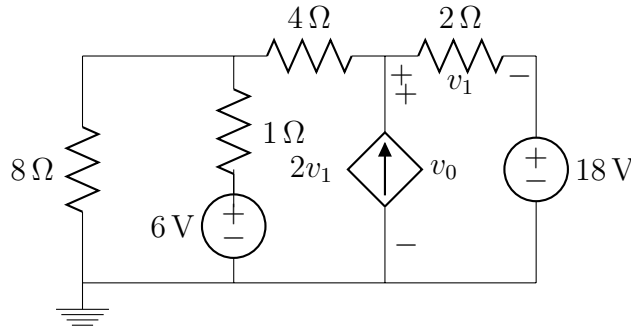
□

Example 3.15 *Solve the following circuit.*

Figure 3.20: Circuit Diagram for Example 3.15

Solution: *Assuming clockwise directions in every mesh, we have*

$$8i_1 + (i_1 - i_2) + 6 = 0$$
$$-6 + (i_2 - i_1) + 4i_2 + v_o = 0$$
$$-v_0 + 2i_3 + 18 = 0$$
$$i_3 - i_2 = 2v_1 = 2 \times 2i_3 \quad thus, i_2 + 3i_3 = 0 \ or \ v_1 = 2i_3$$

Solving these simultaneous equations, we have $i_1 = -1A$, $i_2 = -3A$, $i_3 = 1A$.

□

To summarize, we have the following procedure for loop-current method to solve a circuit problem.

1. Assign variables for each unknown loop-currents.

2. Write network simultaneous equations using KVL (summing of voltage).

3. If current sources are involved, either assign a voltage variable and add an extra equation or use the supermesh method.

4. If dependent sources are involved, extra equations are needed, depending on the number of dependent sources.

5. Use the values solved for the loop-currents to determine other currents, voltages and powers in the circuit.

3.2.2 Node-voltage approach (Nodal method)

This section explains how to solve a circuit problem based on solving a set of simultaneous KCL equations. In node-voltage analysis, we write current equations and solve for the node-voltage eventually. Once the node-voltages have been found, it is relatively easy to find the currents, voltages, and powers for each element in the circuit.

Circuits with no voltage sources (i.e. only current sources)

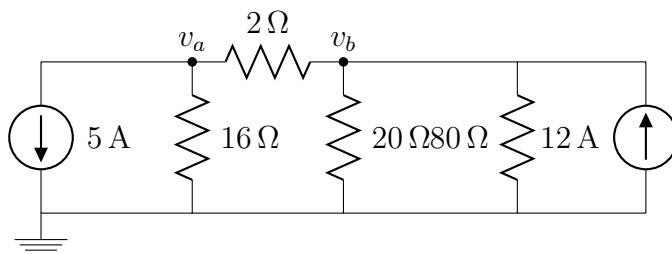**Example 3.16** *Solve the following circuit.*

Figure 3.21: Circuit Diagram for Example 3.16a

Solution: *There are two nodes in the circuit. At node a we apply KCL, adding all of the currents leaving node a and setting the sum to zero,*

$$5 + \frac{v_a}{16} + \frac{v_a - v_b}{2} = 0$$

At node b, KCL yields

$$\frac{v_b}{20} + \frac{v_b}{80} - \frac{v_a - v_b}{2} - 12 = 0$$

Solving these simultaneous equations, we have $v_a = 48V$, $v_b = 64V$. Or using of network theorem on source transformation, we have the following circuit diagram after reduction. From which a single loop equation is easily obtained
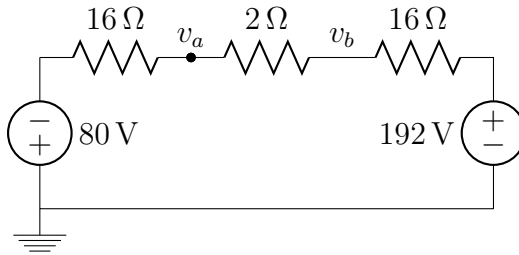

Figure 3.22: Circuit Diagram for Example 3.16b

$$I = \frac{192 - (-80)}{34} = 8$$
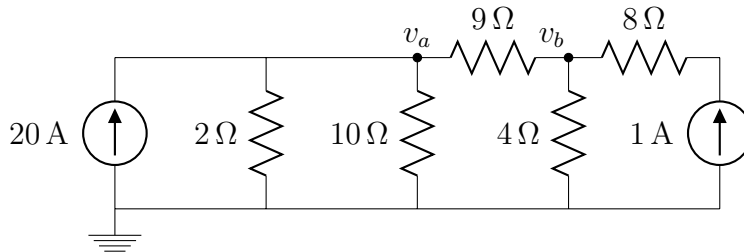$$v_a - 16 \times 8 = -80$$

Therefore $v_a = 48\,V$.

□

Example 3.17 *Solve the following circuit.*

Figure 3.23: Circuit Diagram for Example 3.17

Solution: *Assume entering current is positive and we have*

$$20 - \frac{v_a}{2} - \frac{v_a}{10} + \frac{v_b - v_a}{9} = 0$$

Similarly, at node b, we have

$$-\frac{v_b - v_a}{9} - \frac{v_b}{4} + 1 = 0$$

Solving these simultaneous equation, we have $v_a = 30V$, $v_b = 12V$.

□

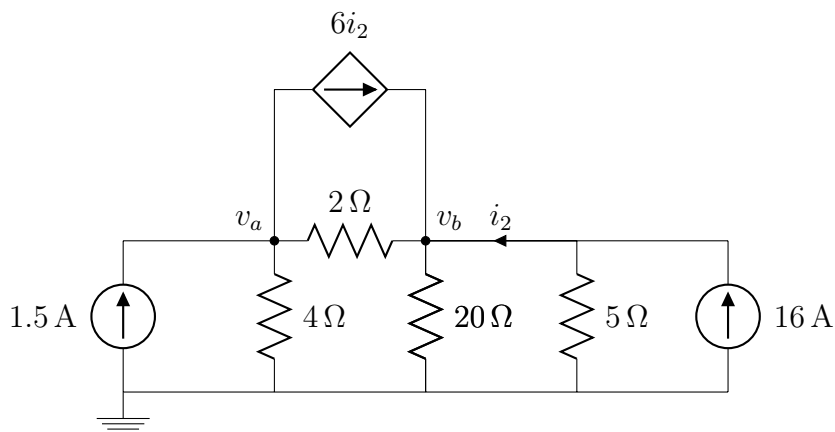**Example 3.18 (Dependent Current Sources)** *Solve the following circuit.*

Figure 3.24: Circuit Diagram for Example 3.18

Solution: *Assume entering current is positive and we have*

$$1.5 - \frac{v_a}{4} - \frac{v_a - v_b}{2} - 6i_2 = 0$$

$$6i_2 + \frac{v_a - v_b}{2} - \frac{v_b}{20} + i_2 = 0$$

$$i_2 = -\frac{v_b}{5} + 16$$

Solving the simultaneous equations, we have $v_a = 10\,V$, $v_b = 60\,V$, $i_2 = 4A$.

□

Example 3.19 (Dependent Current Sources) *Solve the following circuit.*
Solution: *Assume entering current is positive and we have*

$$-\frac{v_a}{15} + 2 - i_a = 0$$

$$i_a - \frac{v_b}{4} - \frac{v_b - v_c}{9} + 4i_a = 0$$

$$\frac{v_b - v_c}{9} - 4i_a - \frac{v_c}{3} = 0$$

$$i_a = \frac{v_a - v_b}{3}$$

Solving the simultaneous equations, we have $v_a = 15\,V$, $v_b = 12\,V$, $v_c = -6\,V$.
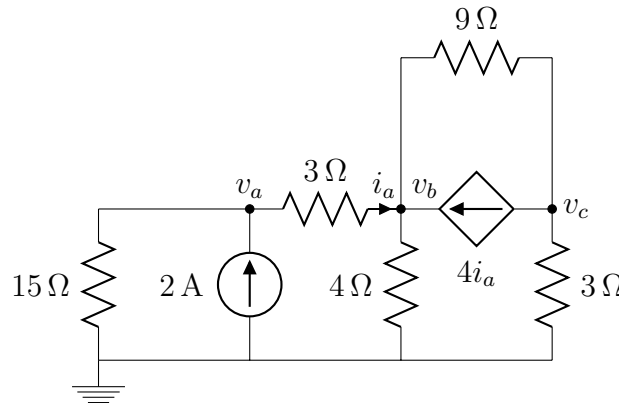
□

Figure 3.25: Circuit Diagram for Example 3.19

Circuits with voltage sources

When voltage sources are involved, it is, in some cases, hard to write KCL at each node. Again to solve the problem a variable is needed for the unknown current flowing through the voltage source. Thus an extra algebraic equation results. However, such case can be avoided, if super node notion is applied.
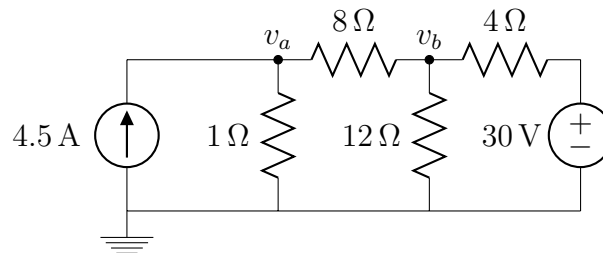
Example 3.20 *Solve the following circuit.*

Figure 3.26: Circuit Diagram for Example 3.20

Solution: *Summing the current entering node a, we have*

$$4.5 - \frac{v_a}{1} - \frac{v_a - v_b}{8} = 0$$

Similarly, at node b, KCL yields

$$\frac{v_a - v_b}{8} - \frac{v_b}{12} + \frac{30 - v_b}{4} = 0$$

Solving simultaneous equations, we have $v_a = 6V$, $v_b = 18V$.
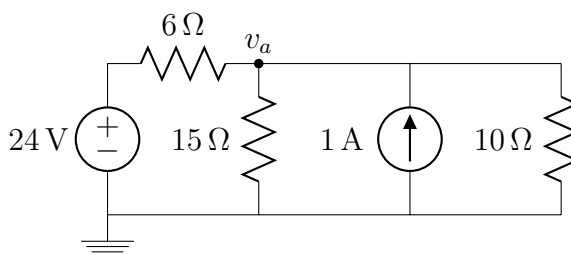
□

Figure 3.27: Circuit Diagram for Example 3.21

Example 3.21 *Solve the following circuit.*
Solution: *Summing the currents leaving node a, we have*

$$\frac{v_a - 24}{6} + \frac{v_a}{15} - 1 + \frac{v_a}{10} = 0$$

Therefore $v_a = 15V$.
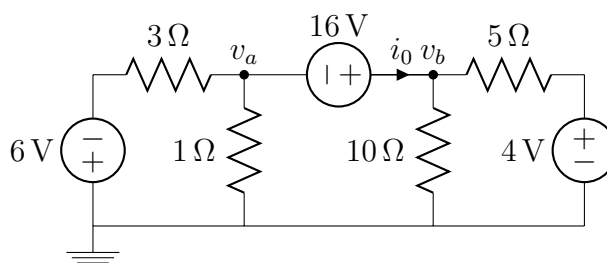
□

Example 3.22 *Solve the following circuit.*

Figure 3.28: Circuit Diagram for Example 3.22

Solution: *Summing the currents leaving node a, we have*

$$\frac{v_a + 6}{3} + \frac{v_a}{1} + i_0 = 0$$

Similarly, at node b, we have

$$-i_0 + \frac{v_b}{10} - \frac{4 - v_b}{5} = 0$$

Since a voltage source appears between node a and node b, it is impossible to write current equations for both nodes without assigning an unknown i_0 for the current flowing through the $-16V$ voltage source, requiring an extra equation.

$$v_b = v_a + 16$$

Solving simultaneous equations, we have $v_a = -3.6735V$, $v_b = 12.3265V$. Another way to obtain a current equation is to form a supernode where V_a and V_b are circled and viewed as a supernode and then apply KCL

$$\frac{v_a + 6}{3} + \frac{v_a}{1} + \frac{v_b}{10} - \frac{4 - v_b}{5} = 0$$
$$v_b = v_a + 16$$

from which we obtain the same solution $v_a = -3.673V$, $v_b = 12.327V$.
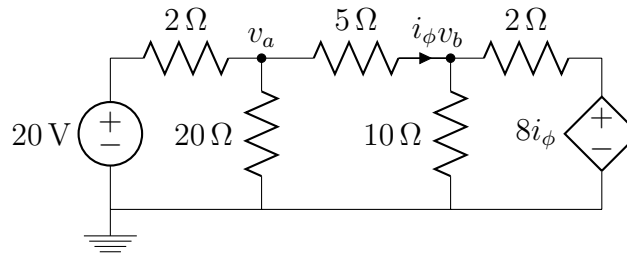
□

Example 3.23 *Solve the following circuit.*

Figure 3.29: Circuit Diagram for Example 3.23

Solution: *Summing the currents entering node a and node b, we have*

$$\frac{20 - v_a}{2} - \frac{v_a}{20} - \frac{v_a - v_b}{5} = 0$$
$$\frac{v_a - v_b}{5} - \frac{v_b}{10} + \frac{8i_\phi - v_b}{2} = 0$$

Next, find an expression for the controlling variable in terms of node-voltages. This is because the diamond shape indicates it is a dependent source, an extra equation required.

$$i_\phi = \frac{v_a - v_b}{5}$$

Solving simultaneous equations, we have $v_a = 16V$, $v_b = 10V$, $i_\phi = 1.2A$.

□

Example 3.24 (Dependent Voltage Sources) *Solve the following circuit.*
Solution: *Summing the currents entering node a and assigning an unknown current i_0 through the dependent source, we have*
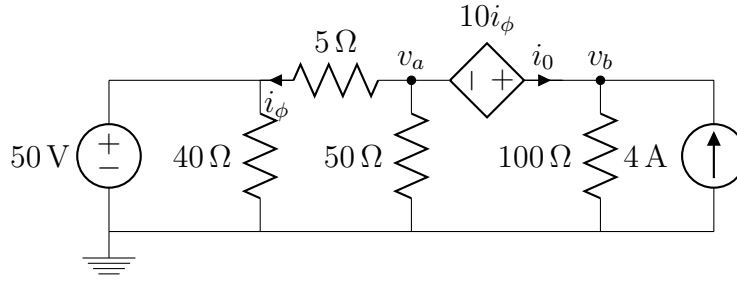
$$-i_\phi - \frac{v_a}{50} - i_0 = 0$$

Figure 3.30: Circuit Diagram for Example 3.24

Similarly, at node b, we have

$$i_0 - \frac{v_b}{100} + 4 = 0$$

Next, find an expression for the controlling variable in terms of node-voltages

$$v_b = v_a + 10i_\phi$$
$$i_\phi = \frac{v_a - 50}{5}$$

Solving simultaneous equations, we have $v_a = 60V$, $v_b = 80V$, $i_0 = -3.2A$. Or using supernode method where v_a and v_b are circled and viewed as a supernode yields

$$-i_\phi - \frac{v_a}{50} - \frac{v_b}{100} + 4 = 0$$
$$v_b = v_a + 10i_\phi$$
$$i_\phi = \frac{v_a - 50}{5}$$

□

Example 3.25 (Wheatstone Bridge) *[1, Page 97] Given the following circuit where R_1, R_2 and R_3 are known. Find the resistance R_x when balanced condition $i_{ab} = 0$ and $v_{ab} = 0$ is reached.*[3]
Solution: *Writing KCL at note a and b, respectively, leads to*

$$i_1 = i_{ab} + i_3 \ \ and \ \ i_2 + i_{ab} = i_4$$

since $i_{ab} = 0$, we have

$$i_1 = i_3 \ \ and \ \ i_2 = i_4$$

Traveling clockwise around upper triangle and lower triangle, KVL yields

$$R_1i_1 + v_{ab} = R_2i_2 \ \ and \ \ v_{ab} + i_4R_x = R_3i_3$$

---

[3]Given the wheatstone bridge above where $R_1 = 1\Omega, R_2 = 2\Omega, R_3 = 3\Omega, R_x = 4\Omega$, terminal ab is open and $v_s = 0$, find the equivalent resistance seen from terminal ab.
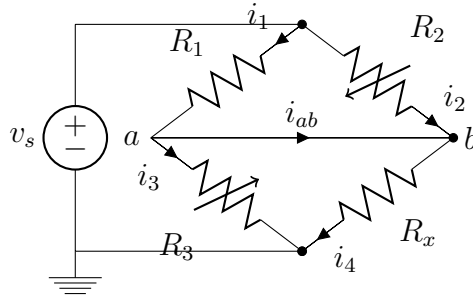
Figure 3.31: Circuit Diagram for Example 3.25

since $v_{ab} = 0$, we have

$$R_1 i_1 = R_2 i_2 \text{ and } R_3 i_3 = i_4 R_x$$

Dividing each side of the first equation by the respective side of the second equation, we have

$$\frac{R_1 i_1}{R_3 i_3} = \frac{R_2 i_2}{R_x i_4}$$

since $i_1 = i_3$ and $i_2 = i_4$, we have

$$\frac{R_1}{R_3} = \frac{R_2}{R_x}$$

This example tells that by adjusting R_2 and R_3, we are able to measure R_x when balance condition is reached.

Having gone through the examples in details, we summarize in below the solving procedure for node-voltage method:

1. Assign variables for each unknown node-voltages.

2. Write network equation using KCL.

3. If voltage sources are involved, either assign a current variable, adding an extra equation or use the supernode method.

4. If dependent sources are involved, extra equations are needed, depending on the number of dependent sources.

5. Use the values solved for the node-voltages to determine other currents, voltages and powers in the circuit.

3.3 Principle of Superposition

A function $f(x)$ is linear if $f(ax_1 + bx_2) = af(x_1) + bf(x_2), a, b \in R$. In other words, the total response is the sum of individual responses. In circuit terms, for circuits

containing N independent sources, any element voltage (or current) in that circuit is composed of the sum of N contributions, each of which is due to one of the independent sources acting individually when all others are set equal to zero (being deactivated). **A deactivated independent source is replaced by a short circuit while a deactivated independent current source is replaced by an open circuit**.

Circuits with independent sources

The concept of superposition is better explained by given out an example.

Example 3.26 (Circuits with Independent Sources) *Find currents due to voltage sources and current sources, respectively.*
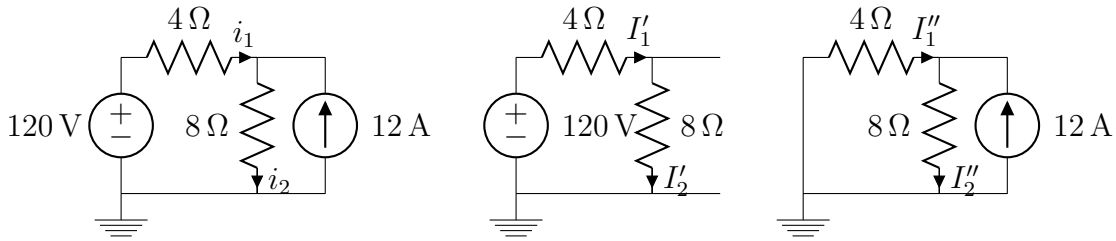
Figure 3.32: Superposition for Example 3.26

Solution: *For circuit T, writing KCL at node a yields*

$$\frac{120 - v_a}{4} + 12 = \frac{v_a}{8}$$

Solving, we have $v_a = 112V$, $i_1 = (120 - 112)/4 = 2A$ and $i_2 = 112/8 = 14A$. For T', a simple Ohm's law yields

$$i_1' = i_2' = \frac{120}{12} = 10A$$

For T'', a simple current divider yields

$$i_1'' = -12(\frac{8}{12}) = -8A, i_2'' = 4A$$

Notice that $i_1 = i_1' + i_1''$ and $i_2 = i_2' + i_2''$.

Circuits with dependent sources

Example 3.27 (Circuits with Dependent Sources) *Find currents due to different sources respectively.*
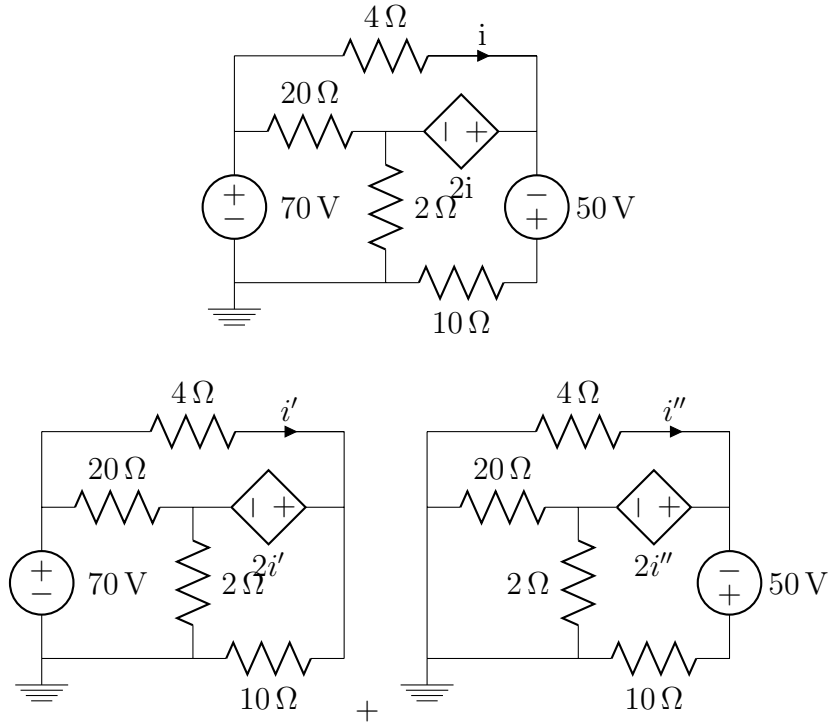**Solution:** *Firstly, we decompose the overall circuit into two different circuits with*

Figure 3.33: Superposition for Example 3.27

single source only.
For circuit T, writing KVL for 3 individual loop yields (assuming clockwise direction)

$$70 = 20(i_a - i_b) + 2(i_a - i_c)$$
$$0 = 4i_b + 2i_b + 20(i_b - i_a)$$
$$50 = -2i_b + 2(i_c - i_a) + 10i_c$$

Solving, we have $i_a = 13A$, $i_b = 10A$, *and* $i_c = 8A$.
    For T′, we have

$$70 = 20(i_a' - i_b') + 2(i_a' - i_c')$$
$$0 = 4i_b' + 2i_b' + 20(i_b' - i_a')$$
$$0 = -2i_b' + 2(i_c' - i_a') + 10i_c'$$

Solving, we have $i_a' = 11.6170A$, $i_b' = 8.9362A$, *and* $i_c' = 3.4255A$.
    For T″, we have

$$0 = 20(i_a'' - i_b'') + 2(i_a'' - i_c'')$$
$$0 = 4i_b'' + 2i_b'' + 20(i_b'' - i_a'')$$
$$50 = -2i_b'' + 2(i_c'' - i_a'') + 10i_c''$$

Solving, we have $i_a'' = 1.3830A$, $i_b'' = 1.0638A$, and $i_c'' = 4.5745A$, confirming that $i_a = i_a' + i_a''$, $i_b = i_b' + i_b''$, and $i_c = i_c' + i_c''$.

We conclude that **dependent sources do not contribute to a separate term to the total response***. This is because if we zero both of the independent sources, the total response becomes zero.*

3.4   Recap

Chapter 3 summarizes many important notions. They are listed here.

• Equivalence means same $v - i$ behaviors looking into a set of terminals ab.

• Thevenin/Norton equivalents are the most important, because they can be a representative of a big and complex system. It is a good model for analysis.

• To find Thevenin/Norton equivalents, two (open and short) circuits are instrumental. Don't forget to attach the element, if any, to the resulting Thevenin/Norton equivalents.

• Source transform and network reductions are instrumental for speed computations.

• Zeroing an active source means open up or close up the source terminals.

• Node-voltage and loop-current methods are based on KCL and KVL principles.

• The number of simultaneous equations depends on (1) number of current/volage variables (2) number of extra variables assigned (V_0, I_0), and (3) number of dependent sources.

• Supernode or supermesh techniques have their own merits.

• Never disable dependent sources when superposition is applied because dependent sources rely on the existence of independent sources. Only independent source can be zeroed.

• Circuits have the linear property. When input is multiplied by α, the output will increase by α times the nominal output.

3.5   Problems

Equivalence

Problem 3.1 *Determine the current $v(t)$ and $i(t)$ in Figure 3.34 such that the two circuits are equivalent at terminal ab.*
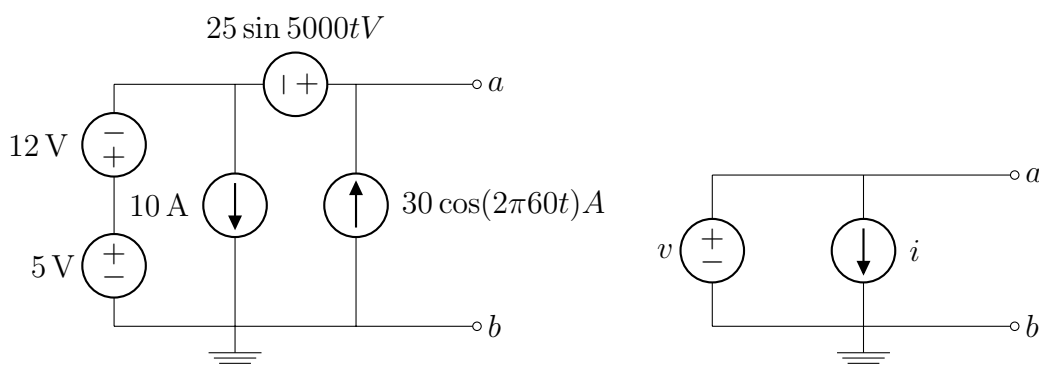

Figure 3.34: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.1

Answer: $i = 10 - 30\cos(2\pi 60t)A$, $v = 5 - 12 + 25\sin 5000tV$.

Problem 3.2 *In the Figure 3.35, find the equivalent resistance looking in at terminals cd (a) if terminals a and b are open. (b) If terminals a and b are shorted. (c) If terminals a and b are connected with a voltage source v_s, find the value of the voltage $v_{cd} = v_c - v_d$.*
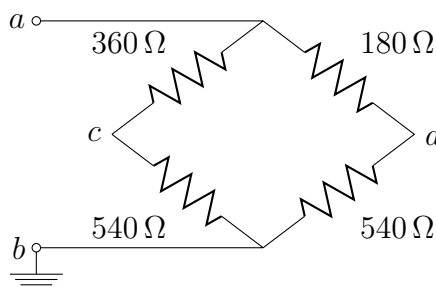
Figure 3.35: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.2

Answer: *(a) 360Ω (b) 351Ω (c) $v_{cd} = \frac{3}{20}v_s$.*

Problem 3.3 *Given the Figure 3.36, (a) find Thevenin equivalent resistance seen from terminal ab. (Hint: connect a 1-A current source across terminals ab, then solve the network by node-voltage method.) (b) If the line segment $\overline{12}$ is moved to the dotted line position, what is the equivalent resistance seen from terminal ab? (no need to attach any external source.)*
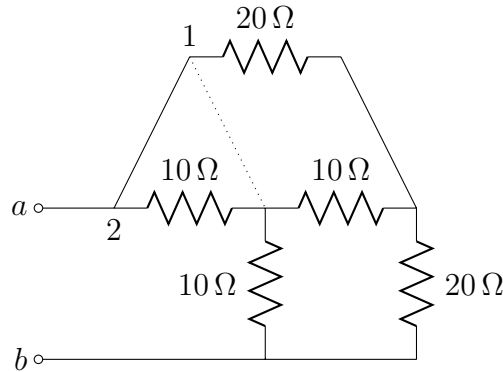
Figure 3.36: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.3

Answer: *(a) $190/11 = 13.333\Omega$. (b) $\frac{190}{11}\Omega$.*

Problem 3.4 *Determine the equivalent resistance at terminal ab shown in Figure 3.37.*
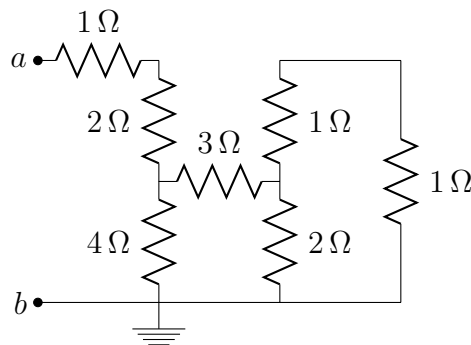
Figure 3.37: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.4

Answer: *5Ω.*

Problem 3.5 *Given the Figure 3.38, find the Thevenin equivalent seen by R_L and the Norton equivalent seen by R_L.*
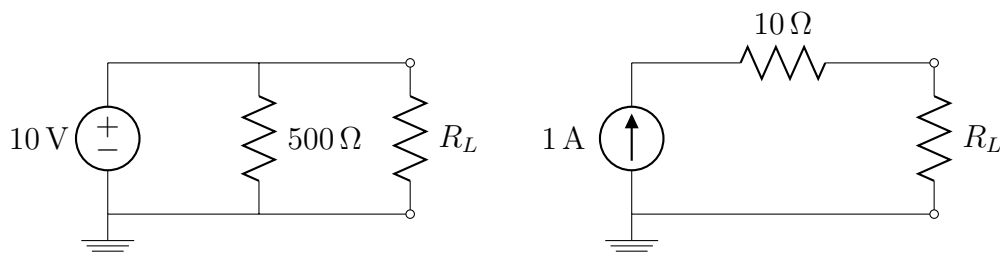
Figure 3.38: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.5

Answer: *(a) $v_{oc} = 10V$, $R_{th} = 0\Omega$. (b) $i_{sx} = 1A$, $R_{th} = \infty\Omega$. (This example justifies the notion that voltage sources are always in series with a resistor and current sources are always in parallel with a resistor.)*

Problem 3.6 *Given the Figure 3.39, use source transformation to solve for the values of i_1, i_2.*
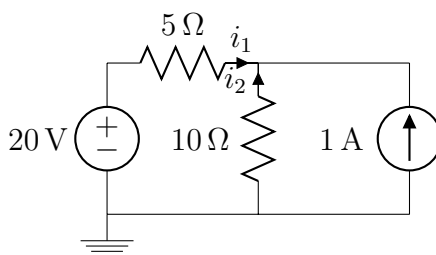
Figure 3.39: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.6

Answer: *(a) $i_1 = 1A$, $i_2 = 2A$.*

Problem 3.7 *Given the Figure 3.40, find the Thevenin equivalent circuit.*
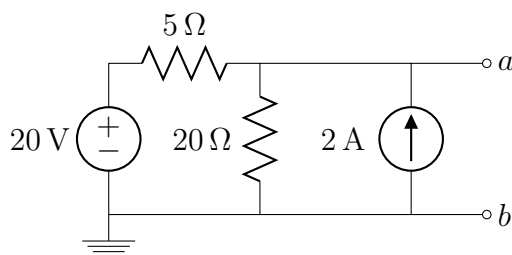
Figure 3.40: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.7

Answer: *(a) $v_{oc} = 4V$. (b) $R_{th} = 4\Omega$.*

Problem 3.8 *Find the Thevenin equivalent for the circuit shown in Figure 3.41 by finding (a) open-circuit voltage and (b) short-circuit current.*
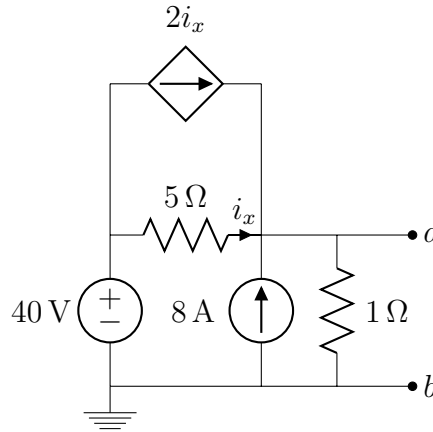

Figure 3.41: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.8

Problem 3.9 *In the Figure 3.42, (a) find the short-circuit current. (b) Find the open-circuit voltage. (c) Find the Norton equivalent resistance by inspection. (d) Draw the Norton equivalent circuit seen from terminal ab. (e) The current flowing in 2Ω resistor. (f) The power consumed by the 2Ω resistor.*
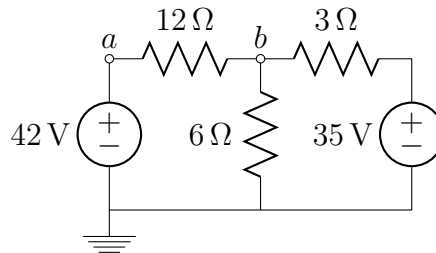
Figure 3.42: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.9

Answer: *(a) $i_{ab} = \frac{28}{3}$. (b) $v_{ab} = \frac{56}{3}$. (c) $R_{th} = 2$. (d) $i_{12\Omega} = \frac{4}{3}$. (d) $P_{12\Omega} = \frac{64}{3}$.*

Problem 3.10 *Given the Figure 3.43, find the Thevenin and Norton equivalent respectively.*
Answer: *(a) $v_{oc} = -5V$, $R_{th} = 3.75$. (b) $i_{sc} = -1.33A$, $R_n = 3.75$.*

Problem 3.11 *Given the circuit in Figure 3.44, (a) solve for the node voltage v_1 and v_2 shown in the figure. (b) Find the current i_x. (c) Find the Thevenin v_{oc} seem from 10Ω resistor. (d) Find the Thevenin i_{sc} seem from 10Ω resistor.*
Answer: *(a) $v_1 = 56V$, $v_2 = 28V$. (b) $i_x = 5.6A$. (c) $v_{oc} = 140V$. (d) $i_{sc} = \frac{28}{3}A$, $R_t = 15\Omega$.*
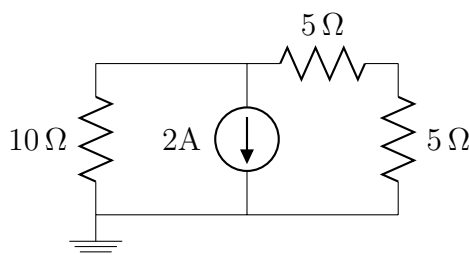
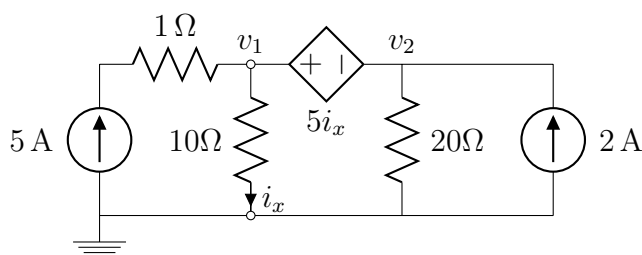Figure 3.43: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.10

Figure 3.44: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.11

Problem 3.12 *Given the circuit in Figure 3.45, (a) attach a test source at terminal ab to determine the equivalent resistance seen by terminal ab. (b) Find the Thevenin and Norton equivalent circuit seen by terminal ab and draw the circuit diagram.*
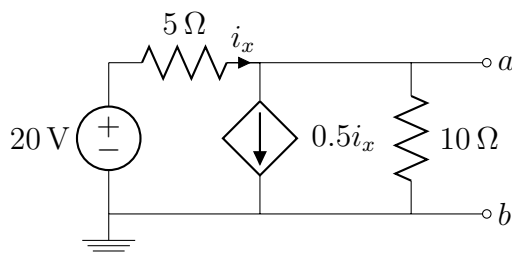

Figure 3.45: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.12

Answer: *(a) Use a unity test voltage source to find $i_{test} = 0.2A$ and thus $R_t = \frac{1}{0.2} = 5\Omega$. (b) $v_{oc} = 10V$, $i_{sc} = 2A$, $R_t = 5\Omega$.*

Problem 3.13 *Given Figure 3.46, when a 100Ω load is attached to a circuit, the load voltage is 10V. When the load is increased to 200Ω, the load voltage becomes 12V. Find and draw the Thevenin and Norton equivalents for the circuit.*
Answer: $R_t = 50\Omega$, $v_t = 15V$.

Problem 3.14 *Find the Thevenin equivalent seen from terminal ab to the left for the circuit in Figure 3.47 and calculate (a) v_{oc}, (b) i_{sc}, (c) R_{th}, and (d) draw the Thevenin*
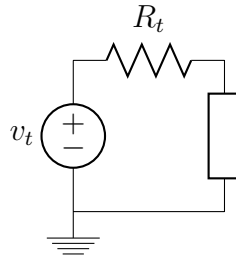
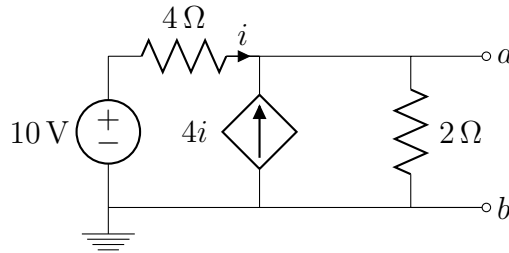Figure 3.46: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.13

equivalent circuit.

Figure 3.47: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.14

Answer: *(a) $v_{oc} = 7.14V$. (b) $i_{sc} = 12.5A$. (c) $R_{th} = 0.57\Omega$.*

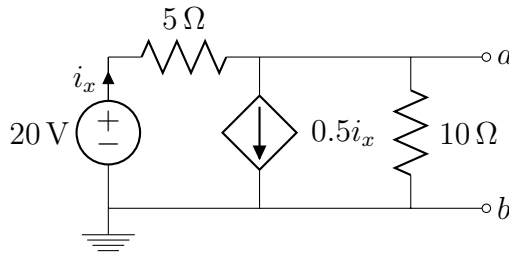**Problem 3.15** *Find the Thevenin circuits for the circuit shown in Figure 3.48.*

Figure 3.48: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.15

Answer: *$v_{ab} = 10V$, $i_{ab} = 2A$, $R_t = 5\Omega$.*

Circuit analysis

Problem 3.16 *Find the i_1 in Figure 3.49 where ground node is not labeled. (a) Which method would you use and why? (b) Indicate your ground node in your diagram and solve for i_1.*
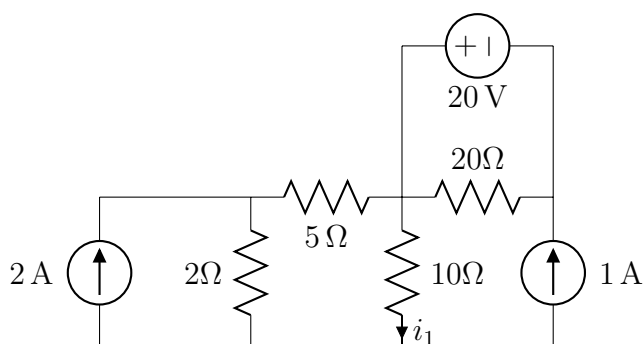
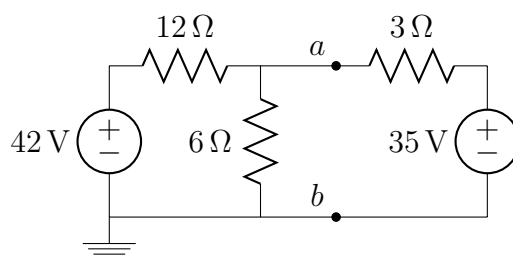Figure 3.49: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.16

Figure 3.50: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.17

Answer: *(a) Label the top node of 1A current source as ground node so that only two nodes are needed to solve the circuit problem. (b) $i_1 = 0.647A$.*

Problem 3.17 *In the Figure 3.50, determine the current in the 3Ω resister using (a) node-voltage method, (b) loop-current method, and (c) Thevenin equivalent seen from terminal ab.*
Answer: *(a) 3A. (b) $i_1 = 1.33A$, $i_2 = 3A$. (c) $v_{oc} = 14V$, $R_{th} = 4\Omega$, $i = 3A$.*

Problem 3.18 *Assuming clockwise current direction for the Figure 3.51, (a) write the simultaneous equation. (b) Solve for the loop current as indicated.*
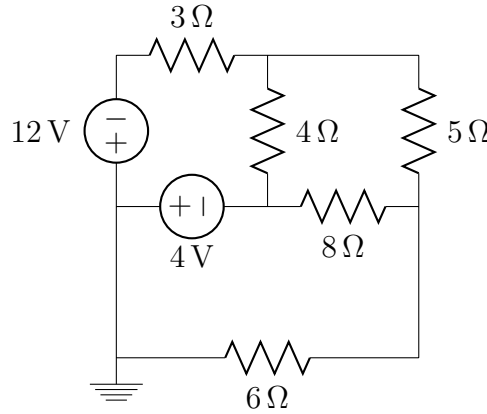

Figure 3.51: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.18

Answer: *(a)* $-12 = 3i_1 + 4(i_1 - i_2) - 4$, $4(i_1 - i_2) = 5i_2 + 8(i_2 - i_3)$, $-4 = 8(i_3 - i_2) + 6i_3$ *(b)* $i_1 = -1.529A, i_2 = -0.676A, i_3 = -0.672A$.

Problem 3.19 *Given the Figure 3.52, (a) find the Thevenin and Norton equivalents. (b) Use superposition method to find the voltage across 2Ω.*
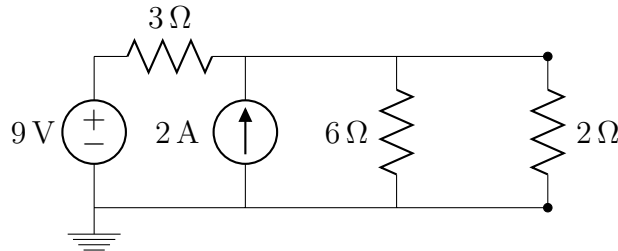

Figure 3.52: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.19

Answer: *(a)* $v_{oc} = 10V$, $R_{th} = 2\Omega$; $i_{sc} = 5A$, $R_{th} = 2\Omega$ *(b)* 3+2=5V.

Problem 3.20 *Given the Figure 3.53, (a) use the node-voltage method to solve for the values of v and i_x. (b) Let the voltage be replaced by 20V voltage source, find the values of v and i_x again.*
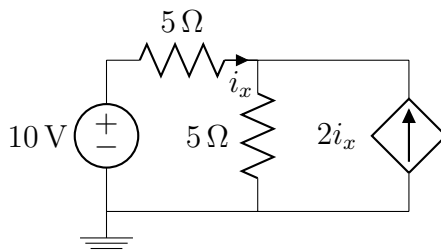

Figure 3.53: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.20

Answer: *(a) $v = 7.5$, $i_x = 0.5A$. (b) $v = 15$, $i_x = 1A$ by linearity property.*

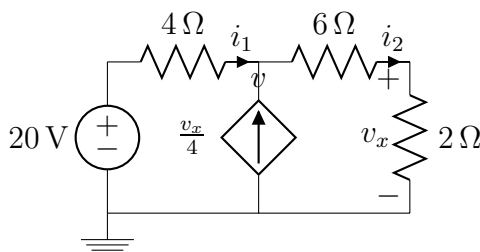**Problem 3.21** *Given the Figure 3.54, solve for the currents.*

Figure 3.54: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.21

Answer: $i_1 = 1A, i_2 = 2A.$

Problem 3.22 *Given the Figure 3.55, find the current i_1, i_2 and i_3.*
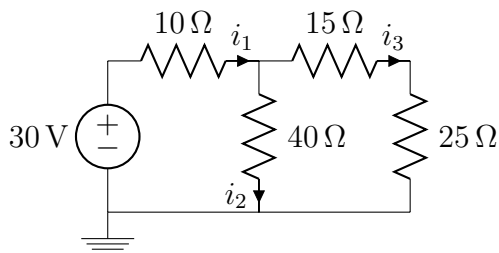

Figure 3.55: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.22

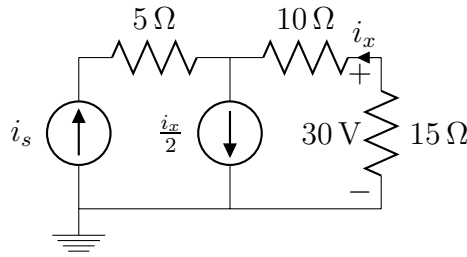**Answer:** $i_1 = 1A$, $i_2 = i_3 = 0.5A.$

Figure 3.56: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.23

Problem 3.23 *Given the Figure 3.56, solve for i_s.*
Answer: $i_s = 1A$.

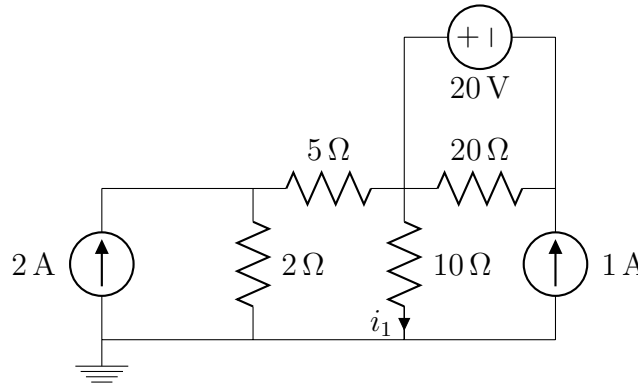**Problem 3.24** *Given the Figure 3.57, use node-voltage method to find the value of i_1.*

Figure 3.57: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.24

Answer: $i_1 = 0.6470A$.

Problem 3.25 *Given the Figure 3.58, determine i by using (a) loop-current method, (b) node-voltage method, and (c) superposition method.*
Answer: *(a) $i = i_1 + i_2 = 2A$. (b) $v = 12V, i = 2A$. (c) $i = i_1 + i_2 = 0.5714 + 1.4826 = 2A$.*

Problem 3.26 *Given the Figure 3.59, find (a) the current i_1, (b) the voltage v_0 and (c) the value of dependent current source.*
Answer: *(a) 0A. (b) 0A. (c) 0A. The capacitor acts as an open element when DC is used because $\bar{Z}_C = \frac{1}{j0C}$.*

Problem 3.27 *Find the voltage v and the current i_1 and i_2 for the circuit in Figure 3.60.*
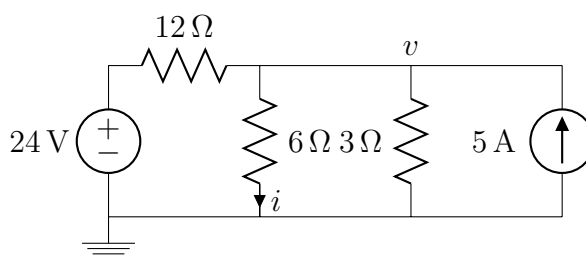**Answer:** $i_1 = \frac{4}{3}A$, $i_2 = \frac{2}{3}A$, $v = 40V$.
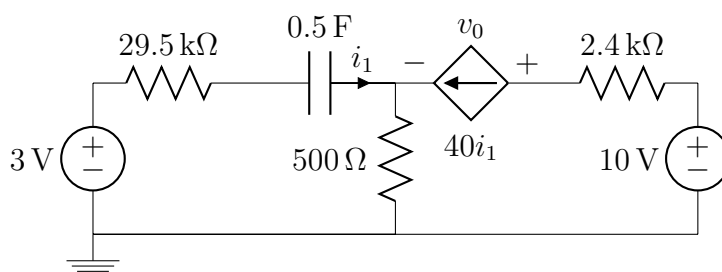
Figure 3.58: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.25
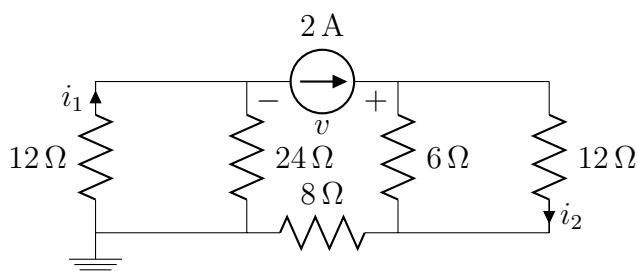

Figure 3.59: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.26

Figure 3.60: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.27

Problem 3.28 *Solve Figure 3.61 for v_1 and v_2.*
Answer: $v_1 = 10.32V$, $v_2 = 6.129V$.

Problem 3.29 *(a) Write a set of KCL for Figure 3.62 below. (b) How to write a set of KCL if the ground node is moved from position a to position b.*
Answer:(a) $\frac{v_1}{R_1} + \frac{v_1 - v_3}{R_2} + \frac{v_2 - v_3}{R_3} = 1$, $\frac{v_1 - v_3}{R_2} + \frac{v_2 - v_3}{R_3} = \frac{v_3}{R_4}$, $v_1 - 10 = v_2$. (b) A third variable v_3 should be labeled and then start writing the KCL. This example demonstrates that proper selection of ground node could simplify computation.*
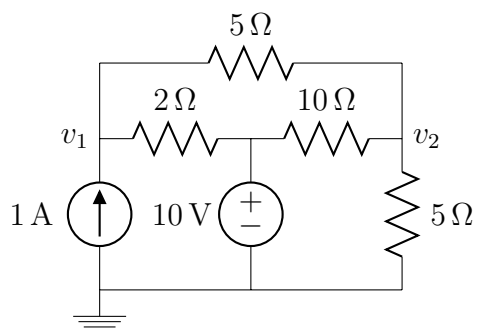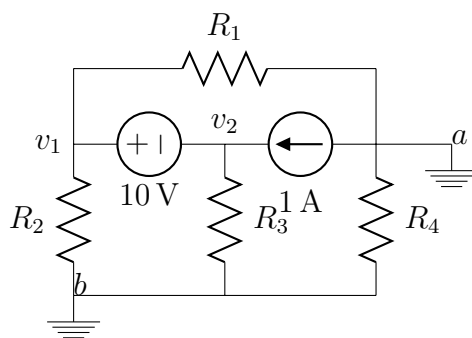
Figure 3.61: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.28

Figure 3.62: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.29

Problem 3.30 *In the Figure 3.63, determine the current in the 3Ω resister using (a) node-voltage method, (b) loop-current method, (c) Thevenin equivalent seen from terminal ab.*
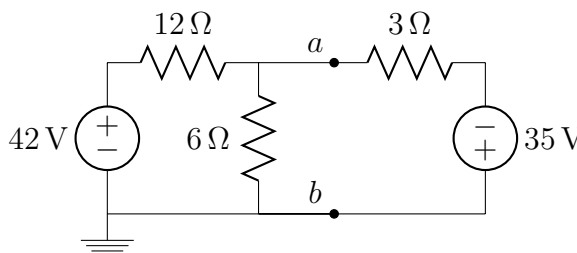

Figure 3.63: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.30

Answer: *(a) $i_{3\Omega} = 2.5714A$, (b) same as (a), (c) $v_{oc} = 16V$, $R_{th} = 3.22$.*

Problem 3.31 *Find the unknown current i_x and the unknown voltage v_x using mesh current analysis for the circuit in Figure 3.64 where the dependent source is related to the currents i_x and i_2 by $v_x = 5(i_2 - i_x)$*
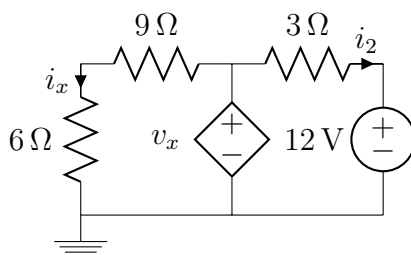

Figure 3.64: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.31

Answer: *$i_x = 4A$, $v_x = 60V$.*

Problem 3.32 *Use mesh-current and node-voltage method to find i_a and i_b in Figure 3.65.*
Answer: *$i_a = 1A$, $i_b = 2A$.*

Problem 3.33 *The current source i_x is related to the voltage v_x in Figure 3.66 by the relation $i_x = v_x/3$, find the voltage across the 8Ω resistor by nodal analysis.*
Answer: *$v_a = 12V$, $v_x = 16V$.*

Problem 3.34 *Find the Thevenin circuit seen from terminal a and b of Figure 3.67. Find the current flowing through a and b due to the 20V voltage source.*
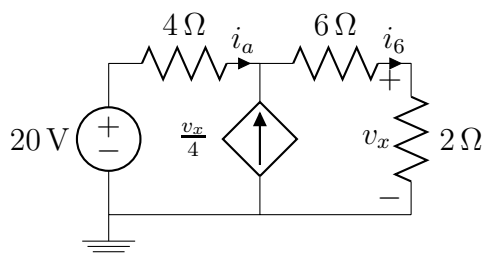**Answer:** *$R_{th} = \frac{10}{3}\Omega$, $i = 1.82A$, $i_1 = 0.73A$.*
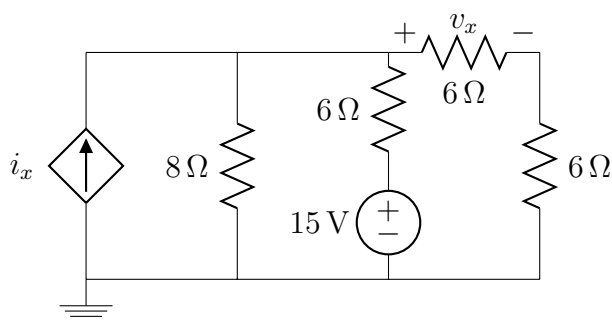
Figure 3.65: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.32
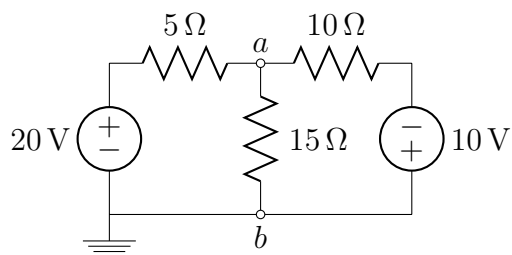

Figure 3.66: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.33

Figure 3.67: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.34

Superposition

Problem 3.35 *Find the responses $v_{1,15V}$ of 10Ω due to $15V$, $v_{2,2A}$ of 5Ω due to $2A$ for the circuit in Figure 3.68. Furthermore, find $v_{1,2A}$ of 10Ω due to $2A$, $v_{2,15V}$ of 5Ω due to $15V$.*
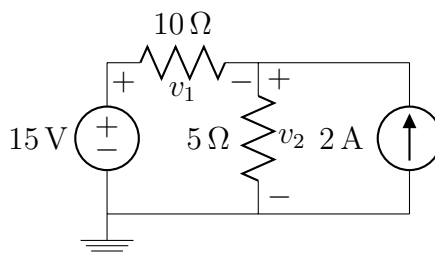

Figure 3.68: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.35

Answer: $v_{1,15} = 10V$, $v_{2,15} = 5V$, $v_{1,2A} = -6.667V$, $v_{2,2A} = 6.667V$.

Problem 3.36 *(a) Find the individual current i in Figure 3.69 due to $3A$ current source and $30V$ voltage source, respectively, using superposition. (b) If the value of $3A$ current source is increased to $6A$, what is the current i?*
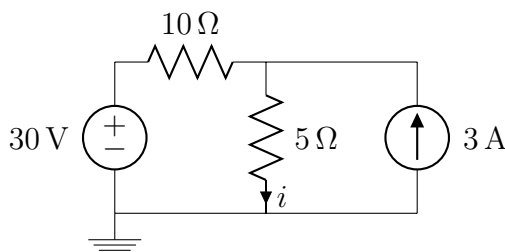
Figure 3.69: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.36

Answer: *Since $i_{30V} = 2A$ and $i_{3A} = 2A$, we have $i = 4A$. (b) $i_{6A} = 4A$, so $i = 6A$.*

Problem 3.37 *(a) Find the voltage v_a and v_b for the circuits of Figure 3.70 by superposition. (b) Find v_a and v_b again when the current source is replaced by $2mA$.*
Answer: *(a) Due to current source, $v_a' = -1.667V$, $v_b' = -1V$. Due to voltage source: $v_a'' = 0.5V$, $v_b'' = 1.5V$. Thus $v_a = -1.167V$, $v_b = 0.5V$. (b) $v_a = 2.167 = 0.5 + 1.667V$, $v_b = 2.5V = 1.5 + 1V$. Since the current source is reversed. By linearity, we have $f(-1x) = -1f(x)$, meaning the output due to the current source is reversed. Note that the voltage source remains the same. implying the output due to the voltage source intact. This example demonstrates that circuits pertain linear property and sometimes can speed up analysis.*

Figure 3.70: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.37

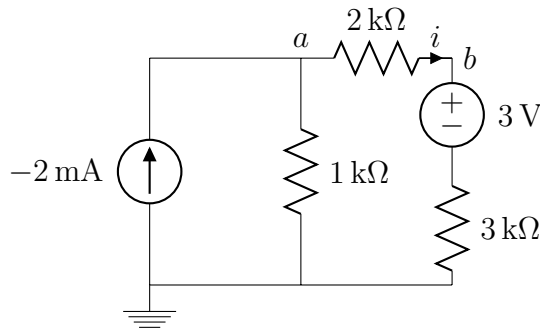**Problem 3.38** *Given the Figure 3.71, use principle of superposition to find the current i_o. (a) Draw individual circuits for each energy source. (b) Find i_o due to 90V voltage-source. (c) Find i_0 due to 30 A current source. (d) Find i_o due to 45 V voltage source. (e) Find total current i_o due to all energy sources.*
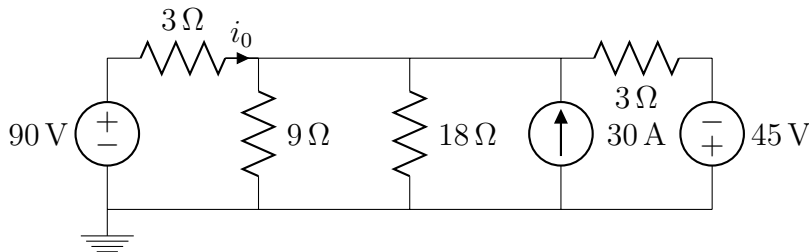

Figure 3.71: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.38

Answer: *(a) Removing voltage sources means shorting the terminals. Removing the current source means opening the terminals. (b) $18A$. (c) $-12A$. (d) $6A$. (e) $12A$.*

Problem 3.39 *Given the circuit in Figure 3.72, (a) how many nodes are there, including ground node? (b) Find the the voltage v at the source. Now let the source be $v = 12V$, find the voltage across 5Ω resistor by (c) using equivalent resistance technique and (d) using superposition technique.*
Answer: *(a) 5 nodes (b) $v = 24V$ (c) $v_{5\Omega} = 0.1 \times 5 = 0.5V$. (d) Knowing $y = f(x)$ for linear systems, we have $\bar{y} = f(\alpha x) = \alpha f(x) = \alpha y$. Since $1 = f(24)$, we have $y = f(12) = f(\frac{1}{2}24) = \frac{1}{2}f(24) = 0.5V$.*

Problem 3.40 *Determine the $\Delta - Y$ equivalent formula in Figure 3.73. That is, given Δ find Y and vice versa.*
Answer: *(a) $R_1 = \frac{R_b R_c}{R_a + R_b + R_c}$, $R_2 = \frac{R_a R_c}{R_a + R_b + R_c}$, $R_3 = \frac{R_a R_b}{R_a + R_b + R_c}$.
(b) $R_a = \frac{R_1 R_2 + R_2 R_3 + R_3 R_1}{R_1}$, $R_b = \frac{R_1 R_2 + R_2 R_3 + R_3 R_1}{R_2}$, $R_c = \frac{R_1 R_2 + R_2 R_3 + R_3 R_1}{R_3}$.*
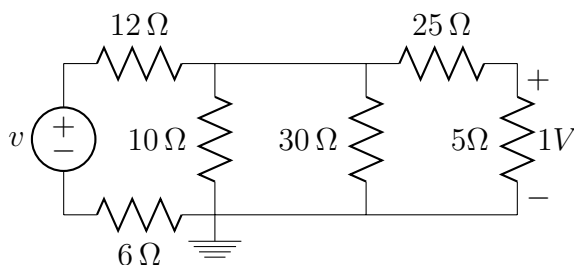
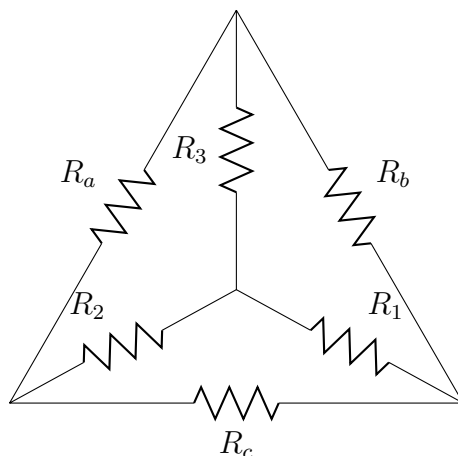Figure 3.72: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.39

Figure 3.73: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.40

Problem 3.41 (Determination of the Ground Node) *Find the i_1 in Figure 3.74 where the ground node is not labeled. (a) Which method would you use and why? (b) Indicate your ground node in your diagram and solve for i_1.*
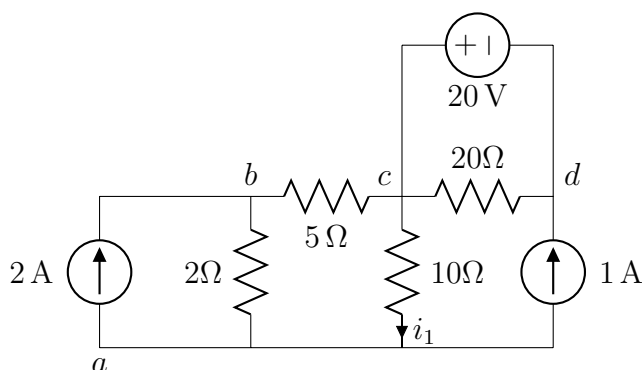

Figure 3.74: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.41

Answer: *(a) Node voltage method because it requires less formulas compared with loop current method. (b) Ground node is better at node d, so that the voltage at node c is 20V and only two variables are required at node a and b. $i_1 = 0.647A$. (Ground node at node a is also solvable, but less straightforward.)*

Problem 3.42 *Find the current, voltage and power for each element in the circuit shown in Figure 3.75 and state whether each is absorbing or delivering energy.*
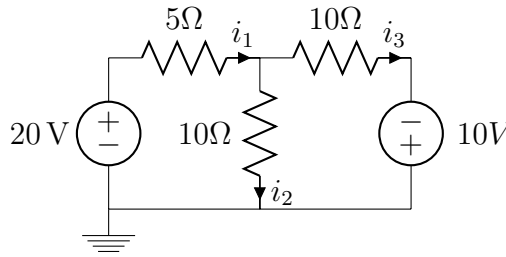
Figure 3.75: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.42

Answer: *$v = 7.5V$, $i_1 = 2.5A$, $i_2 = 7.5A$, $i_3 = 1.75A$, Resistors: absorbing $30.25W$, $6.625W$, $30.625W$ and sources: delivering $50W$, $17.5W$.*

Problem 3.43 *Given the circuit in Figure 3.76, (a) solve for the node voltage v_1 and v_2 shown in the figure. (b) Find the current i_x. (c) Find the Thevenin v_{oc} seem from 10Ω resistor. (d) Find the Thevenin i_{sc} seem from 10Ω resistor.*
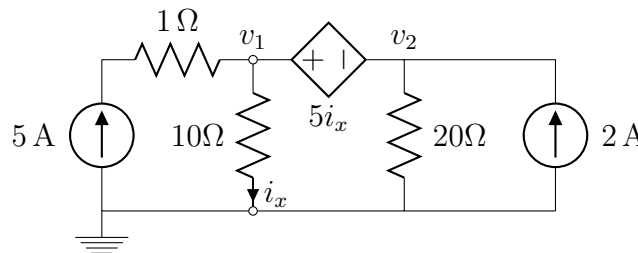
Figure 3.76: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.43

Answer: *(a) $v_1 = 56V$, $v_2 = 28V$. (b) $i_x = 5.6A$. (c) $v_{oc} = 140V$. (d) $i_{sc} = \frac{28}{3}A$, $R_t = 15\Omega$.*

Problem 3.44 *Given the circuit in Figure 3.77, (a) attach a test source at terminal ab to determine the equivalent resistance seen by terminal ab. (b) Find the Thevenin and Norton equivalent circuit seen by terminal ab and draw the circuit diagram.*
Answer: *(a) Use a unity voltage source to find $i_{sc} = 0.2A$ and thus $R_t = \frac{1}{0.2} = 5\Omega$. (b) $V_{oc} = 10V$, $I_{sc} = 2A$, $R_t = 5\Omega$.*
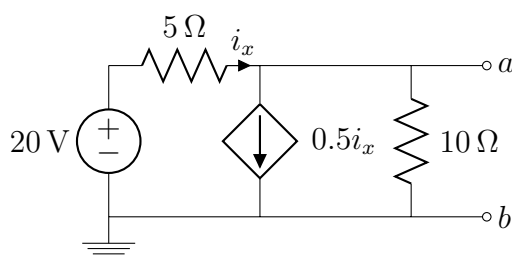
Figure 3.77: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.44

Problem 3.45 *For the circuit in Figure 3.78, (a) find the voltage V_o due to 3A current source and 24V voltage source, respectively, using superposition. (b) Find the voltage V_x due to 3A current source and 24V voltage source, respectively, using superposition.*
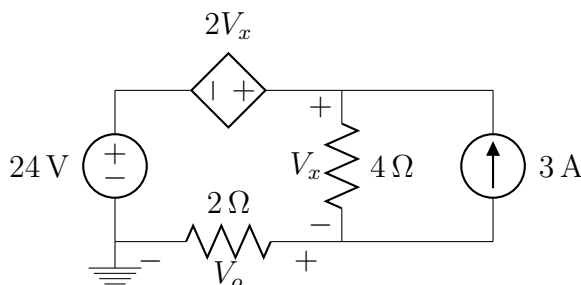
Figure 3.78: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.45

Answer: *(a) $V_o' = -12V$ due to 3A. $V_o' = -24V$ due to 24V. (b) $V_x'' = -12V$ due to 3A. $V_o'' = -48V$ due to 24V.*

Problem 3.46 *Given the circuit in Figure 3.79, (a) find V_o due to the current source 5A. (b) Find V_1 due to the 5A current source.*

Figure 3.79: Circuit Diagram for Problem 3.46

Answer: _(a)_ $V_o = 16V$. _(b)_ $V_1 = 10V$.

Chapter 4

AC Circuits

Circuits with sinusoidal sources are a central theme in Electrical Engineering because many important applications are found in real life. For example, the power distributed in a power grid is sent via sinusoidal voltage and current. The cell phones use sinusoidal signals in communications, so are radio stations and TV stations. Thus, understanding how to analyze circ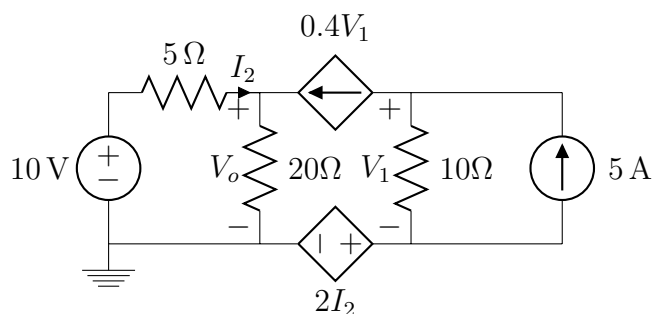uits with sinusoidal sources enables us to know how AC power is distributed to residential areas and to know the time responses of switched systems, frequency responses of circuits subjected to sinusoidal inputs.

4.1   Complex Signals/Exponential Signals

In an AC circuit, all the voltage and current sources are sinusoidal. Thus without loss of generality, it is fair to assume

$$
\begin{align}
v(t) &= V_{\max}\cos(\omega t + \theta) = \sqrt{2}V_{rms}\cos(\omega t + \theta) & (4.1)\\
i(t) &= I_{\max}\cos(\omega t + \phi) = \sqrt{2}I_{rms}\cos(\omega t + \phi) & (4.2)
\end{align}
$$

where $V_{\max}, I_{\max}$ are the peak value of voltage and current respectively, w is the angular frequency with units of radians per second and θ, ϕ are the phase angles. V_{rms}, I_{rms} are the root-mean-square value of the voltage and current. Here we define the root-mean-square (effective) value of a periodic sinusoidal signal as

$$
Y_{rms} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{T}\int_0^T y^2(t)dt} = \frac{Y_{\max}}{\sqrt{2}}, \quad Y = V \text{ or } I
$$

Example 4.1 *Let* $v(t) = V_{\max}\sin wt$. *Find* v_{ave} *and* v_{rms}.

$$
\begin{align}
v_{ave} &= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} V_{\max}\sin wt \; dwt = 0\\
v_{rms}^2 &= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} V_{\max}^2\sin^2 wt \; dwt = \frac{V_{\max}^2}{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi}(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2}\cos 2wt) \; dwt = \frac{V_{\max}^2}{2}
\end{align}
$$

Thus for a periodically sinusoidal function the average value is zero, yet its RMS value is $0.707V_{\max}$. There is another example in the problem set for periodic triangular function.
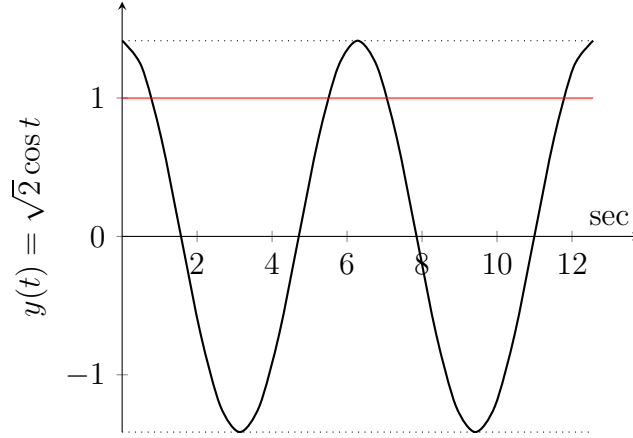

Figure 4.1: Time Trajectory of $\sqrt{2}\cos t, t = [0\ 4\pi]$

1. Sinusoidal signals are periodic, repeating the same value in each period T. Because the cosine (or sine) function completes one cycle when the angle increases by 2π, we get $wT = 2\pi$, obtaining $w = 2\pi f$ where $f = \frac{1}{T}$ is the frequency in Hertz.

2. Given a sinusoidal voltage waveform (4.1), to find the time where the sinusoidal signal functions reach its peak value, we have

$$wt_{max} + \theta(assuming\ in\ degree) = 0° \ or \ 360°$$
$$t_{\max} = \frac{360° - \theta}{2\pi f} = \frac{360° - \theta}{360°} \times T$$

3. For uniformity, we express sinusoidal functions by using the cosine function rather than the sine function. The $\sin z$ functions are related by the identity $\sin(z) = \cos(z - 90°)$.

By using Euler's (/oiler/) formula $e^{jx} = \cos x + j\sin x$, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
v(t) &= Re[v_e(t)] = Re[V_{\max}\cos(\omega t + \theta) + jV_{\max}\sin(\omega t + \theta)] \\
&= Re[V_{\max}e^{j(\omega t + \theta)}] = Re[\sqrt{2}V_{rms}e^{j(\omega t + \theta)}] \\
i(t) &= Re[i_e(t)] = Re[I_{\max}\cos(\omega t + \phi) + jI_{\max}\sin(\omega t + \phi)] \\
&= Re[I_{\max}e^{j(\omega t + \phi)}] = Re[\sqrt{2}I_{rms}e^{j(\omega t + \phi)}]
\end{aligned}
$$

We have the following observations:

1 The real/actual signal can be obtained by taking the Real part of the complex signal/exponential signal. i.e., $v(t) = Re[V_e(t)]$.

2 The most important properties of a complex signal is that it reproduces itself when integrates or differentiates.

To see that properties, we investigate each circuit element laws subject to exponential voltage and current.

- Resistors (Ohm's law)
$$v_e(t) = i_e(t)R$$

- Inductors (Henry's law)

$$v_e(t) = L\frac{di_e(t)}{dt} = L\frac{d}{dt}(I_{max}e^{j(\omega t+\phi)}) = (j\omega L)I_{max}e^{j(\omega t+\phi)} = j\omega L i_e$$

The identity shows that an exponential function remains exponential after the derivative operation.

- Capacitors (Faraday's law)

$$v_e(t) = \frac{1}{C}\int_{-\infty}^{t} i_e(\tau)d\tau = \frac{1}{C}\int_{-\infty}^{t} I_{max}e^{j(\omega\tau+\phi)}d\tau = (\frac{1}{j\omega C})I_{max}e^{j(\omega t+\phi)} = \frac{1}{j\omega C}i_e$$

The identity shows that an exponential function remains exponential after the integral operation. Note that the integral of $i_e(t)$ at $-\infty$ is assumed to be zero.

4.2 Impedance Concepts

From previous section, a form of ohm's low was found when complex voltage and current signals are applied to the circuit elements — R, L, and C. However, it is noted that the concept is limited to complex exponential signals only.

$$
\begin{aligned}
Z_R &= \frac{v_e}{i_e} = \frac{i_e R}{i_e} = R \ \Omega \\
Z_L &= \frac{v_e}{i_e} = \frac{j\omega L i_e}{i_e} = j\omega L \ \Omega \\
Z_C &= \frac{v_e}{i_e} = \frac{\frac{1}{j\omega C}i_e}{i_e} = \frac{1}{j\omega C} \ \Omega
\end{aligned}
$$

Note that Z_R, Z_L and Z_C are all in ohm's form, also the general relation between complex voltage and current is $V_e = I_e Z_e$ (ohm's low) for R, L, and C elements. We
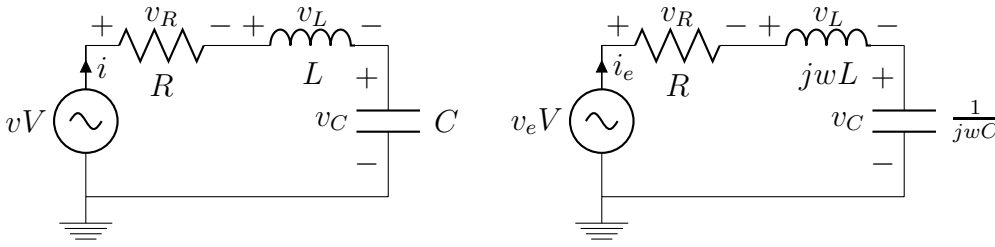
Figure 4.2: Series Circuits (a) Nominal Signal (b) Complex Signal

come to think whether those technique introduced in DC circuits can be used in AC circuits too. To see this, consider a series RLC circuit with AC voltage source given below.

Applying KVL clockwise yields

$$
\begin{aligned}
v_e &= v_R + v_L + v_C = i_e R + L\frac{di_e}{dt} + \frac{1}{C}\int_{-\infty}^{t} i_e(\tau)d\tau \\
&= (R + j\omega L + \frac{1}{j\omega C})i_e, \quad \text{for complex/exponential signals}
\end{aligned}
$$

The identity shows that when complex signal is used the differential-integral form is reduced to an algebraic form if L is replaced with jwL and C is replaced with $\frac{1}{jwC}$ while R is intact. To see more, consider a parallel RLC circuit with AC current source:
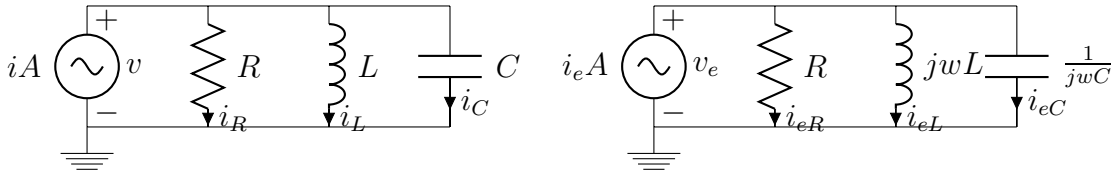
Figure 4.3: Parallel Circuits (a) Nominal Signal (b) Complex Signal

Applying KCL at the node on top yields

$$
\begin{aligned}
i_e &= i_R + i_L + i_C = \frac{v_e}{R} + \frac{1}{L}\int_{-\infty}^{t} v_e(\tau)d\tau + C\frac{dv_e}{dt} \\
&= (\frac{1}{R} + \frac{1}{j\omega L} + j\omega C)v_e, \quad \text{for complex/exponential signals}
\end{aligned}
$$

The identity, again, shows that when complex signal is used the differential-integral form is reduced to an algebraic form if L is replaced with jwL and C is replaced with $\frac{1}{jwC}$ while R is intact. The preceding introduction is known as the impedance concept, we define impedance as the ratio of the complex voltage to the complex

current, denoted by $\bar{Z}$.

$$\bar{Z} = \frac{V_e(t)}{I_e(t)} = R + jX = Ze^{j\theta_z} = Z\angle\theta_z = Z\cos\theta_z + jZ\sin\theta_z$$

The reciprocal of impedance is called admittance, denoted by $\bar{Y}$.

$$\bar{Y} = \frac{1}{\bar{Z}} = \frac{1}{R + jX} = \frac{R - jX}{R^2 + X^2} = G + jB$$

4.3 Phasor Concepts

Phasors are complex numbers representing sinusoidal voltages or currents. The magnitude of a phasor equals the peak value and the angle equals the phase angle of the sinusoidal signals written in a cosine form.

$$v(t) = V_{max}\cos(\omega t + \theta) = Re\{V_e(t)\} = Re\{V_{max}e^{j(\omega t+\theta)}\} = Re\{\sqrt{2}V_{rms}e^{j\theta}e^{j\omega t}\}$$
$$i(t) = I_{max}\cos(\omega t + \phi) = Re\{I_e(t)\} = Re\{I_{max}e^{j(\omega t+\phi)}\} = Re\{\sqrt{2}I_{rms}e^{j\phi}e^{j\omega t}\}$$

where $v(t)$ and $i(t)$ mean time function in cosine form while V_e and I_e stand for time function in exponential/complex form. Note that the $e^{j\omega t}$ term in the braces is the same for all voltage and currents associated with a given source, therefore we define the phasor.

$$\begin{aligned}
\bar{V} &= V_{max}e^{j\theta} = \sqrt{2}V_{rms}e^{j\theta} \;\; or \;\; V_{rms}\angle\theta \\
\bar{I} &= I_{max}e^{j\phi} = \sqrt{2}I_{rms}e^{j\phi} \;\; or \;\; I_{rms}\angle\phi \\
\bar{Z} &= \frac{v_e(t)}{i_e(t)} = \frac{V_{max}e^{j\theta}e^{j\omega t}}{I_{max}e^{j\phi}e^{j\omega t}} = \frac{\sqrt{2}V_{rms}e^{j\theta}e^{j\omega t}}{\sqrt{2}I_{rms}e^{j\phi}e^{j\omega t}} = \frac{V_{rms}}{I_{rms}}e^{j(\theta-\phi)} = Ze^{j\theta_z} \\
&= \frac{V_{rms}e^{j\theta}}{I_{rms}e^{j\phi}} = \frac{\bar{V}}{\bar{I}} = \frac{V_{rms}\angle\theta}{I_{rms}\angle\phi} = \frac{V_{rms}}{I_{rms}}\angle\theta - \phi = Z\angle\theta_z
\end{aligned}$$

The definitions can be visualized as a vector of length $V_{\max}$ (or V_{rms}) that rotates counterclockwise in the complex plane with an angular velocity w rad/s. As the vector rotates, its projection on the real axis traces out the voltage as a function of time $v(t)$. This is due to the fact that $v(t) = Re[V_{\max}e^{jwt}]$. Note that utilizing the phasor concept makes $\bar{V}$, $\bar{I}$, and $\bar{Z}$ simply complex constants, not a function of time.

Except for the fact that we use complex number computation, the steady-state analysis for AC circuits is virtually the same as that of DC circuits. We, therefore, provide only a few examples to illustrate the technique.

Example 4.2 (Time Expression vs. Phasor Expression)

$$\begin{aligned}
v(t) &= 170\cos(377t - 40°)V \longleftrightarrow \bar{V} = 170\angle -40° \\
i(t) &= 10\sin(1000t + 20°)A \longleftrightarrow \bar{V} = 10\angle -70° \\
\bar{V} &= 86.3\angle 26°V \longleftrightarrow v(t) = 86.3\cos(\omega t + 26°)V
\end{aligned}$$

It is clear from the example that, in phasor representation, we only keep magnitude and angle information and leave $\cos wt$ in heart/mind.

$\square$

Example 4.3 (Benefits using Phasor Technique) *Given $y_1 = 20\cos(\omega t - 30°)$ and $y_2 = 40\cos(\omega t + 60°)$, find $y = y_1 + y_2$ by using (1) trigonometry and (2) phasor concept.*
Solution: *If we are familiar with the trigonometry identities, we would have*

$$
\begin{aligned}
y_1 &= 20\ cos\omega t\cos 30° + 20\sin\omega t\sin 30° \\
+)y_2 &= 40\ cos\omega t\cos 60° - 40\sin\omega t\sin 60° \\
--- &\quad ------------------ \\
y &= 37.32\cos\omega t - 24.64\sin\omega t \\
&= 44.72(\cos\omega t + 33.43°)
\end{aligned}
$$

However, if we know a little bit of vector operations, we would have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\bar{Y} &= \bar{Y}_1 + \bar{Y}_2 = 20\angle -30° + 40\angle 60° \\
&= (17.32 - j10) + (20 + j34.64) \\
&= 37.32 + j24.64 = 44.72\angle 33.43°
\end{aligned}
$$

It is evidentally clear that using phasor notions speed up calculation and it is easy to master. The following diagram, Figure 4.4, shows vector additions, knowing that they all rotate at the same w speed.
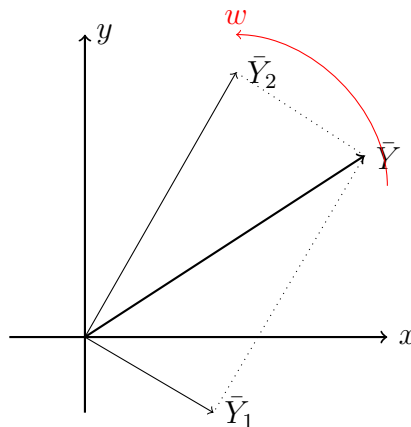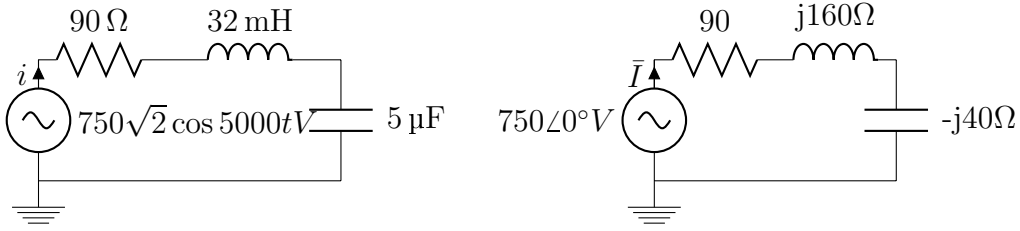

Figure 4.4: Example 4.3, Phasor Diagram

$\square$

Figure 4.5: Example 4.4: (a) Time Domain and (b) Phasor Domain

Example 4.4 (Differential and Phasor Approach) *Solve the following circuit problem using a traditional differential approach.*
Solution: *Loop current method yields*

$$v_s = 750 \cdot \sqrt{2} \cos 5000t = iR + \frac{1}{C} \int_0^t i(\tau)d\tau + L\frac{di}{dt}$$

$$-750 \cdot 5 \cdot 10^3 \cdot \sqrt{2} \sin 5000t = \frac{32 \cdot 10^{-3}}{1}\frac{d^2i}{dt} + 90\frac{di}{dt} + \frac{10^6}{5}i \qquad (4.3)$$

Assume the solution $i(t)$ has the following form

$$i(t) = A_1 \sin 5000t + A_2 \cos 5000t$$

then differentiating yields

$$\frac{di(t)}{dt} = 5 \cdot 10^3 A_1 \cos 5000t - 5 \cdot 10^3 A_2 \sin 5000t \qquad (4.4)$$

$$\frac{d^2i(t)}{dt^2} = -25 \cdot 10^6 A_1 \sin 5000t - 25 \cdot 10^6 A_2 \cos 5000t \qquad (4.5)$$

Substituting (4.4) and (4.5) into (4.3) and equating the coefficients of same order generates (this normally will take you at least 30 minutes to get the followings.)
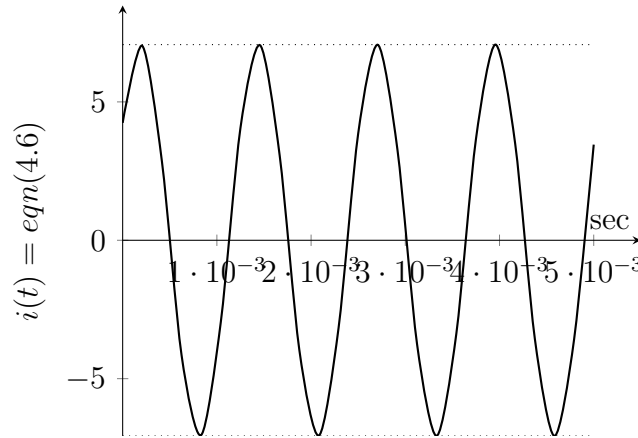
$$-120A_1 - 90A_2 = -750\sqrt{2}$$
$$90A_1 - 120A_2 = 0$$

which leads to $A_1 = 4\sqrt{2}$, $A_2 = 3\sqrt{2}$. Thus, the solution current is

$$i(t) = 4\sqrt{2}\sin 5000t + 3\sqrt{2}\cos 5000t = 5\sqrt{2}\cos(5000t - 53.13°)A \qquad (4.6)$$

Let's try phasor domain approach

$$\bar{Z}(j\omega) = R + j\omega L - j\frac{1}{\omega C} = 90 + j(160 - 40) = 90 + j120 = 150\angle 53.13°$$

$$\bar{I} = \frac{\bar{V}}{\bar{Z}} = \frac{750\angle 0°}{150\angle 53.13°} = 5\angle -53.13° A$$

Figure 4.6: Time Response $i(t)$ for Example 4.4

Thus, $i(t) = 5 \cdot \sqrt{2}\cos(5000t - 53.13°)A$. *Obviously,* **the phasor approach is strongly recommended because it is much faster than traditional differential approach.**

☐

Example 4.5 *Solve the following circuit using impedance concept where* $i_s = 8\sqrt{2}\cos 2 \times 10^5 t A$.[1]
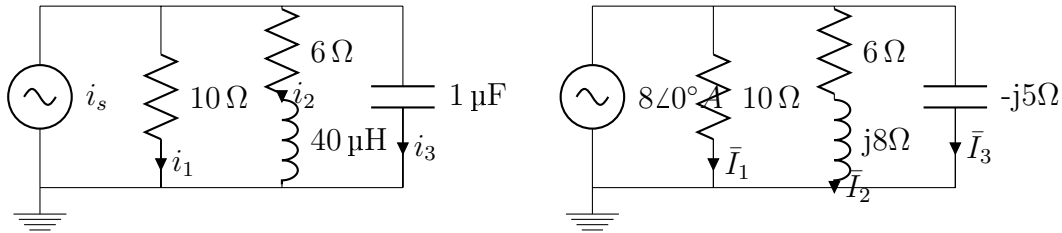

Figure 4.7: Example 4.5: (a) Time Domain, (b) Phasor Domain

Solution: *Applying KCL at the top node yields*

$$8\angle 0° = \frac{\bar{V}}{10} + \frac{\bar{V}}{6 + j8} + \frac{\bar{V}}{-j5}$$

giving

$$\bar{V} = (8\angle 0°)/(\frac{1}{10} + \frac{1}{6 + j8} + \frac{1}{-j5}) = 40\angle -36.87°V, \quad 40\sqrt{2}\cos(2 \times 10^5 t - 36.87°)V$$

---

[1]Follow the notions in the previous example, find the ODE and solve the problem using PSpice.

Therefore, we have current for each branch obtained

$$
\begin{aligned}
\bar{I}_1 &= \frac{\bar{V}}{10} = 4\angle - 36.87°A, \quad i_1 = 4\sqrt{2}\cos(2\times10^5 t - 36.87°)A \\
\bar{I}_2 &= \frac{\bar{V}}{6+j8} = 4\angle - 90°A, \quad i_2 = 4\sqrt{2}\cos(2\times10^5 t - 90°)A \\
\bar{I}_3 &= \frac{\bar{V}}{-j5} = 8\angle 53.13°A, \quad i_3 = 8\sqrt{2}\cos(2\times10^5 t - 53.13°)A
\end{aligned}
$$

Notice how the time domain expressions are obtained from phasor expressions.

□

Example 4.6 *[1, Steady-State Analysis, Page 202] Solve $\bar{V}_1$ and $\bar{V}_2$ for the following circuits. Note that a sine function is given.*
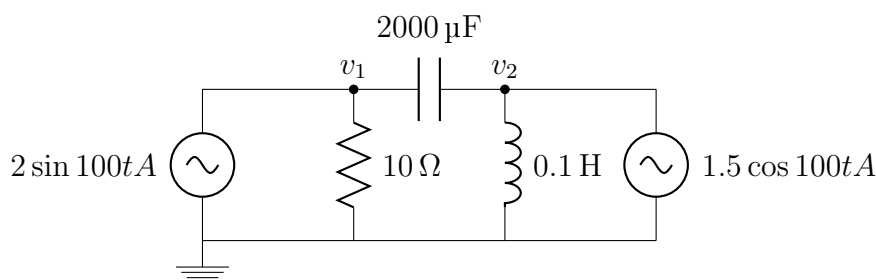

Figure 4.8: Example 4.6a

Solutions: *First, convert the time domain circuit into the corresponding phasor domain circuit. Then applying KCL at node 1 and 2, we have a set of simultaneous equations*
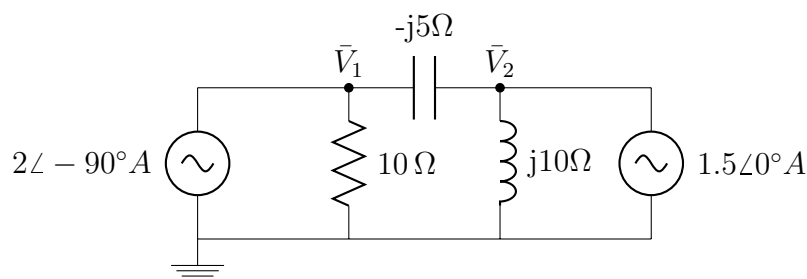

Figure 4.9: Example 4.6b

$$
\begin{aligned}
2\angle - 90° &= \frac{\bar{V}_1}{10} + \frac{\bar{V}_1 - \bar{V}_2}{-j5} \\
1.5\angle 0° &= \frac{\bar{V}_2}{j10} + \frac{\bar{V}_2 - \bar{V}_1}{-j5}
\end{aligned}
$$

Table 4.1: Sinusoidal Signals to Complex Signals

	$R, jwL, \frac{1}{jwC}$		
Complex input	$\rightarrow$ Impedance, Algebraic eqn	$\rightarrow$	Complex output
$\Uparrow$ Phasor $M\angle\theta$	$R, jwL, \frac{1}{jwC}$		$\Downarrow e^{j(wt+\theta)}$
Exponential Input	$\rightarrow$ Impedance, Algebraic eqn	$\rightarrow$	Exponential Output
$\Uparrow$ Euler $e^{j(wt+\theta)}$			$\Downarrow Re(e^{j(wt+\theta)})$
Sinusoidal Input	$\rightarrow$ Mathematic Differential eqn.	$\rightarrow$	Sinusoidal Output

Solving, we have $\bar{V}_1 = 16.12\angle 29.74°$ and $\bar{V}_2 = 28.01\angle 2.04°$. If the questions were to write the time domain solutions then we need to write down the time domain expression.

To briefly recap the concept learned up to now, we have Table 4.1 listed below. Bear in mind the notations we used so far are $\bar{V}, \bar{I}, \bar{Z}$, representing a complex constant.

4.4   Power in AC

Consider a circuit where a voltage source is applied to a series of RLC network. Let the voltage be $v(t) = V_{max}\cos(wt)$ whose phasor representation is $\bar{V} = V_{max}\angle 0°$ and the equivalent impendence is $\bar{Z} = R + jX = Z\angle\phi$. By ohm's law, we have

$$\bar{I} = \frac{\bar{V}}{\bar{Z}} = \frac{V_{max}\angle 0°}{Z\angle\phi} = I_{max}\angle -\phi$$

where $I_{max} = \frac{V_{max}}{Z}$. The equation above involves $\bar{Z}$ which is a combination of three different circuit elements. Before proceeding to a general load, it is instructive to consider the following three scenarios:

- A purely resistive load: For this load, $\bar{Z} = R\angle 0°$ means $\phi = 0°$ and we have

$$\begin{aligned} v(t) &= V_{max}\cos(wt) \\ i(t) &= I_{max}\cos(wt) \\ p(t) &= v(t)i(t) = V_{max}I_{max}\cos^2(wt) \end{aligned}$$

Notice that the current is in phase with the voltage.[2] The analysis shows that the power is positive at all times. We therefore conclude that the energy flows in the direction from source to load. The resistance is always consuming power.
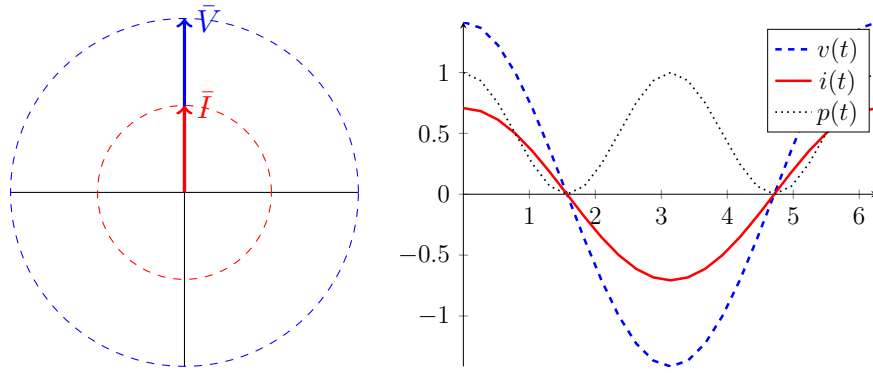
---

[2]Please explain why.

Figure 4.10: Power for Purely Resistive Network

- A purely inductive load: For this load, $\bar{Z} = wL\angle 90°$ means $\phi = 90°$ and we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
v(t) &= V_{max}\cos(wt)^3 \\
i(t) &= \frac{V_{max}}{wL}\cos(wt - 90°) = I_{max}\sin(wt) \\
p(t) &= v(t)i(t) = V_{max}I_{max}\cos(wt)\sin(wt) = \frac{V_{max}I_{max}}{2}\sin(2wt) \\
&= V_{rms}I_{rms}\sin(2wt)
\end{aligned}
$$

Notice that the current lags the voltage by $90°$.[4] The analysis shows that the power is changing in sign for every half cycle. Half of the time the power is positive, showing that the source is delivering the power to the inductance, while the other half of the time the power is negative, showing that the inductance is returning the power to the source. We therefore conclude that the average energy power is zero, a protruding feature for reactive power.

- A purely capacitive load: For this load, $\bar{Z} = \frac{1}{wC}\angle - 90°$ means $\phi = -90°$, and we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
v(t) &= V_{max}\cos(wt) \\
i(t) &= V_{max}wC\cos(wt + 90°) = -I_{max}\sin(wt) \\
p(t) &= v(t)i(t) = -V_{max}I_{max}\cos(wt)\sin(wt) = -\frac{V_{max}I_{max}}{2}\sin(2wt) \\
&= -V_{rms}I_{rms}\sin(2wt)
\end{aligned}
$$

---

[3]Find the voltage, current and power versus time for a purely inductive load via PSpice.

[4]Please explain why.

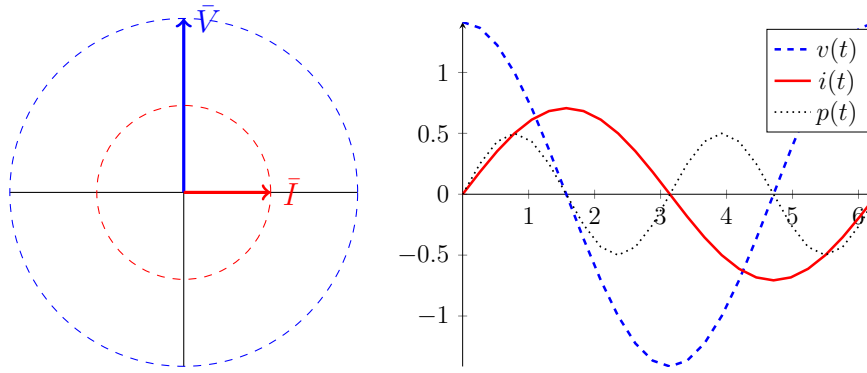[4]Find the voltage, current and power versus time for a purely capacitive load via PSpice.
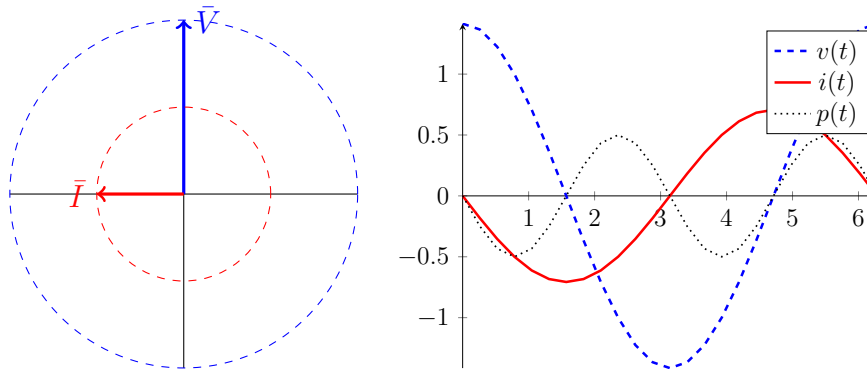
Figure 4.11: Power for Purely Inductive Network

Figure 4.12: Power for Purely Capacitive Network

Notice that the current leads the voltage by $90°$.[5] The analysis shows that the power is changing in sign for every half cycle. Half of the time the power is negative, showing that the source is receiving the power from the capacitance, while the other half of the time the power is positive, showing that the capacitance is receiving the power from the source. We therefore conclude that the average energy power is zero, a protruding feature for reactive power. However, notice that reactive power is negative for a capacitance $(\frac{1}{jwC})$ and positive for an inductance(jwL). If a load has both inductance and capacitance with equal magnitude of reactive power, the reactive power cancels.

- A general load with all three components: Now consider a general load where the ϕ can be any value from $-90°$ to $+90°$. It is worth noting that

    1. for resistive load, $\bar{I}_R = I_{max}\angle 0°$ lags and $\phi = 0$

---

[5]Please explain why.

2. for inductive load, $\bar{I}_L = I_{max} \angle -90°$ lags and $\phi > 0$

3. for capacitive load, $\bar{I}_C = I_{max} \angle 90°$ lags and $\phi < 0$

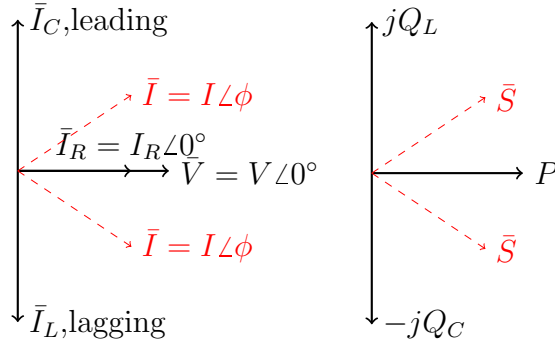Figure 4.13: $\bar{V}$-$\bar{I}$ and Q_L-Q_C Phasor Diagram, Assuming $\theta = 0°$

We should be aware that $\bar{V} - \bar{I}$ and $Q_L - Q_C$ are all phasor representations, but with slightly different notions. Don't be confused.

In this general case, we simply let the phase angle of current ϕ and the phase of the voltage θ has a nonzero value for generality. The general case is displayed in the next subsection.

4.4.1 Instantaneous power

Assume the alternating voltage and current have the form stated in (4.1)-(4.2). The instantaneous power could be obtained by $p(t) = v(t)i(t)$. Thus

$$
\begin{aligned}
p(t) &= V_{\max} \cos(wt + \theta) I_{\max} \cos(wt + \phi) \\
&= \frac{V_{\max} I_{\max}}{2} \cos(\theta - \phi) + \frac{V_{\max} I_{\max}}{2} \cos(2wt + \theta + \phi) \\
&= V_{rms} I_{rms} \cos(\theta - \phi) + V_{rms} I_{rms} \cos(2wt + \theta + \phi) \\
&= V_{rms} I_{rms} \cos(\theta - \phi)\{1 + \cos(2wt + 2\phi)\} + V_{rms} I_{rms} \sin(\theta - \phi)\sin(2wt + 2\phi)
\end{aligned}
$$

Notice that the terms involving sinusoidal functions $\cos(2wt)$ and $\sin(2wt)$ have average values of zero. Thus instantaneous power is seldom used but average power is.

4.4.2 Average real power

$$
P_{ave} = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} p(\tau)\tau = V_{rms} I_{rms} \cos(\theta - \phi) \ W
$$

whose units are watts (W).

4.4.3   Average reactive power

$$Q_{ave} = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} p(\tau)\tau = 0 \; VAR$$

Its physical units are watts. However, to emphasize the fact that Q does not represent real power, the units are usually given as Volt-Amperes Reactive (VAR).

4.4.4   Complex power

A convenient way to compute the real average power and reactive power is through the complex power computation and it is illustrated below.

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{S} &= P + jQ = \bar{V}\bar{I}^* = (V_{rms}\angle\theta)(I_{rms}\angle\phi)^* = V_{rms}I_{rms}\angle(\theta - \phi) \\ &= V_{rms}I_{rms}\cos(\theta - \phi) + jV_{rms}I_{rms}\sin(\theta - \phi) \end{aligned}$$

Since $\bar{V} = \bar{I}\bar{Z}$ (Ohm's law in AC), we have

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{S} &= P + jQ = \bar{V}\bar{I}^* = (\bar{I}\bar{Z})\bar{I}^* = I_{rms}^2(R + jX) = I_{rms}^2 R + jI_{rms}^2 X \\ &= \bar{V}(\frac{\bar{V}}{\bar{Z}})^\star = \frac{V_{rms}^2}{R - jX} = \frac{V_{rms}^2 R}{Z^2} + j\frac{V_{rms}^2 X}{Z^2} \end{aligned}$$

Notice that the formula is based on RMS value. It is fine to use maximum value instead.[6]

4.4.5   Apparent power

Apparent power is defined as the product of the effective voltage and effective current, Therefore

$$S = V_{rms}I_{rms} = \frac{V_{max}}{\sqrt{2}}\frac{I_{max}}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{1}{2}V_{max}I_{max}$$

whose units are volt-amperes (VA).

4.4.6   Power triangle

The relationships between real power P, reactive power Q, apparent power $V_{rms}I_{rms}$ and the power angle $\theta_z = \theta - \phi$ can be represented by power triangle shown in Figure 4.14.
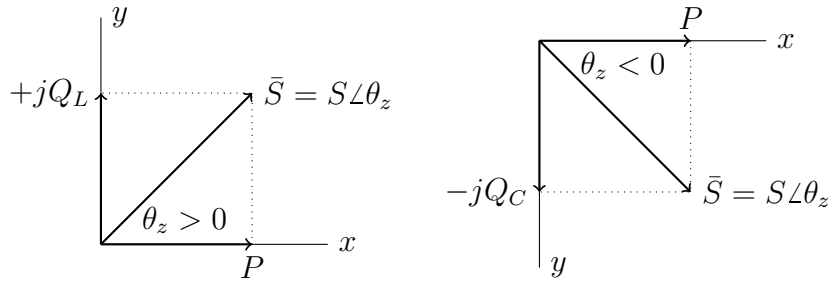
---

[6]How do you find the formula?

Figure 4.14: Power Triangle

where

$$
\begin{aligned}
P &= V_{rms}I_{rms}\cos(\theta-\phi) = I_{rms}^2 R = \frac{V_{rms}^2 R}{Z^2} \\
Q &= V_{rms}I_{rms}\sin(\theta-\phi) = I_{rms}^2 X = \frac{V_{rms}^2 X}{Z^2} \\
\theta_z &= \theta-\phi = cos^{-1}pf
\end{aligned}
$$

and the angle $\theta_z = \theta - \phi$ is called the power angle (a.k.a. the phase of impedance) and is taken as the phase of the voltage θ minus the phase of the current ϕ due to the Ohm's law. It is common to take the voltage as reference and state whether the current leads (capacitive load $-j(1/wC)$) or lags (inductive load jwL). More on leading and lagging current will be discussed in what follows.

4.4.7 Leading/Lagging power factor

We know the following facts for steady-state analysis: Ohm's law is applicable $\bar{V} = \bar{I}\bar{Z}$, and the impedance is a complex number $\bar{Z} = R + jX$, where $jX = j\omega L$, $\frac{1}{j\omega C}$ or combinations of both. To ease the presentation, we consider the following two cases: Here we assume RMS value for all quantities.
(A) A purely capacitive network whose impedance law $\bar{V} = \bar{I}\bar{Z}$ relationship is described by

$$
\bar{V} = \bar{I} \cdot \frac{1}{j\omega C} \Leftrightarrow \bar{I} = \bar{V}(j\omega C) = (V_{rms}\angle\theta)(\omega C\angle 90°) = V_{rms}\omega C\angle\theta + 90°
$$

The computation shows that current leads voltage by 90°, meaning leading current.
(B) A purely inductive network, which means

$$
\bar{V} = \bar{I} \cdot j\omega L \Leftrightarrow \bar{I} = \bar{V}(\frac{1}{j\omega L}) = (V_{rms}\angle\theta)(\frac{1}{\omega L}\angle-90°) = \frac{V_{rms}}{\omega L}\angle-90° + \theta
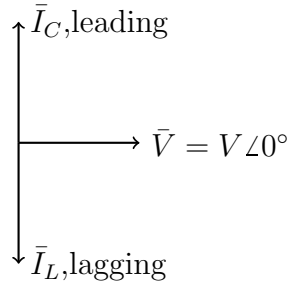$$

Figure 4.15: $\bar{V}$-$\bar{I}$ Phasor Diagram, Assuming $\theta = 0°$

The computation shows that current lags behind voltage by 90°, meaning lagging current. A $\bar{V} - \bar{I}$ phasor diagram is shown in Figure 4.15.

What happens when $\bar{Z}$ is not purely capacitive or inductive? Well the angle between $\bar{V}$ and $\bar{I}$ will not be exactly $\pm 90°$ but less than 90° for leading current and larger than $-90°$ for lagging current.

However, to draw the power triangle, due to complex conjugate operation is applied, the angle reversed. To see this, we have

For a purely capacitive network

Applying apparent power formula, we have the following derivations

$$\begin{aligned}
\bar{S} &= \bar{V}\bar{I}^* = (V\angle\theta)(I\angle\phi)^* = (V_{rms}\angle\theta)(V_{rms}\omega C\angle - \theta - 90°) = V_{rms}^2\omega C\angle - 90° \\
&= -jV_{rms}^2 wC
\end{aligned}$$
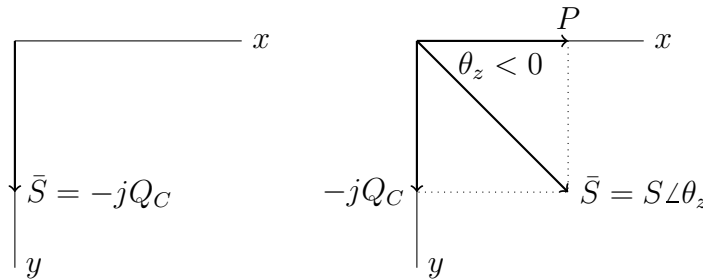
and the power diagram is shown in Figure 4.16.

Figure 4.16: Power Phasor Diagram, $\bar{S}$=$P - jQ_C$, Capacitive Load, Leading

For a purely inductive network

Applying apparent power formula, we have the following derivations

$$\bar{S} = \bar{V}\bar{I}^* = (V \angle\theta)(I \angle\phi)^* = (V_{rms}\angle\theta)(\frac{V_{rms}}{\omega L} \angle 90° - \theta) = \frac{V^2_{rms}}{\omega L}\angle 90° = j\frac{V^2_{rms}}{wL}$$

and the power diagram is shown in Figure 4.17.

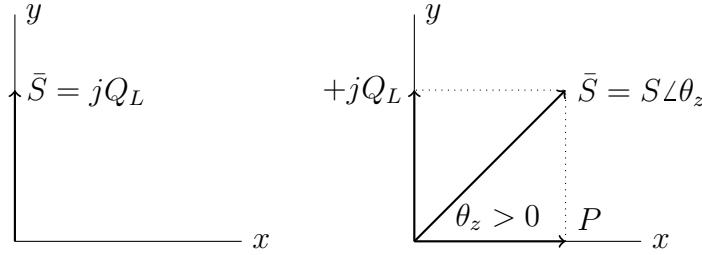Figure 4.17: Power Phasor Diagram, $\bar{S}=P + jQ_L$, Inductive Load, Lagging

Last but not the least, another quick trick is to apply the formula $\theta_z = \theta - \phi$. For a leading current $(\phi > \theta)$ we have $\theta_z < 0$ and $\theta_z > 0$ for a lagging current $(\phi < \theta)$. There you have it: an upper power triangle at the first quadrant for lagging power factor and a lower triangle at the forth quadrant for leading power factor (Please refer to Figure 4.14).

Example 4.7 *Consider the following circuit where power information to load A: 10KVA, pf=0.5, leading and load B: 5KW, pf=0.7, lagging information are given. Find the current $\bar{I}$.*
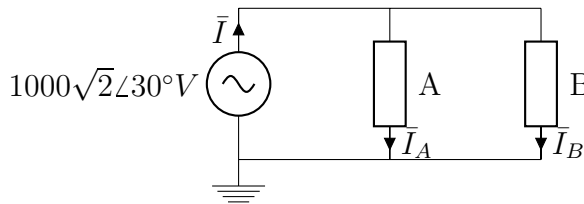

Figure 4.18: Circuit Diagram for Example 4.7

Solution: *Summarize the information in the form of power triangle.*
Load A: the power triangle is drawn for 10KVA, pf=0.5 leading. Noting that the angle θ_A represents difference between the voltage angle and the current angle $(\theta - \phi)$. With that, we have the following calculations.

$$0.5 = \cos\theta_A \Longrightarrow \theta_A = -60° = \theta - \phi$$
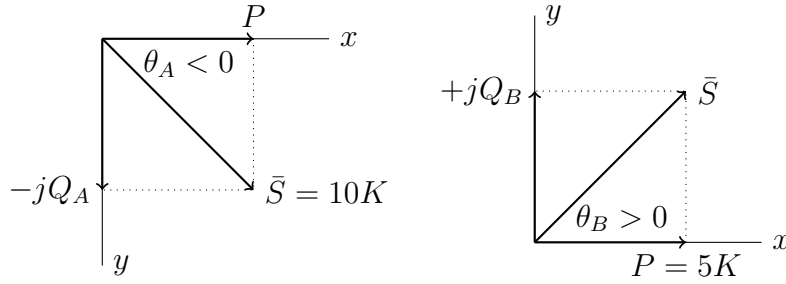
Figure 4.19: Power Triangle for Load A and Load B

$$
\begin{aligned}
P_A &= 10 \cdot \cos\theta_A = 5KW \\
Q_A &= (10^2 - 5^2)^{\frac{1}{2}} = -8.66KVAR \\
\theta - \phi &= -60° \to 30 - \phi = -60° \to \phi = 90° \\
5KV &= VI_A \cos 60° = 1000 I_A \cdot 0.5 \to I_A = 10000/1000, \; thus \; \bar{I}_A = 10\angle 90°
\end{aligned}
$$

Similarly, for load B, we have the power triangle drawn for 5KW, pf=0.7 lagging. The related information is deciphered as displayed below.

$$
\begin{aligned}
0.7 &= \cos\theta_B \\
\theta_B &= \theta - \phi = 45.57° \\
Q_B &= 5\tan\theta_B = 5.101KVAR \\
\theta - \phi &= +45.57° \to 30° - \phi = 45.57° \to \phi = -15.57° \\
5KW &= VI_B \cos 45.57° = VI_B \times 0.7 \\
I_B &= 7143/1000, \; thus \; \bar{I}_B = 7.143\angle -15.57°
\end{aligned}
$$

To find the total energy distributions, we have for sources

$$
\begin{aligned}
Q_{total} &= -8.66K + 5.101K = -3.559KVAR \\
P_{total} &= 5K + 5K = 10KW \\
\theta_z &= \tan^{-1}(Q/P) = -19.59° = \theta - \phi \\
S_{total} &= (P^2 + Q^2)^{\frac{1}{2}} = 10.61KVA \\
I &= 10610/1000, \; thus \; \bar{I}_{total} = 10.61\angle 49.59° \\
&= \bar{I}_A + \bar{I}_B = j10 + 6.881 - j1.917 = 6.881 + j8.0883
\end{aligned}
$$

4.4.8 Maximum power transfer

Facing the problem of finding maximum power transferred from source to a load, we need to adjust the load impedance Z_l so that the power is absorbed by Z_l and is
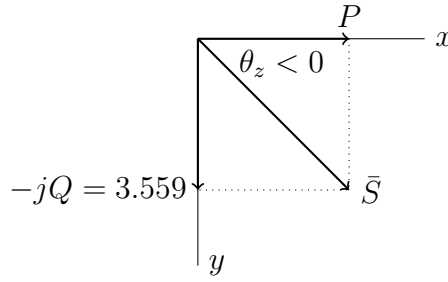
Figure 4.20: Power Triangle for the Overall Circuit

not wasted into heat in the transmission line. To this end, we use techniques learned from Calculus to find the maximum power transfer. Consider the following Thevenin equivalent circuit.
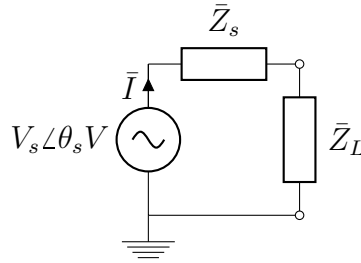

Figure 4.21: Maximum Power Transfer

$$\bar{I} = \frac{\bar{V}_s}{\bar{Z}_s + \bar{Z}_l} = \frac{V_s \angle \theta_s}{(R_s + R_l) + j(X_s + X_l)}$$

Obviously, the magnitude of $\bar{I}$ is

$$I = \frac{V_s}{\sqrt{(R_s + R_l)^2 + (X_s + X_l)^2}}$$

Here the angle information is insignificant due to the fact that $P = I^2 R$, thus

$$P_l = I^2 R_l = \frac{V_s^2 R_l}{(R_s + R_l)^2 + (X_s + X_l)^2}$$

To maximize P_l, we differentiate P_l with respect to R_l and X_l, which leads to

$$\frac{\partial P_l}{\partial X_L} = 0 \Rightarrow X_l = -X_s$$

$$\frac{\partial P_l}{\partial R_L} = 0 \Rightarrow R_l = R_s$$

which implies that

$$\bar{Z}_l = R_l + jX_l = R_s - jX_s = \bar{Z}_s^*$$

This is known as the load is matched to the source. Knowing that, we have maximum power transfer as below.

$$P_l = I^2 R_l = \frac{V_s^2 R_l}{(2R_s)^2} = \frac{V_{s,rms}^2}{4R_s} = \frac{V_{s,max}^2}{8R_s}$$

□

The derivations are based on Thevenin model, implying that whenever maximum power is sought, we convert the underlying circuit into Thevenin equivalent first.

For resistive network, the maximum power transfer occurs at the Load resistance equals to Thevenin resistance. This is shown by the following example.

Example 4.8 (Maximum Power for DC Circuits) *Given the circuit diagram below, find maximum power transferred.*
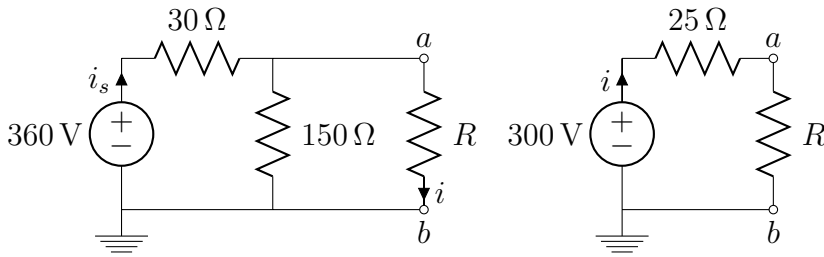

Figure 4.22: Circuit Diagram for Example 4.8

Solution: *Find its equivalent Thevenin circuit. To find the Thevenin resistance is to zero the voltage source and compute the equivalent resistance seen from the load side (i.e., terminal ab) which is a parallel structure.*

$$R_T = 30//150 = \frac{30 \cdot 150}{180} = 25\Omega \Rightarrow R_l = 25\Omega$$

To find the Thevenin open voltage, we remove the R and compute the voltage at 150Ω which is readily seen by a voltage divider.

$$V_T = \frac{360}{30 + 150} \cdot 150 = 300V$$

Lastly, we find

$$P = I^2 R = (\frac{300}{50})^2 \cdot 25 = 900W$$

□

PSpiceLab 4.1 (Maximum Power Transfer) *With the example above, use PSpice DC Sweep and part PARAMETER to verify the maximum power transfer function.*
Objectives: Lean how a circuit parameter can be changed over a certain range.
PreLab: $P = VI = I^2R = \frac{v^2}{R}$ is a quadratic form and its maximum occurs at extremes.
Lab: Follow the steps to see the result as expected.
PostLab: How to find the maximum power transfer for the AC case?

□

Example 4.9 (Maximum Power Transfer for AC Circuits) *Given the following AC circuit in impedance, find its maximum power transferred.*
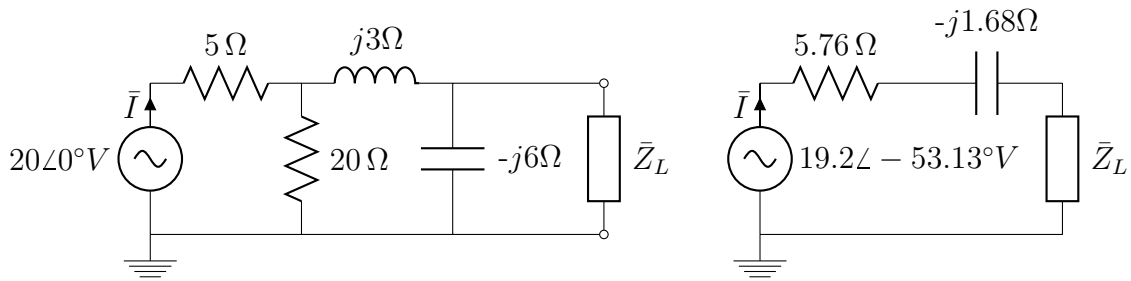

Figure 4.23: Example 4.9: (a) Time Domain and (b) Phasor Domain

Solution: *Again, based on the derivations, we need to find Thevenin circuit, then find the conjugate of Z_{line}. To this end, we have Thevenin, line impedance and power consumed by the load below.*

$$\bar{V}_T = \frac{16\angle 0°}{4 - j3}(-j6) = 19.2\angle -53.13°$$

$$\bar{Z}_T = (4 + j3)//(-j6) = \frac{(4 + j3)(-j6)}{4 - j3} = 5.76 - j1.68\Omega$$

$$P_L = I^2R_L = (\frac{19.2}{2 \times 5.76})^2 \times 5.76 = 16W - average\ power$$

□

Example 4.10 *[1, Page 228, AC Power Calculation] Find the power and reactive power delivered from the source ($10\sin 1000t$). Furthermore, find the complex power of all elements.*
Solutions: *Labeling the node-voltage $\bar{V}_C$ at the top of capacitor and writing KCL give*

$$\bar{I} = \bar{I}_R + \bar{I}_C$$

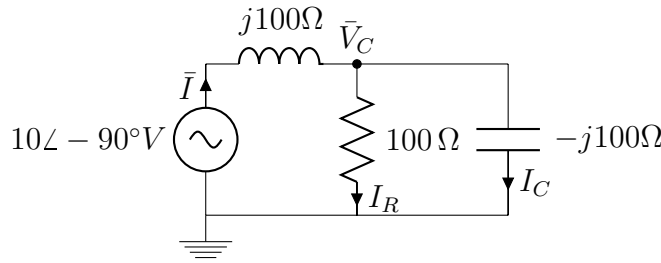$$\frac{10\angle -90° - \bar{V}_C}{j100} = \frac{\bar{V}_C}{-j100} + \frac{\bar{V}_C}{100}$$

Figure 4.24: Circuit Diagram for Example 4.10

which gives $\bar{V}_C = -10\angle 0°$; ie, $v_C(t) = -10\cos(1000t)$. To find $\bar{I}$, $\bar{I}_R$, and $\bar{I}_C$, we have

$$\bar{I} = \frac{10\angle - 90° + 10\angle 0°}{j100} = 0.1414\angle - 135°$$

$$\bar{I}_R = \frac{-10\angle 0°}{100} = -0.1\angle 0° = 0.1\angle 180°$$

$$\bar{I}_C = \frac{10\angle 0°}{j100} = 0.1\angle - 90°$$

To find the complex power, we have power for each element obtained

$$\bar{S}_s = \frac{1}{2}\bar{V}_s\bar{I}^* = \frac{1}{2}(10\angle - 90°)(0.1414\angle 135°) = 0.7071\angle 45° = 0.5 + j0.5 = P_s + jQ_s$$

$$\bar{S}_R = \frac{1}{2}\bar{V}_R\bar{I}_R^* = \frac{1}{2}(10\angle 180°)(0.1\angle - 180°) = 0.5\angle 0° = 0.5 + j0 = P_R$$

$$\bar{S}_C = \frac{1}{2}\bar{V}_C\bar{I}_C^* = \frac{1}{2}(10\angle 180°)(0.1\angle 90°) = 0.5\angle 270° = 0 - j0.5 = jQ_C$$

$$\bar{S}_L = \frac{1}{2} = I^2(j100) = \frac{1}{2}(0.1414)^2(j100) = j1.0 = jQ_L$$

It is easy to verify that $Q_s = Q_L + Q_C$ and $P_s = P_R$.

□

Example 4.11 *[1, Page 225, AC Power Calculation] A voltage source $\bar{V} = 500\sqrt{2}$
$\angle 40°$ delivers 5KW to a load with a power factor of 100% (unity power factor). (a)
Find the reactive power and the phasor current. (b) Repeat the problem if the power
factor is 20% lagging. (c) In which case the wiring be a lower cost? (d) Compute
the capacitance that must be placed in parallel with the load to achieve a 90% lagging
power factor.*
Solutions: *(a) From the power triangle, we know that $P = VI\cos(\theta - \phi)$. Thus,*

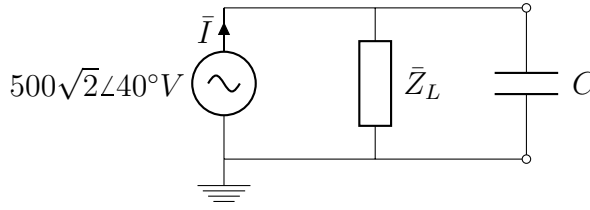$$I_{rms} = \frac{P}{V_{rms}\cos(\theta - \phi)} = \frac{5000}{500} = 10A$$

Figure 4.25: Circuit Diagram for Example 4.11

yielding $\bar{I} = 10\sqrt{2}\angle 40°$ *and* $Q = 0$.

(b) For 20% power factor lagging, we need to find the angle $\theta - \phi = \cos^{-1} 0.2 = 78.46°$. *To find the inductive power* Q_L *which is positive for lagging currents, we have*

$$Q_L = 5000 \tan 78.46° = 24.49 KVAR$$

Finally, to find the lagging current, we apply the formula $P = V_{rms} I_{rms} \cos(\theta - \phi)$ *or* $Q = V_{rms} I_{rms} \sin(\theta - \phi)$.

$$I_{rms} = \frac{Q_L}{V_{rms} \sin(\theta - \phi)} = \frac{24490}{500 \times 0.9798} = 50A$$

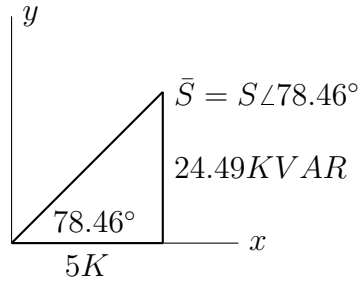*yielding* $\bar{I} = 50\sqrt{2}\angle - 38.46°$ *and* $Q = 24.49 KVAR$.

Figure 4.26: 20% Power Factor Lagging

(c) Comparing the results of (a) and (b), it is readily seen that case (b), which has reactive power, causes higher currents in the power distribution system, resulting in more $I^2 R$ *losses and therefore, more expensive.*

(d) After adding the capacitor, the real power will still be 5KW and the power angle will becomes

$$\theta_{new} = \cos^{-1} 0.9 = 25.84°$$

which means the new value of the reactive power will be

$$Q_{new} = 5000 \tan 25.84° = 2.421 KVAR$$

and

$$I_{rms} = \frac{Q_L}{V_{rms}\sin(\theta - \phi)} = \frac{2421}{500 \times 0.4359} = 11.1A$$

Thus the reactive power of the capacitance must be

$$Q_C = Q_{new} - Q_L = 2421 - 24490 = -22.069KVAR$$

Since we know that $-jQ_C = \bar{V}_{rms}(\frac{\bar{V}_{rms}}{\frac{1}{jwC}})^\star = -jV_{rms}^2 wC$ *for a pure capacitor, we have*

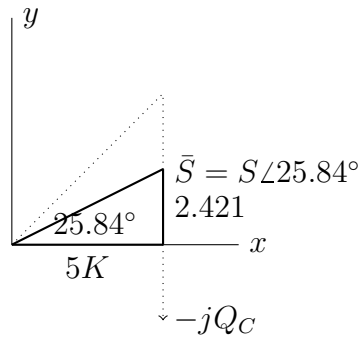$$C = \frac{Q_C}{V_{rms}^2 2\pi 60} = \frac{22069}{500^2 \times 377} = 234\mu F$$

Figure 4.27: Power Factor Correction

□

Although the steady-state solution of an AC circuit is solved using phasor and impedance notions. This technique can be viewed as a generalized DC scheme. Table 4.2 demonstrates this fact. Notice the similarity between the first and the third column. The first column involves only real numbers computations whilst the third column requires complex numbers computation.

Table 4.2: Comparison between DC and AC

DC, Scalar Arithmetic	AC	$\overline{AC}$, Complex Arithmetic
R	R, L, C	$R,\ j\omega L,\ \frac{1}{j\omega C}$
V	$v(t) = \sqrt{2}V_{rms}\cos(\omega t + \theta)$	$\bar{V} = V_{rms}\angle\theta$
I	$i(t) = \sqrt{2}I_{rms}\cos(\omega t + \phi)$	$\bar{I} = I_{rms}\angle\phi$
	$v_R(t) = i(t)R$	
$V = IR$	$v_L(t) = L\frac{di_L(t)}{dt}$	$\bar{V} = \bar{I}\bar{Z}$
	$i_C(t) = C\frac{dv_C(t)}{dt}$	
$KCL,\ KVL$	$KCL,\ KVL$	$KCL,\ KVL$
Algebraic eqn.	Differential eqn.	Algebraic eqn.
Parallel, series	Yes, but complicated	Parallel, series
Thevenin's	No	Thevenin's
Superposition	Yes, but complicated	Superposition
$P = VI$	$p(t) = v(t)i(t)$	$\bar{S} = \bar{V}\bar{I}^* = P + jQ$

4.5   Recap

In this chapter, we have gained knowledge of
• How to distinguish DC and AC circuits.
• To avoid the tedious differentiation and integration of complex signals, we apply impedance and phasor notions, which make computation a lot easier.
• If a sine function is used, we convert it into a cosine function using $\sin(z) = \cos(z - 90°)$.
• There are two type of frequencies. In PSpice, Hz and $\sin ft$ are used while in text-books w and $\cos wt$ are quite commonly used. Notice $w = 2\pi f$.
• Conversion from time domain expressions to phasor domain expressions and vice versa. It is a computation involving complex numbers, not a scalar computation anymore.
• The notion of lagging current and leading current.
• Power concept is more involved than the DC power, yet there are related. Power triangle is an important tool to connect all power terminologies.
• Loads can categorized into resistive, capacitive and inductive loads.
• In power triangle diagrams, $jQ_L > 0$ points upwards while $-jQ_C < 0$ points downwards.
• In $\bar{V} - \bar{I}$ phasor diagrams, $\bar{I}_C$ points upwards because it leads while $\bar{I}_L$ points downward because it lags.
• Whenever, IPRINT or VPRINT2 are added in PSPice to find the steady state solutions, don't forget to right click the mouse to edit the print property and enter Y (or y) for AC, MAG and PHASE.
• Useful identities:

$$(M\angle\theta)^* = (x + jy)^* = (x - jy) = M\angle - \theta$$

where $*$ means complex conjugate.

$$(x + jy)(x + jy)^* = (x + jy)(x - jy) = x^2 + y^2 = |x + jy|^2$$

where $|\cdot|$ means the absolute value of a complex number.

$$(M_1\angle\theta_1)(M_2\angle\theta_2) = M_1 M_s \angle(\theta_1 - \theta_2)$$

$$\frac{M_1\angle\theta_1}{M_2\angle\theta_2} = \frac{M_1}{M_2}\angle(\theta_1 - \theta_2)$$

4.6   Problems

Phasor

Problem 4.1 *Given the circuit shown in Figure 4.28, please find the phasor for i_s, v, i_R, i_L and i_C. Compare the peak value of $i_L(t)$ with the peak value of $i_s(t)$. Do you find the answer surprising? Explain please.*
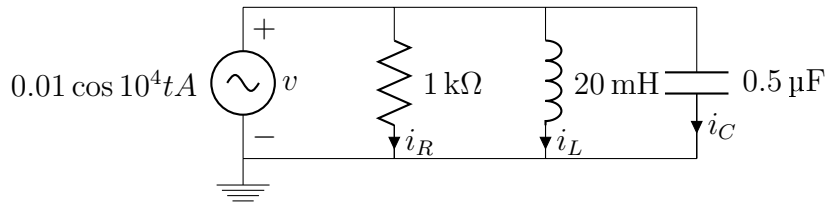

Figure 4.28: Circuit Diagram for Problem 4.1

Answer: $\bar{I}_s = 10\angle 0°mA$, $\bar{V} = 10\angle 0°V$, $\bar{I}_R = 10\angle 0°mA$, $\bar{I}_L = 50\angle -90°mA$, $\bar{I}_C = 50\angle +90°mA$. *The peak of $i_L(t)$ is five times larger than $i_s(t)$. This is reasonable because $\bar{I}_L + \bar{I}_C = 0$.*

Problem 4.2 *Find the phasor for the voltage and the currents for the circuit shown in Figure 4.29. Construct a phasor diagram showing i_s, v, i_R, i_L and i_C. What is the phase relationship between i_s and v?*
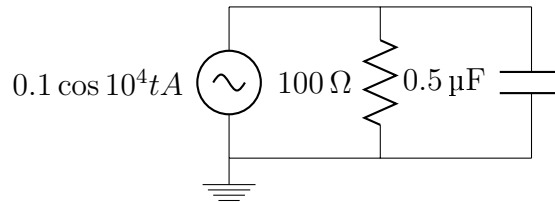
Figure 4.29: Circuit Diagram for Problem 4.2

Answer: $\bar{I}_s = 100\angle 0°$ mA, $\bar{V} = 8.944\angle -26.56°$ V, $\bar{I}_R = 89.44\angle -26.56°$ mA, $\bar{I}_C = 44.72\angle 63.44°$ mA, $\bar{V}$ lags $\bar{I}_s$ by 26.56°.

Problem 4.3 *Find the voltage $v_1(t)$ and $v_2(t)$ in steady state for the circuit of Figure 4.30. (you need to solve the simultaneous equation)*
Answer: $v_1 = 16.1\angle 29.7°V$, $v_2 = 28\angle 1°V$.

Problem 4.4 *Consider the circuit of Figure 4.31 and (a) find $i(t)$. (b) Construct a phasor diagram showing all three voltages and current. (c) What is the phase relationship between $v_s(t)$ and $i(t)$?*
Answer: (a) $i(t) = 0.0283\cos(500t - 135°)$. (b) $\bar{V}_R = 7.07\angle -135°$, $\bar{V}_L = 7.07\angle -45°$. (c) $i(t)$ lags $v_s(t)$ by 45°.
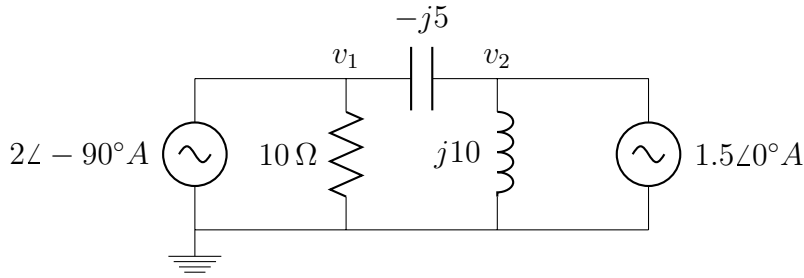
Figure 4.30: Circuit Diagram for Problem 4.3

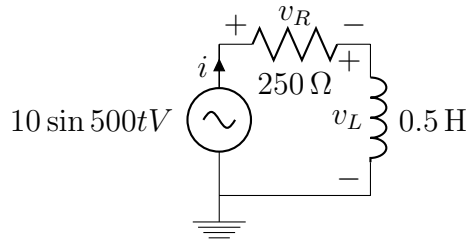Figure 4.31: Circuit Diagram for Problem 4.4

Thevenin/Norton equivalents

Problem 4.5 *Find the Thevenin impedance, Thevenin voltage, Norton current and draw the Thevenin equivalent circuit for the circuit shown in Figure 4.32.*
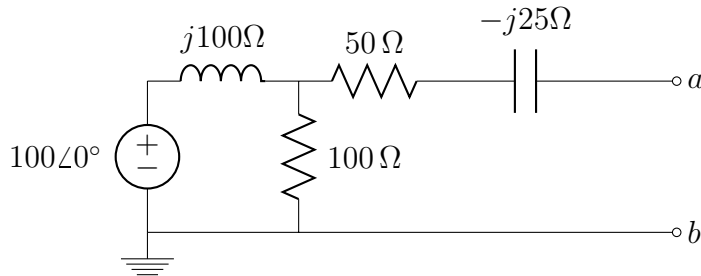

Figure 4.32: Circuit Diagram for Problem 4.5

Answer: $\bar{Z}_t = 100 + j25\Omega$, $V_{oc} = 70.71\angle - 45°$, $\bar{I}_n = 0.686\angle - 59°$.

Problem 4.6 *Given the following time domain circuit of Figure 4.33 with max voltage value, (a) find the equivalent phasor domain circuit. (b) Find the Thevenin equivalent v_t and R_t seen form terminal ab. (c) Draw the Thevenin circuit. (d) Use the Thevenin circuit found in (c) to determine the current $i(t)$ through terminal ab.*
Answer: *(a)* $\frac{1}{j\omega C} = -j5\Omega$. *(b)* $v_t = 8\angle 0°$, $R_t = 6\Omega$. *(c) Trival.* *(d)* $i(t) = 0.8\sqrt{2}\cos(2 \times 10^5 t - 53.13°)A$.
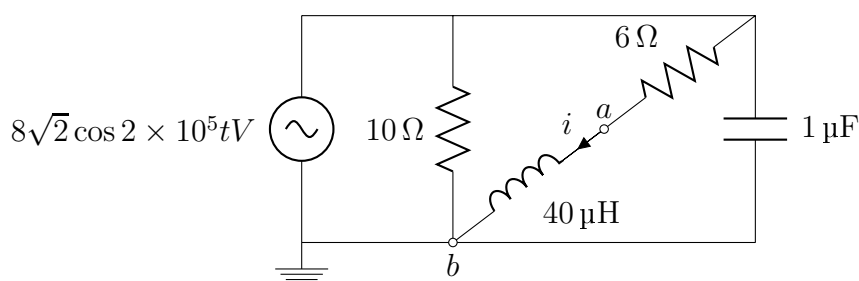
Figure 4.33: Circuit Diagram for Problem 4.6

Power related

Problem 4.7 *Given the circuit shown in Figure 4.34, (a) please find the voltage $v_C(t)$ in steady state. (b) Find the phasor current through each element. (c) Compute the power and reactive power taken from the source. (d) Compute the power and reactive power delivered to each element.*
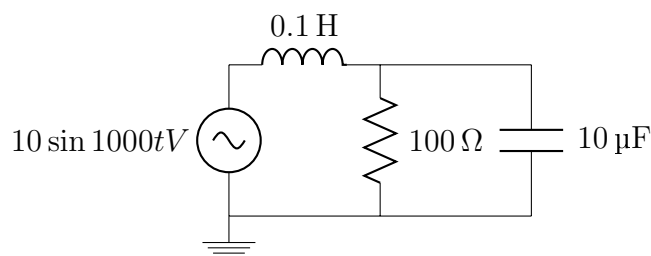

Figure 4.34: Circuit Diagram for Problem 4.7

Answer: *(a) $\bar{V}_C(t) = 0.1\angle - 90°$, (b) $\bar{I} = \frac{\bar{V}_s}{j100} + 50 - j50$, $\bar{I}_R = \frac{\bar{V}_C}{100}$, $\bar{I}_C = \frac{\bar{V}_C}{-j100}$, (c) $P + jQ = 0.5 + j0.5$, (d) $P_R = 0.5W, Q_L = 1VAR, Q_C = -0.5VAR$.*

Problem 4.8 *Given the phasor domain circuit, Figure 4.35, with max voltage value, (a) please find equivalent impedance seen by the source. (b) Find the source current and determine whether the source current leads or lags? (c) Draw the power triangle for the voltage source and determine the P and Q, and pf.*
Answer: *(a) $R_{eq} = 50 + j50\Omega$. (b) $\bar{I} = 0.1414\angle - 135°A$, lagging. (c) $\bar{S} = \sqrt{2}\angle 45°$.*

Problem 4.9 *Two loads, A and B, are connected in parallel as shown in Figure 4.36. Load A consumes 10KW with a 0.9 lagging power factor. Load B has an apparent power of 15KVA with a 0.8 lagging power factor. Find the power, reactive power and apparent power delivered by the source. What is the power factor seen by the source?*
Answer: *$P = 22KW$, $Q = 13.84KVAR$, $S = 26.11KVA$, $\bar{I} = 25.98\angle - 32.18$, $\bar{S} = 21.99 + j13.84$, $pf = 0.85$.*
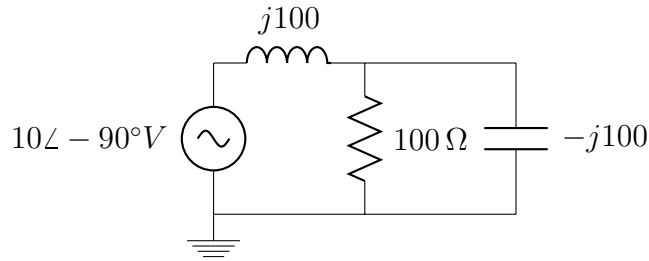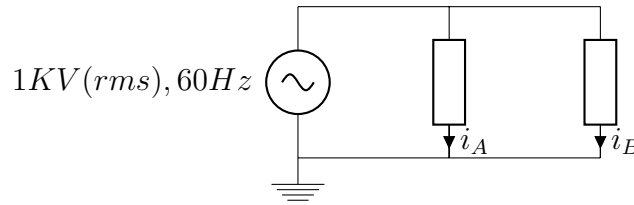
Figure 4.35: Circuit Diagram for Problem 4.8

Figure 4.36: Circuit Diagram for Problem 4.9

Problem 4.10 *Consider a RLC circuit, Figure 4.37, excited by $v(t) = 100\sqrt{2}\cos 10t V$ with $R = 20\Omega$, $L = 1H$ and $C = 0.1F$. (a) Use the phasor method to find the steady-state response current in the circuit. (b) Find the voltage across each load. (c) Draw the power triangle of the load (i.e., R, L, C).*
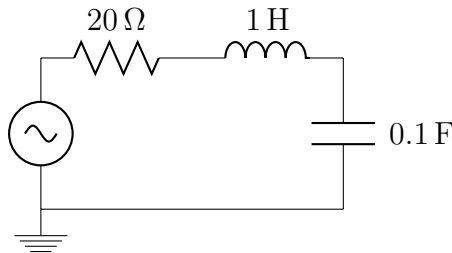

Figure 4.37: Circuit Diagram for Problem 4.10

Answer: *(a) $\bar{I} = 4.56\angle - 24.2°$. (b) $\bar{V}_R = 91.2\angle - 24.3°, \bar{V}_L = 4.56\angle - 65.8°, \bar{V}_C = 45.6\angle - 114.2° = 45.6\angle 65.8°$. (c) Skip.*

Problem 4.11 *Find the Thevenin equivalent circuit for the circuit shown in Figure 4.38. Find the maximum power that this circuit can deliver to a load (a) if the load can have any complex impedance; (b) if the load is purely resistive. (Hint: $R_{load} = |Z_t|$ and $P = \frac{1}{2}\bar{V}_{max}\bar{I}^*_{max} = \bar{V}_{rms}\bar{I}^*_{rms}$.)*
Answer: *(a) $\bar{I}_{load} = 1\angle 0°$, $P_{load} = 50W$. (b) $\bar{I}_{load} = 0.919\angle - 13.28°$, $P_{load} = 42.23W$.*

Problem 4.12 *For the Figure 4.39, (a) find the Thevenin equivalent. (b) Determine the maximum power that can be delivered to a load when the load can have any complex*
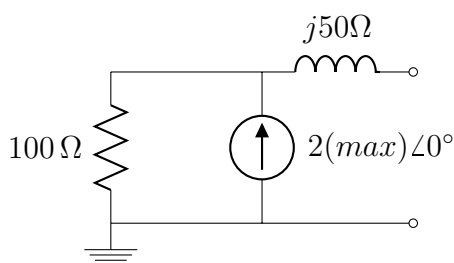
Figure 4.38: Circuit Diagram for Problem 4.11

value. (c) Determine the maximum power that can be delivered to a load when the load is pure resistance. (Hint: the maximum power transfer is equal to the magnitude of the Thevenin impedance.
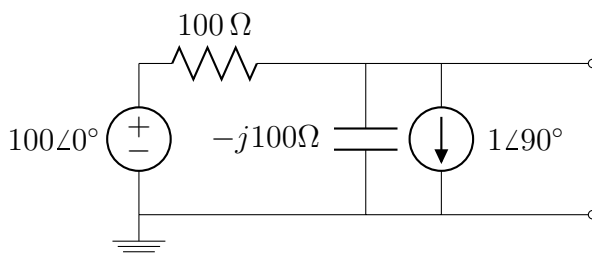

Figure 4.39: Circuit Diagram for Problem 4.12

Answer: (a) $\bar{Z}_t = 70.71\angle - 45°$, (b) $P_{max} = 25W$, (c) $P_{max} = 20.71W$.

Problem 4.13 *Given Figure 4.40, (a) find the Thevenin equivalent circuits. (b) Determine the maximum power that can be delivered to a load by the equivalent circuit if the load must be a pure resistance and connected to terminal a and b.*
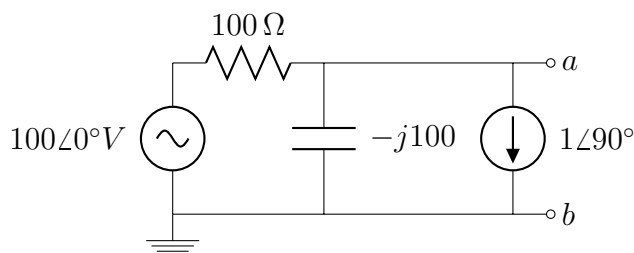

Figure 4.40: Circuit Diagram for Problem 4.13

Answer: (a) $V_T = 100\angle - 90°V$. (b) For those who solve the the problem without correction. It is unreasonable because the $Z_T = 0$ and $V_T = 1\angle 90°V$, $P = 0.007071W$.

Problem 4.14 *For the Figure 4.41, (a) find the phasor current $\bar{I}$. (b) The power (P), the reactive power (Q) and apparent power (S) delivered by the source. (c) The power factor and state whether it is lagging or leading.*
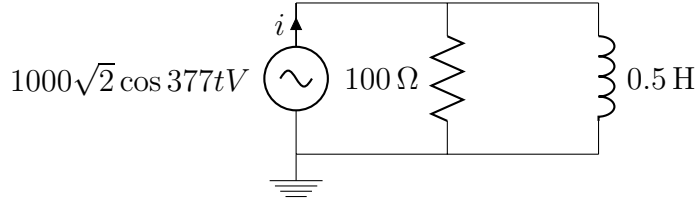

Figure 4.41: Circuit Diagram for Problem 4.14

Answer: $\bar{S} = 10kW + 5.305kVAR$, $pf = 88.347$ *lagging.*

Steady-State response

Problem 4.15 *For the circuit of Figure 4.42, use the node voltage techniques to (a) find the simultaneous KCL equations. (b) Solve for $\bar{V}_1(t)$ and $v_1(t)$.*
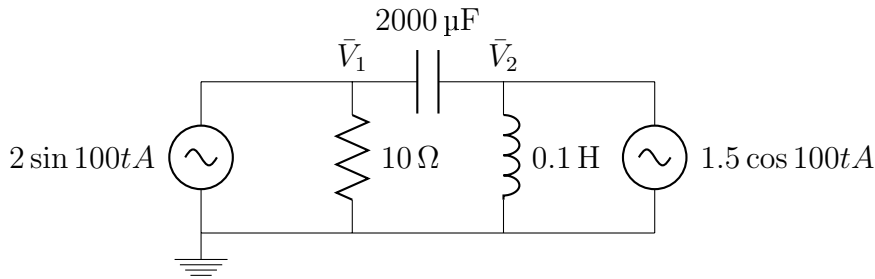

Figure 4.42: Circuit Diagram for Problem 4.15

Answer: *(a)* $\bar{V}_1 = 16.1\angle 29.7°$. *(b)* $v_1(t) = 16.1\cos(100t + 29.7°)$.

Problem 4.16 *(a) Redraw the circuit in Figure 4.43 into a circuit using impedance domain. Note that the given circuit is in time domain. (b) Find the equivalent impedance for the parallel structure C and R. (c) Find the current i. (d) Find voltage v_C.*
Answer: *(a) Use of Ls and $1/Cs$ to draw. (b)* $\bar{Z}_{RC} = 50 - j50$. *(c)* $\bar{I} = 0.1414\angle - 135°$. *(d)* $\bar{V}_C = 10\angle - 180°$.

Problem 4.17 *Given a circuit diagram shown in Figure 4.44, (a) draw the corresponding phasor circuit. (b) Solve for i(t). (c) Find the complex power delivered by the source.*
Answer: *(a)* $R=3\Omega$, $jwL = j3\Omega$, $\frac{1}{jwC} = -j\Omega$. *(b)* $i(t) = 13.42\cos(3t - 33.43°)A$. *(c)* $\bar{S} = \frac{1}{2}\bar{V}_s\bar{I}_s^\star = \frac{1}{2}(10\angle 60°)(10\angle - 120°) = 50\angle - 60°$.
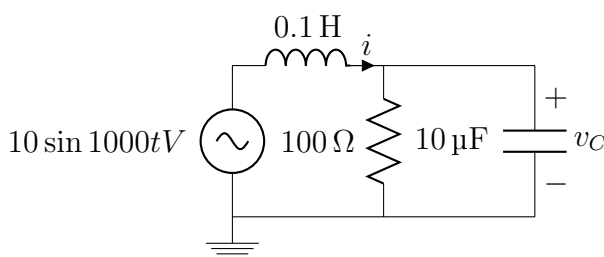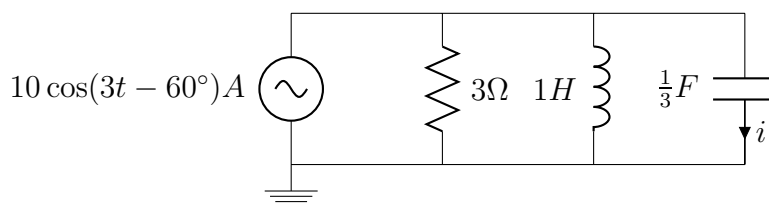
Figure 4.43: Circuit Diagram for Problem 4.16

Figure 4.44: Circuit Diagram for Problem 4.17

Problem 4.18 *Given a circuit diagram shown in Figure 4.45, (1) find the phasor current $\bar{I}_x$. (2) Find the voltage $v(t)$. (3) Find the complex power delivered by the dependent source.*
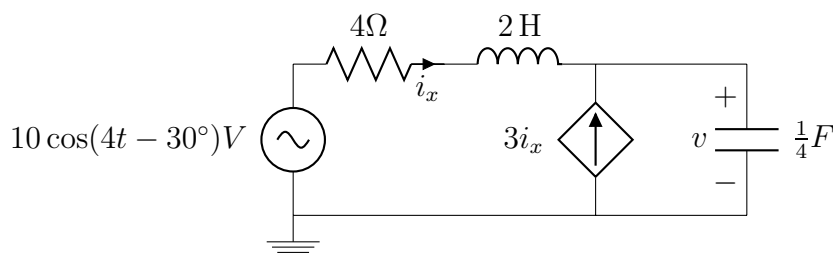

Figure 4.45: Circuit Diagram for Problem 4.18

Answer: *Labeling V on the top of dependent current source and KCL yields*

$$10\angle - 30° = (4 + j8)\bar{I}_x + (-j4)\bar{I}_x$$

Solving, we have $\bar{I}_x = 1.77\angle - 75°$. $\bar{V} = 7.07\angle - 165°$. $v(t) = 7.07\cos(4t - 165°)$.

Problem 4.19 *Given the circuit in Figure 4.46, applying superposition to answer the questions below, (a) what is the current $i(t)$ flowing through the inductor due to voltage source? (b) What is the current $i(t)$ flowing through the inductor due to current source?*
Answer: *(a) $1.77\cos(2t - 75°)A$. (b) $1.11\cos(2t - 16.31°)A$.*
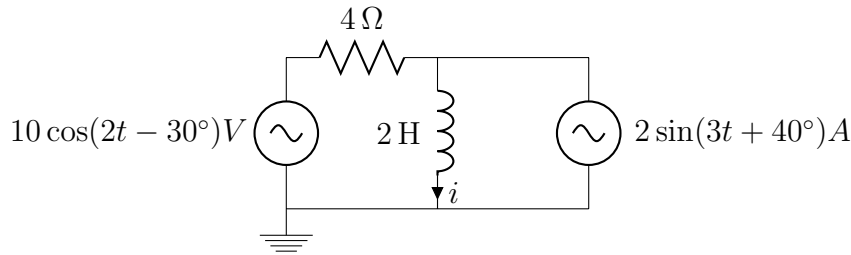
$$4\,\Omega$$

Figure 4.46: Circuit Diagram for Problem 4.19

Problem 4.20 *Given the circuit in Figure 4.47 where the voltage across the load is $170(\max)\angle 0°V$, with 5KW and 0.8 leading pf, (a) Please find the current flowing through the load $\bar{I}$. (b) Draw the $\bar{V}$-$\bar{I}$ diagram and power triangle, respectively. (c) Place an inductor across the load, determine the value of inductor to correct the power factor to unity if the frequency is 60Hz.*
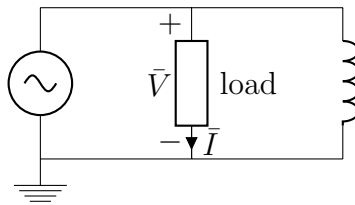

Figure 4.47: Circuit Diagram for Problem 4.20

Answer: *(a) $\bar{I} = 73.53\angle 36.86°V$, $Q = 3.75KVAV$. (b) Skip. (c) $Q_L = \bar{V}_L \bar{I}_L^* = \frac{V_L^2}{2\pi 60L}$ yields $L = 10mH$.*

Problem 4.21 *Given the following periodic triangular function of Figure 4.48, find v_{ave} and v_{rms}.*
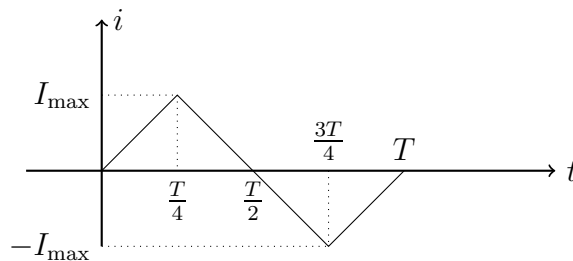

Figure 4.48: Triangular Function for Problem 4.21

Answer: (a) $i_{ave} = 0$. (b) $i_{rms} = \frac{I_{\max}}{\sqrt{3}}$. Hint: find the function first. $i(t) = \frac{4I_{\max}}{T}$, $0 > t > \frac{T}{4}$. Noting that this is not a periodic sine function.

Problem 4.22 *For the Figure 4.49a, use phasor techniques to (a) determine the Thevenin equivalent voltage as seen by terminal ab, (b) to find Thevenin equivalent impedance as seen by terminal ab, (c) solve for i(t) in time domain.*
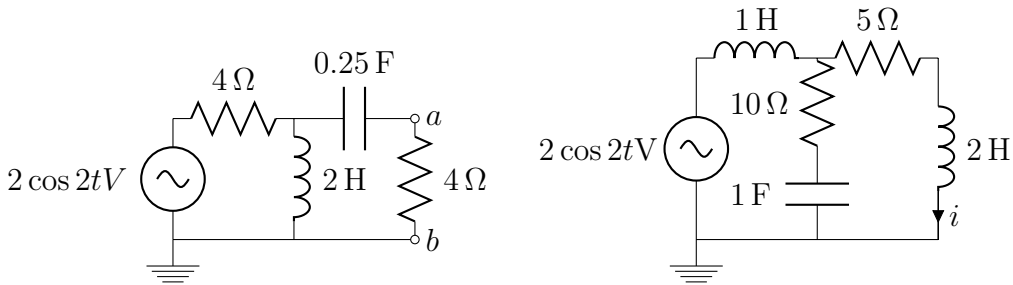

Figure 4.49: Figure (a) and (b) for Problem 4.22 and 4.23

Answer: *(a) $V_{oc} = \sqrt{2}\angle 45°$. (b) $\bar{Z}_{eq} = 2\angle 0°$. (c) $i(t) = 0.2357\cos(2t + 45°)$.*

Problem 4.23 *For the Figure 4.49b, use phasor techniques to solve for i(t) in time domain.*
Answer: *$\bar{I} = 0.247\angle 120°$, $i(t) = 0.247\cos(2t + 120°)$.*

Problem 4.24 *For the circuit of figure 4.50, find the power, reactive power and apparent power delivered by the source.*
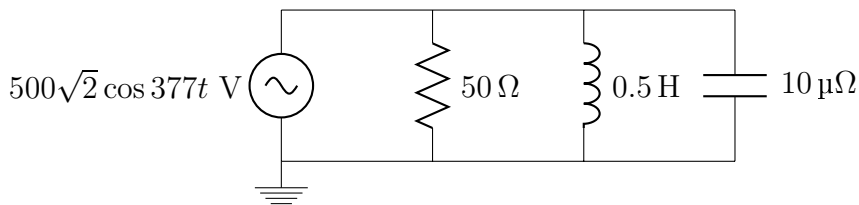**Answer:** *(a) $P = 5000W$, (b) $Q = 383.9VAR$, (c) $S = 5015VA$.*

Figure 4.50: Power Calculation for Problem 4.24

Problem 4.25 *For the circuit of Figure 4.51, the voltage across the capacitive reactance is $20\angle - 56.75°V$, (a) find the voltage across $j60\Omega$. (b) Determine the source voltage $\bar{V}_s$.*
Answer: *(a) $19\angle - 38.31°$, (b) $\bar{V}_s = 12.84\angle - 13.56°V$.*

Problem 4.26 *Given the circuit in Figure 4.52, please find the Thevenin equivalent seen from terminal $j3\Omega$. (b) Draw equivalent Thevenin circuit with inductance included. (c) Solve for current I flowing in the inductance. (d) Use loop-current method, express two simultaneous equations in terms of $\bar{I}_1$ and $\bar{I}_2$. (No need to solve*
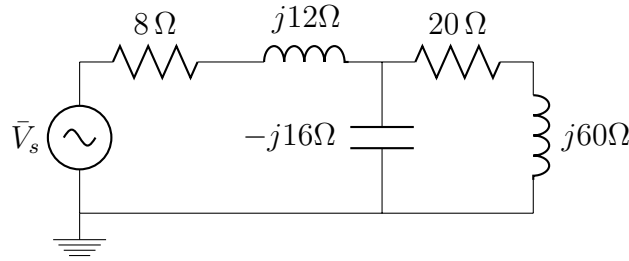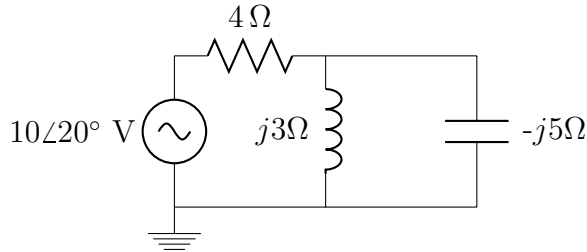
Figure 4.51: Circuit Diagram for Problem 4.25

Figure 4.52: Circuit Diagram for Problem 4.26

it.)
Answer: *(a)* $\bar{Z} = 2.44 - j1.95 = 3.123\angle - 38.66°$, $\bar{V}_{oc} = 7.81\angle - 18.66°$. *(b) Trivial.*
(c) $\bar{I} = 2.94\angle - 41.94°$ *A. (d)* $10\angle 20° = (4 + j3)I_1 - j3\bar{I}_2$. $0 = -j3\bar{I}_1 - j2\bar{I}_2$.

Problem 4.27 *Given the circuit in Figure 4.53, (a) find the individual impedance of
the circuit elements. (b) What is the equivalent impedance seen by the sources? (c)
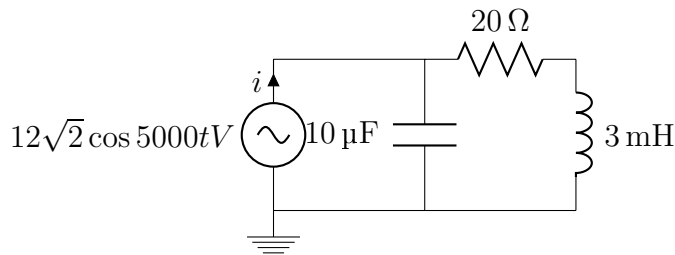Find the current $i(t)$. (d) The power generated by the source.*

Figure 4.53: Circuit Diagram for Problem 4.27

Answer: *(a)* $R = 20\Omega$, $\bar{Z}_L = j15\Omega$, $\bar{Z}_c = -j20\Omega$, *(b)* $18.9 - j15.3\Omega$, *(c)* $i(t) = 0.494\sqrt{2}\cos(5000t + 39.09°)$, *(d)* $P + jQ = 4.61 - j3.74$.

Chapter 5

Transient Responses

Up to now, we have learned how to find the voltage across a circuit element or current flowing in an electrical circuit. For DC circuits these quantities are simply scalars of real numbers. For AC circuits these quantity are complex numbers involving magnitude and angle. However, they are all treated as either a real constant or a complex constant. In this Chapter, we are going to see the time trajectories of these electrical quantities on a scope. Since circuits are linear systems, there exit analytic techniques to analyze its time behaviors systematically and this is the focus of this Chapter.

5.1   Types of Time Responses

The time responses of a linear system (such as circuits) subject to an input can be divided into two responses:
• A forced response — due to external DC/AC energy source. A forced response can be maintained indefinitely as long as the external sources exist. The forced response is also known as steady-state responses.
• A natural response — due to internal energy storage (capacitors and inductors). A natural response tends to die out because of dissipation. When the natural responses die out, the steady-state condition due to forced response is reached.

The following diagram shows the difference.

5.2   Steady-State Response

Since steady-state response will last forever as long as the external force (either AC or DC) exists and it was discussed in previous chapter, we will summarize the procedure in what follows:
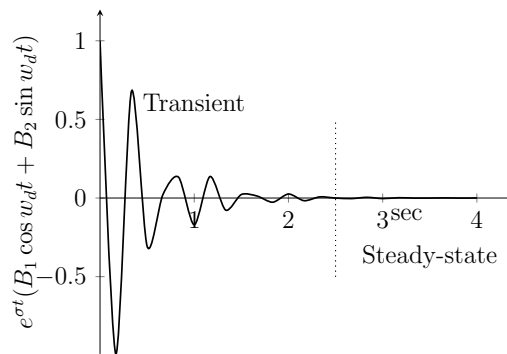
Figure 5.1: Transient and Steady-State Responses

5.2.1 RLC circuits with AC sources

The kernel idea for such circuits is to convert the AC circuit elements into equivalent impedances, and all the electrical quantities into phasors representations. Once these notions are adopted, the techniques learned from DC circuits can be applied equally well.

Solving procedures for the forced response using phasors and impedances

Except the fact that the voltages, currents, and impedances can be complex, the equations are exactly like those of DC circuits because only resistors are active.

1. Convert the time expression of voltages and currents into the corresponding phasors. (All of the sources must have the same frequency)

2. Convert the capacitances (C) into $\frac{1}{jwC} = \frac{1}{wC} \angle -90°$, the inductances ($L$) into $jwL = wL \angle 90°$ and the resistances remains R.

3. Analyze the circuit using the techniques learned from DC circuit and solve for relevant variables with complex arithmetic.

5.2.2 RLC circuits with DC sources

At DC steady-state, **capacitors behave as an open circuit** because the voltage across the capacitor is fixed and $i_C(\infty) = C\frac{dv_C}{dt} = 0$. Likewise, at DC steady-state, **inductors behave as a short circuit** because the current flowing through an inductor is a constant current and thus $v_L(\infty) = L\frac{di_L}{dt}$. With that in mind, we can find the steady-state values easily. Here are examples to demonstrate the concepts.

Example 5.1 (Steady-State Values for DC Circuits) *Find the steady-state values of the following circuit:*
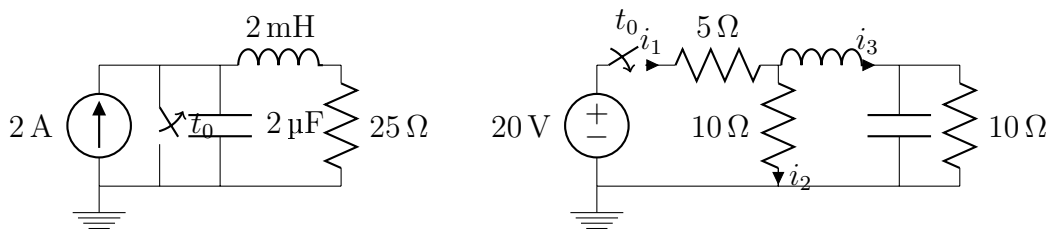
Figure 5.2: Circuit Diagrams for Example 5.1-5.2

Solution: *When $t \to \infty$, the capacitor is open and the inductor is shorted.* $i(\infty) = 2A, \quad v(\infty) = 50V$.

☐

Example 5.2 (Steady-State Values for DC Circuits) *Find the steady-state values of the following circuit:*
Solution: *When $t \to \infty$, the capacitor is open and the inductor is shorted.* $i_1(\infty) = \frac{20}{10} = 2A, \quad i_2(\infty) = i_3(\infty) = 1A$.

☐

Solving procedures for the forced response for RLC circuits with DC sources

1. Replace the capacitors with open circuits.

2. Replace the inductors with short circuits.

3. Solve the remaining circuits.

Before we embark on a study to learn the dynamic behavior of an electrical circuit, a clear understanding of a switching operation in the context of circuit analysis is important. To this end, we need to introduce the notion of a time-line which is illustrated below. Here, 0 is the time of switching, usually we assume it is zero (i.e.,
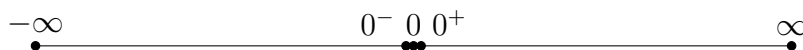

Figure 5.3: A Time-Line

$t = 0$) for convenience. The instant before and after the switch operation is labeled as 0^- and 0^+ respectively. Furthermore, ∞ stands for a long time after switches taken place. Likewise, if a switch operation takes place at $-\infty$, then 0^- would means a long time after the switch operation taken place at $-\infty$.

5.3   First-Order Systems

We will study a 1st order system first and then a 2nd order system second. In either case, we will investigate systems with and without external energy sources. Although only simple circuits are illustrated, the solving procedure for a complex circuit remains the same. Yet, it is helpful to use a computer simulation program for complex circuits.

5.3.1   Unforced systems

Firstly, we consider a simple case where no external sources are considered. That is, only internal energy stored in capacitors and/or inductors. Given the following circuit, find the current flowing into the resistor when the switch is open. (Assume the capacitor has $v_C(0) = v_0$ initially.)
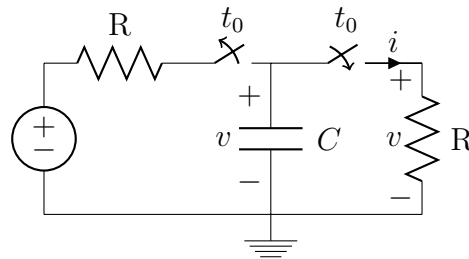

Figure 5.4: A First-Order RC System, Initially Charged

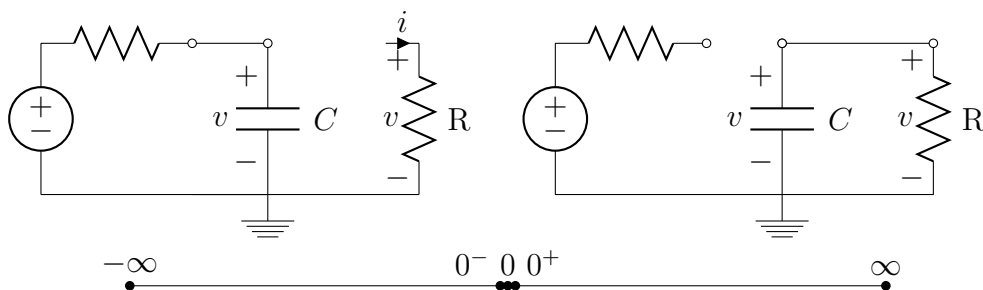A switching system has the following interpretation with a time line

Figure 5.5: Before and After Switching Actions

t-domain methods
Traveling around and summing voltage, KVL equation is

$$0 = -v_C + v_R = -(-\frac{1}{C}\int i\ dt) + Ri$$

Differentiating and substituting $i = Ae^{st}$ leads to

$$\frac{1}{C}i + R\frac{di}{dt} = (Rs + \frac{1}{C})Ae^{st} = 0$$

Therefore the characteristic equation yields

$$Rs + \frac{1}{C} = 0, \quad s = -\frac{1}{RC}$$

and thus the transient solution is

$$i(t) = Ae^{-\frac{t}{RC}}$$

To find the coefficient A, we use the initial condition. Prior to the switch is open, the capacitor voltage is charged to V_0. Since v_C can not change instantaneously ($\frac{1}{2}Cv^2$), we have $v_C(0^+) = v_C(0^-) = V_0 = i(0^+)R$ due to a parallel circuit configuration. Thus $i(0^+) = V_0/R$ and the transient solution is

$$i_R(t) = \frac{V_0}{R}e^{-\frac{t}{RC}}, \quad t \geq 0, \quad \tau = time\ constant = RC$$

Another way to find the dynamic equation is the use of KCL. Writing a KCL equation at the node on the top, we have

$$-C\frac{dv}{dt} = \frac{v}{R}, \quad i.e.\ C\frac{dv}{dt} + \frac{v}{R} = 0$$

from which we substitute $v = Ae^{st}$ into the equation above and find the characteristic equation

$$RCs + 1 = 0, \quad s = \frac{-1}{RC}$$

yielding

$$v(t) = Ae^{\frac{-t}{RC}} \quad t \geq 0 \tag{5.1}$$

To find the coefficient A, the initial condition yields $v(0^-) = V_0 = v(0^+) = A.$[1]

s-domain methods

Actually, the ODE found by t-domain methods can be found easily using impedance concept which is **a generalized Ohm's law that requires only algebraic operations.**

(1) Assume a clockwise current direction with the designated polarity, we have

$$0 = -V_C + V_R = -(-\frac{1}{Cs}I) + IR$$

---

[1]Find the resistor current.

whose ODE is

$$R\frac{di}{dt} + \frac{1}{C}i = 0$$

(2) Assume current flowing out of the top node which is labeled with V.

$$0 = \frac{V}{\frac{1}{Cs}} + \frac{V}{R}, \quad C\frac{dv}{dt} + \frac{1}{R}v = 0$$

Once the ODE is obtained, finding the corresponding explicit solution is a fairly routine procedure.

Time constant

Since the time solution is a first-order solution, we will introduce the notion of time constant that is used to characterize a first-order solution. A typical first-order transient time solution for equation (5.1) is displayed below. The idea of time constant is to characterize the decay rate of an exponential function. Time constant is defined as in one time constant the voltage drops by the factor $e^{-1} \approx 0.368$. Geometrically, it is the time span from the origin to a point where a tangent line at the starting point $(y_{\max})$ intersects the x-axis. Or equivalently, the point where the function reaches $0.368 \times y_{\max}$ value. It is readily seen from (5.6) that the time constant is 5 sec and this confirms with the function $y(t) = e^{0.2t}$.
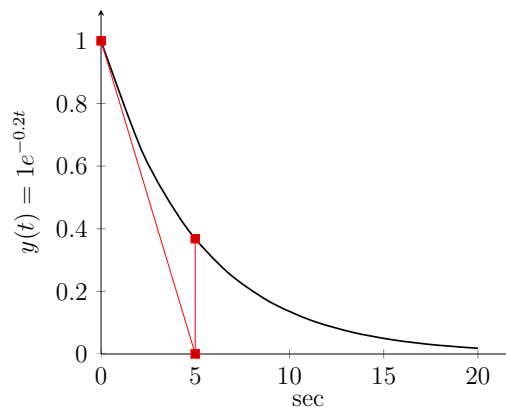

Figure 5.6: Time Constant Illustration

Let's look at another example given below: (Assume the inductor has $i_L(0) = I_0$ initially.) which has the following interpretation with a time line:
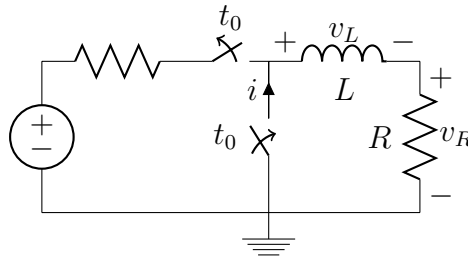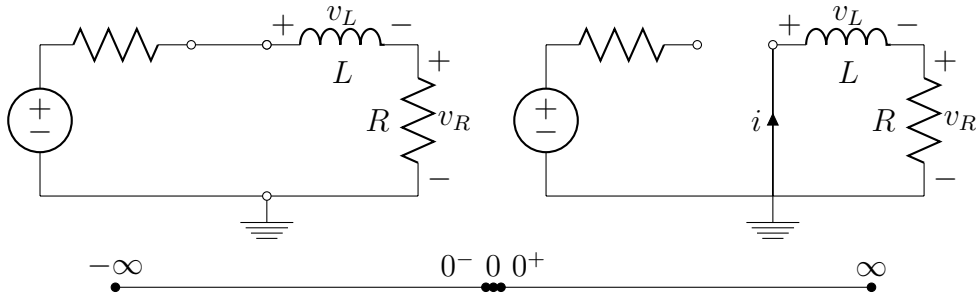
t-domain methods

Figure 5.7: Another First-Order RL System, Initially Charged

Figure 5.8: Before and After Switching Actions

Traveling around the loop clockwise and summing voltages, KVL equation yields

$$v_L + v_R = L\frac{di}{dt} + iR = 0$$

Assuming $i(t) = Ae^{st}$ and substituting the assumed form into the equation gives

$$(Ls + R)Ae^{st} = 0$$

which arrives at $s = -R/L$ and $i_L(t) = Ae^{-\frac{R}{L}t}$.

To find the coefficient A, we resort to initial condition. Before the switch closes, the inductor current reaches a steady-state value of I_0 and it can not change instantaneously since energy can not change instantaneous ($W = \frac{1}{2}Li^2$), we have $i_L(0^+) = i_L(0^-) = I_0 = Ae^0 = A$. Therefore the transient solution is

$$i_L(t) = I_0 e^{-\frac{R}{L}t}, t \geq 0 \text{ and } \tau = L/R$$

Using KCL techniques would be pretty straightforward. Labeling the top node over R be v, we have

$$\frac{1}{L}\int (0 - v)\ dv = \frac{v}{R}$$

yielding

$$\frac{1}{R}\frac{dv}{dt} + \frac{1}{L}v = 0, \quad \frac{s}{R} + \frac{1}{L} = 0$$

and $v(t) = Ae^{-\frac{R}{L}t}$ with $v(0^+) = I_0 R$.[2]

s-domain methods

Actually, the ODE found by t-domain methods can be found easily using impedance method.

(1) Assume a clockwise current direction with the designated polarity, we have

$$0 = V_L + V_R = (LsI) + IR$$

whose ODE is

$$L\frac{di}{dt} + Ri = 0$$

(2) Assume current flowing out of the top node which is labeled with V.

$$\frac{V}{Ls} = \frac{V}{R}, \quad \frac{1}{R}\frac{dv}{dt} + \frac{1}{L}v = 0$$

Once the ODE is obtained, finding the corresponding explicit solution in time is a fairly routine procedure.
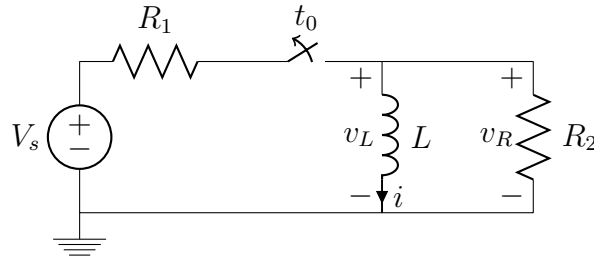

Another example is illustrated below.

Figure 5.9: A First-Order RL System with External Force Initially

t-domain methods

KVL method: The circuit has been laid there for a long time and reaches the steady state, which says $v(0^-) = 0$ and that means $i(0^-) = \frac{V_s}{R_1}$. Furthermore, when the switch is open, the source is disconnected from the system whose current dynamics is described by the following first order system

$$v_L - v_R = 0 \leftrightarrow L\frac{di}{dt} - (-iR_2) = 0$$

---

[2]Why? Ans: $v_R = I_0 R$.

whose characteristic equation is $Ls + R_2 = 0$ and we have

$$i(t) = Ae^{-\frac{R_2}{L}t}$$

since $i_L(0) = A = \frac{V_s}{R_1}$ due to an inductor circuit, the transient solution is

$$i(t) = \frac{V_s}{R_1}e^{-\frac{R_2}{L}t}, \quad t \geq 0$$

with time constant $\tau = \frac{L}{R_2}$.

Using KCL method yields (here $v = v_L = v_{R_2}$)

$$-(\frac{1}{L}\int v \; dv - (-\frac{v}{R_2}) = 0$$

whose ODE is

$$\frac{1}{R_2}\frac{dv}{dt} + \frac{1}{L}v = 0$$

and its solution is $v(t) = Ae^{-\frac{R_2}{L}t}$ with $v(0^+) = \frac{V_s}{R_1}R_2.$[3]

s-domain methods

Actually, the ODE found by t-domain methods can be found easily using impedance method.

(1) Assume a counterclockwise current direction with the designated polarity, we have

$$0 = V_L - V_{R_2} = (LsI) - (-IR_2)$$

whose ODE is

$$L\frac{di}{dt} + R_2 i = 0$$

(2) Assume current flowing out of the top node which is labeled with V.

$$0 = \frac{V}{Ls} + \frac{V}{R_2}$$

whose ODE is

$$\frac{1}{R_2}\frac{dv}{dt} + \frac{1}{L}v = 0$$

Once the ODEs are obtained, finding the corresponding explicit solution is a fairly routine procedure.

---

[3]Why? Ans: current enters the resistor from the negative polarity of v_R.

5.3.2   Forced systems

We have gone through the cases where external sources are neglected. But this is not the whole picture of transient response analysis. How to solve transient problems if circuits have external sources involved?

Consider the following circuit with external forces. As always, we can tackle the problem in two ways.
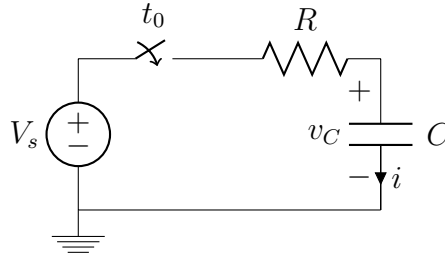

Figure 5.10: A First-Order RC System with an External Force

t-domain methods

Applying KCL to the node on the top yields

$$\frac{V_s - v_C}{R} = C\frac{dv_C}{dt}$$

Rearranging, we have

$$RC\frac{dv_C}{dt} + v_C = V_s, \quad RCs + 1 = 0$$

Following the steps shown for unforced systems, we have the unforced response

$$v_C(t) = Ae^{\frac{-t}{RC}}$$

To find the forced response (the steady-state response for RLC circuit with DC input), we find $v_C(\infty) = V_s$ since the capacitor is open. Therefore we have a complete response

$$v_C(t) = v_C(\infty) + Ae^{-t/RC} = V_s + Ae^{-t/RC} \tag{5.2}$$

To find the coefficient A, we observe that an initially rest system (capacitor voltage can not change instantaneously) yields $0 = V_s + A$, giving $A = -V_s$. Hence,

$$v_C(t) = V_s - V_s e^{-t/RC}, \quad t \geq 0$$

To find the capacitor current, differentiating the capacitor voltage gives

$$i = C\frac{dv_C}{dt} = -\frac{V_s}{R}e^{-\frac{t}{RC}}, \quad t \geq 0$$

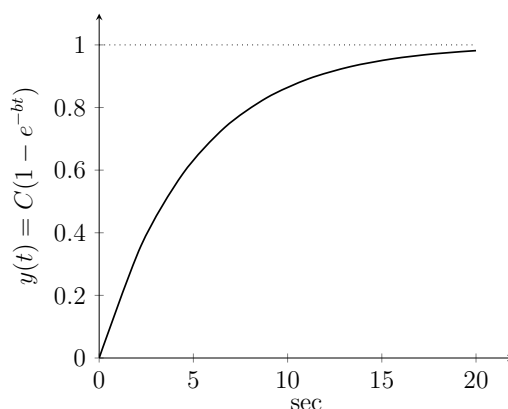A typical first-order transient time solution involving forced input for equation (5.2) is displayed below

Figure 5.11: A Typical First-Order Time Response with a Forced Input

---

Equivalently, another approach using KVL yields

$$V_s = iR + \frac{1}{C} \int i(\tau)d\tau$$

Differentiating, we have

$$0 = RC\frac{di}{dt} + i \quad (RCs + 1 = 0)$$

Hence, $i(t) = Ae^{-\frac{t}{RC}}$. To find the coefficient A, we know that
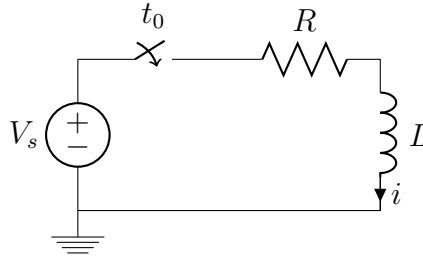
$$i(0^+) = \frac{V_s}{R} = A$$

due to an initially rest system whose capacitor voltage can not change instantaneously. Hence

$$i(t) = \frac{V_s}{R}e^{-\frac{t}{RC}},^{4} \quad t \geq 0$$

Consider a second example below where a step by step systematic procedure is summarized for readers to follow.

t-domain methods

---

[4]Given $i(t)$, find $v_c(t)$.

Figure 5.12: A First-Order RL System with an External Force

1. Find the initial condition. Since the inductor current can not change instantaneously before and after the switch closes. The initially rest condition means that the inductor current is zero, $i_L(0) = 0$.

2. Find the ODE. Writing a KVL equation around the loop yields

$$V_s = iR + L\frac{di}{dt}, \quad Ls + R = 0 \quad 0.1s + 50 = 0$$

3. Find the steady-state response. The forced response is easy to find and it is $i_L(\infty) = \frac{V_s}{R}$ after the switch closes for a long time.

4. Find the transient/natural response. $i_n(t) = Ae^{-\frac{R}{L}t}, t \geq 0$ and thus the complete solution is
$$i_L(t) = i_L(\infty) + Ae^{-\frac{R}{L}t} = \frac{V_s}{R} + Ae^{-\frac{R}{L}t}$$

5. Find the coefficient A. Initial condition indicates that $i_L(0^+) = 0 = V_s/R + A$, giving $A = -\frac{V_s}{R}$. This is because the switch is open prior to $t = 0$ and the inductor current is zero. Hence

$$i_L(t) = \frac{V_s}{R}(1 - e^{-\frac{R}{L}t}), \quad t \geq 0$$

Equivalently, another approach using KCL yields

1′ Find the initial condition: Since the inductor current can not change instantaneously before and after switch is closed. No voltage drops over the resistor and therefore, the inductor voltage jumps to V_s when the switch closes. This means that the inductor voltage can change instantaneously.

2′ Find the ODE. Labeling v_L at the corner of R and L, KCL yields

$$\frac{V_s - v_L}{R} = \frac{1}{L}\int v_L(\tau)d\tau$$

Arranging, we have

$$\frac{1}{R}\frac{dv_L}{dt} + \frac{1}{L}v_L = 0 \quad (\frac{1}{R}s + \frac{1}{L} = 0)$$

3′ Find the steady-state response. Since no forced input, we have $V_L(\infty) = 0$.

4′ Find the transient response.

$$v_L(t) = Ae^{-\frac{R}{L}t}, \quad t \geq 0$$

and thus the complete solution is the transient response.

5′ Find the coefficient A. Initial condition assures $v_L(0^+) = V_s = Ae^0$. Therefore, the complete solution is

$$v_L(t) = V_s e^{-\frac{R}{L}t}, \quad t \geq 0$$

To find the inductor current, integrating the inductor voltage yields

$$i_L(t) = \frac{1}{L}\int_0^t v(\tau)d\tau = \frac{1}{L}\int_0^t V_s e^{-\frac{R}{L}\tau}d\tau = \frac{V_s}{R}e^{-\frac{R}{L}\tau}|_t^0 = \frac{V_s}{R}(1 - e^{-\frac{R}{L}t})$$

s-domain methods

What about the other parallel method using impedance concept? Readers are encouraged to study and explore by themselves.

Let's see more examples in which we solve the problems step by step.

Example 5.3 (Transient Behavior with External Forces) *Given the following first-order RC circuit, find voltage across the capacitor.*
Solution: *Two different methods are studied.*
   t-**domain methods**

1. *Find the initial condition. Since the circuit is initially at rest, $v_C(0^-) = 0$.*
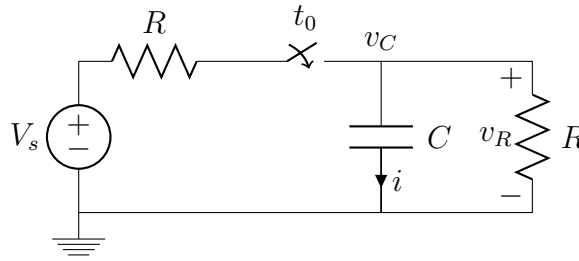
Figure 5.13: Circuit Diagram for Example 5.3

2. *Find the ODE. Labeling the voltage variable v_C at the top node, current flowing in equals current flowing out and KCL gives*

$$\frac{V_s - v_C}{R} = C\frac{dv_C}{dt} + \frac{v_C}{R}$$

Arranging yields

$$C\frac{dv_C}{dt} + \frac{2v_C}{R} = \frac{V_s}{R}$$

3. *Find the steady-state response.* $v_C(\infty) = v_s/2$.

4. *Find the transient response. The characteristic equation is*

$$RCs + 2 = 0, \quad s = -2/RC$$

Thus, the complete solution is

$$v_C(t) = \frac{V_s}{2} + Ae^{-\frac{2}{RC}t}$$

5. *Find coefficient A. Using initial condition $v_C(0^+) = 0 = \frac{V}{2} + A$ gives $A = -\frac{V}{2}$. The complete solution is*

$$v_C(t) = \frac{V_s}{2}(1 - e^{-\frac{2}{RC}t})^5$$

Since $\tau = RC/2 = 0.005$, the simulation time should be at least set to 5τ because the final value will be within 1% steady-state error.

How about KVL method?

s-domain methods

---

[5]Find the total current $i(t)$. Answer: $i(t) = \frac{V}{2R}(1 + e^{-\frac{2t}{RC}})$

Applying voltage divider, we have

$$V_C = \frac{C//R}{R + C//R}V = \frac{1}{RCs + 2}V_s$$

whose ODE is

$$RC\frac{dv_C}{dt} + 2v_C = V_s$$

Once the ODE is obtained, the time solution follows immediately. Let's try finding $i(t)$ again. Obviously

$$I = \frac{V_s}{R + C//R} = \frac{V_s(RCs + 1)}{R^2Cs + 2R}$$

whose ODE is

$$R^2C\frac{di}{dt} + 2Ri = RC\frac{dv}{dt} + v = V_s$$

Noticing that the derivative of constant voltage source is zero. To continue, we have

$$i_n(t) = Ae^{\frac{-2t}{RC}} \ and \ i(\infty) = \frac{V_s}{2R}$$

and the initial current condition $i(0^+) = \frac{V_s}{R}$ is used to find $A = \frac{V_s}{2R}$.

□

Example 5.4 *Two switches functioning at different time periods are involved in the following circuit. Find the time response for capacitor current. (Assume that on $t = 3ms$ the voltage $v_2 = 13V$.)*
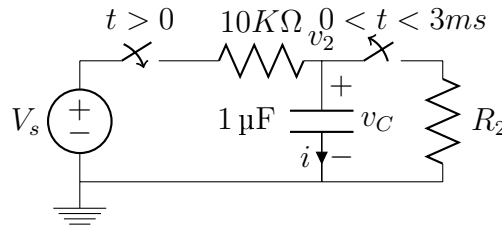
Figure 5.14: Circuit Diagram for Example 5.4

Solution: *We start with time domain analysis.*
   t-domain methods
   For $t > 0$, S_1 is closed and S_2 is open.

   1. *Find the initial condition. $v_C(0^-) = 0$ because the system is initially at rest.*

2. *Find ODE. Labeling v_C voltage variable for the capacitor and writing a KCL equation at the node*

$$\frac{V_s - v_C}{10K} = 1\mu \frac{dv_C}{dt}$$

Arranging yields

$$0.01 \frac{dv_C}{dt} + v_C = V_s$$

3. *Find the steady-state solution. $v_2(\infty) = V_s$ due to capacitor is open.*

4. *Find the natural response from the characteristic equation $0.01s + 1 = 0$. We have*

$$v_{C,n}(t) = Ae^{-100t}$$

and the complete solution is

$$v_C(t) = V_s + Ae^{-100t}$$

5. *Find the coefficient A. The initial condition $v_C(0^+) = 0 = V_s + A$ gives $A = -V_s$. The complete solution is, therefore,*

$$v_C(t) = V_s(1 - e^{-100t})V$$

Since $\tau = RC = 0.01$, the simulation time should be at least set to 5τ, for the final value will be within 1% steady-state error.
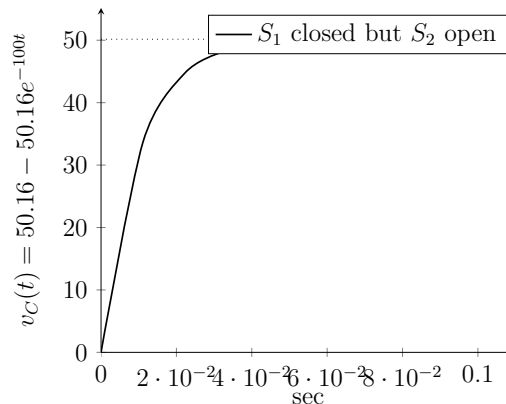
s-domain methods

Actually, impedance methods also include the time-domain KCL and KCL methods. The trick is to use the Ohm's law as well as voltage-division and/or current division laws properly. An s-domain circuit diagram is also helpful when applying s-domain method.

1. *By Ohm's law, we find capacitor current*

$$I_C(s) = \frac{V_s}{Z(s)} = \frac{V_s Cs}{RCs + 1}$$

2. *At steady-state, capacitor is open with infinity impedance*

$$i_{C,f} = V_s/Z(0) = V_s/\infty = 0$$

3. *From 1, we obtain differential equation*

$$0 = RC\frac{di_C}{dt} + i_C = 0.01\frac{di_C}{dt} + i_C$$

   Thus, $i_{C,n}(t) = Ae^{-100t}A, t \geq 0$ whose initial condition is determined by

$$i_{C,n}(0^-) = i_{C,n}(0^+) = V_s/R = V_s/10^4$$

   due to initially rest on capacitor. Therefore $i(t) = \frac{V_s}{10^4}e^{-100t}$

4. *Once current is found, we need to find v_C.*

$$v_2(t) = v_C = V_s - i_C R = V_s(1 - e^{-100t})$$

5. *It is noted that we could have started from voltage divider to find ODE for v_C.*

$$V_C(s) = \frac{\frac{1}{Cs}}{R + \frac{1}{Cs}}V_s = \frac{1}{RCs + 1}V_s$$

   Does the s-domain method is easier to follow? The circuit diagram is crucial for such case.

t-domain methods
   Continue our quest to the second part of the question; for $3ms < t$, both S_1 and S_2 are closed. At the time of switch $V_2 = 13V$.

$$v_2(3ms) = 13 = V_s(1 - e^{-100\times 3\times 10^{-3}})$$

gives $V_s = 50.16V$. Also

$$13 = 50.19\frac{R_2}{10K + R_2}$$

yields $R_2 = 3498\Omega \approx 3.5K\Omega$. Applying KCL gives

$$\frac{V_s - v_C}{10K} = 1\mu\frac{dv_C}{dt} + \frac{v_C}{R_2}$$
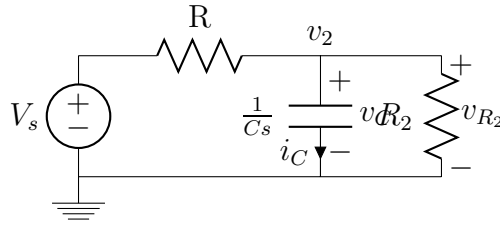
Arranging yields

$$C\frac{dv_C}{dt} + \frac{2v_C}{R_2} = \frac{V}{R_2}$$

Thus, $v_C(t) = \frac{V}{2} + Ae^{-\frac{2}{RC}t}$. To find coefficient A, initial condition $v_C(0^+) = 0 = \frac{V}{2} + A$ gives $A = -\frac{V}{2}$.

s-domain methods

It is shown below:

1. *$Z(s) = R + (\frac{1}{Cs}//R_2) = 10^4 + \frac{R_2}{1+10^{-6}s}$*

2. *$i_f = V/Z(0) = 50.16/(10^4 + R_2)$*

3. *$v_2(3ms) = (50.16R_2)/(10^4 + R_2)$ yields $R_2 = 3498.4 \approx 3.5K\Omega$*

□

Example 5.5 (First-Order with External Force) *Given a RC circuit with DC current source, find the capacitor voltage.*
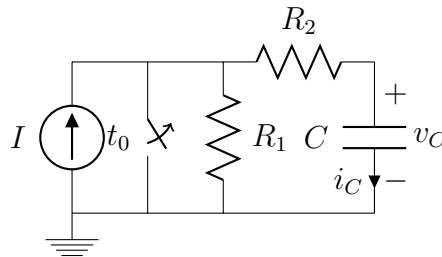
Figure 5.15: Circuit Diagram for Example 5.5

Solution:

t-domain methods

1. *Find the initial conditions. Prior to the switch opens, the capacitor voltage is zero and it can not change instantaneously after the switch closes. Therefore, the initial condition is $v_C(0^-) = 0 = v_C(0^+)$.*

2. *Find the ODE. Labeling v at the connection between R_1 and R_2 and writing a KCL equation yields*

$$
\begin{aligned}
I &= \frac{v}{R_1} + C\frac{dv_C}{dt} \\
v &= i_C R_2 + v_C = R_2(C\frac{v_C}{dt}) + v_C
\end{aligned}
$$

Substituting the second equation into the first equation gives

$$
I = (\frac{R_1 + R_2}{R_1})C\frac{dv_C}{dt} + \frac{v_C}{R_1}, \quad (R_1 + R_2)Cs + 1 = 0
$$

which is a first order differential equation with force.

3. *Find the steady-state solution (particular solution, forced solution) and it is found to be (capacitor is open as $t \to \infty$)*

$$
v_C(\infty) = IR_1
$$

4. *Find the natural response (complementary solution, transient response) by considering the homogeneous equation (setting the external force to zero and use the techniques for unforced response.)*

$$
v_C(t) = Ae^{\frac{-t}{(R_1+R_2)C}}
$$

5. *Find the coefficients which is A for this example. The initial condition $v_C(0^-) = 0 = v_C(0^+) = IR_1 + A$ yields $A = -IR_1$. The complete solution is*

$$
v_C(t) = IR_1(1 - e^{\frac{-t}{(R_1+R_2)C}}), \quad t \geq 0
$$

Since $\tau = (R_1 + R_2)C = 0.005$, the simulation time (TSTOP) should be at least set to 5τ, for the final value will be within 1% steady-state error.

How about KVL method?

s-domain methods

The objective is to find dynamic equation for v_C. We can find I_C first, leading to $V_C = I_C\frac{1}{Cs}$ by the general Ohm's law. To find current flowing through the capacitor, the current divider yields

$$
I_C = \frac{R_1}{R_1 + R_2 + \frac{1}{Cs}}I
$$

thus

$$
V_C = \frac{I_C}{Cs} = \frac{R_1 I}{(R_1 + R_2)Cs + 1}
$$

whose ODE is

$$
(R_1 + R_2)C\frac{dv_C}{dt} + v_C = R_1 I
$$

What follows, to find the time solutions, is fairly routine.

☐

Example 5.6 (First-Order ODE, Switching Back and Forth) *The following circuit is very important and serves to illustrate the general principles and concepts that are common to all circuit problems.*
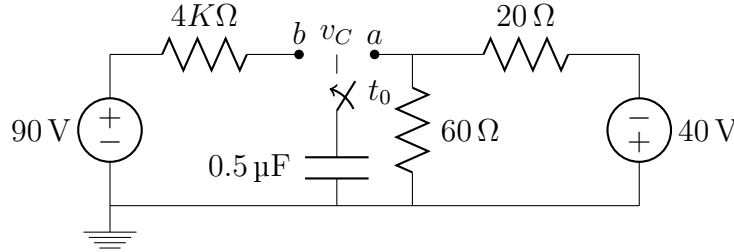
Figure 5.16: Circuit Diagram for Example 5.6

Solution:

t-domain methods

(a) *Assume the switch is at position a for a long time, then flip to position b.*

1. *Find the initial conditions. Switch is at position a for a long time, thus $v_C(0^-) = -40 \times \frac{6}{8} = -30V$.*

2. *Find the 1st order ODE. Using KCL, we get*

$$\frac{90 - v_C}{4K} = 0.5 \times 10^{-6} \frac{dv_C}{dt}$$

Substituting circuit parameters and rearranging yield

$$0.002 \frac{dv_C}{dt} + v_C = 90$$

3. *Find the transient response. The characteristic equation is $0.002s + 1 = 0$, yielding $s = -500$ and the natural response readily obtained as*

$$v_{C,n}(t) = Ae^{-500t}, \quad t \geq 0$$

4. *Find the forced response. It is readily seen that $v_C(\infty) = 90$, leading to the complete solution being*

$$v_C(t) = 90 + Ae^{-500t}, \quad t \geq 0$$

5. *Find the coefficient A. $v_C(0^+) = v_C(0^-) = -30 = 90 + A$, we have $A = -120$. Thus*

$$v_C(t) = 90 - 120e^{-500t}V, \quad t \geq 0$$
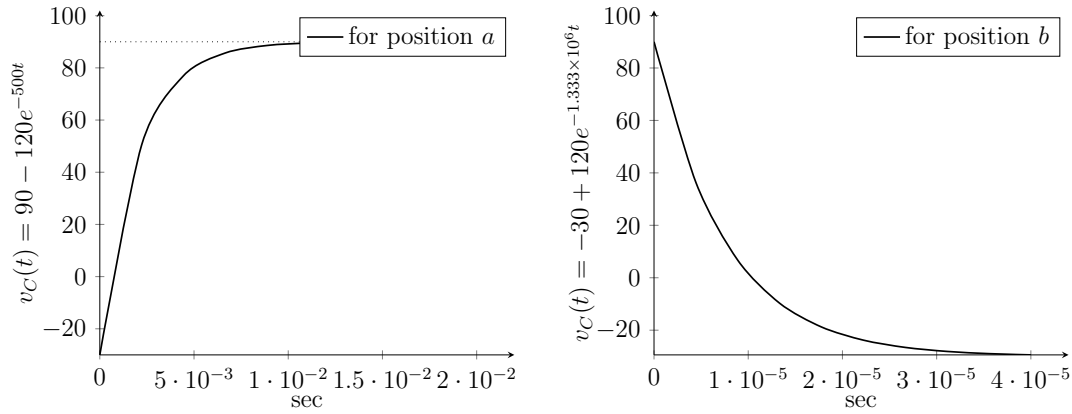
Figure 5.17: Time Response $v_C(t)$ for Example 5.6

2') *What happens if you use the KVL in step 2?*

$$90 = 4Ki + \frac{1}{C}\int i\ dt$$

Substituting circuit parameters and differentiating yield

$$4K\frac{di}{dt} + 2\times 10^6 i = 0$$

3') *Find the transient response. The characteristic equation is $4Ks + 2\times 10^6 = 0$, yielding $s = -500$ and*

$$i_n(t) = Ae^{-500t}, \quad t \geq 0$$

4') *Find the forced response. $i(\infty) = 0$ and the complete solution is $i(t) = Ae^{-500t}, t \geq 0$.*

5') *Find the coefficient A which needs the initial condition for $i(0^+)$. Since $v_C(0^+) = -30$, the KVL still holds for*

$$90 = v_R(0^+) + v_C(0^+) = i(0^+)4K - 30$$

Therefore, $i(0^+) = \frac{90+30}{4K} = 3\times 10^{-2} = A$. Thus

$$i(t) = 3\times 10^{-2}e^{-500t}A,\,^6 \quad t \geq 0$$

But to find $v_C(t)$, an integration technique leads to

$$v_C(t) = \frac{1}{C}\int_0^t i(\tau)\ d\tau + v_C(0) = -120e^{-500\tau}\big|_0^t + (-30) = 90 - 120e^{-500t}V, \quad t \geq 0$$

t-domain methods

(b) Now, continue to find the scenario when the switch is switched from position b back to position a.

1. *Find the initial conditions. Switch is at position b for a long time, thus $v_C(0^-) = 90V$.*

2. *Find the 1st order ODE. Using KCL, we get*

$$\frac{-40 - v_C}{20} = \frac{v_C}{60} + 0.5 \times 10^{-6}\frac{dv_C}{dt}$$

   which yields

$$0.5 \times 10^{-6}\frac{dv_C}{dt} + \frac{80}{120}v_C = -2$$

3. *Find the transient response. The characteristic equation is $0.5 \times 10^{-6}s + \frac{8}{12} = 0$, yielding $s = -1.333 \times 10^6$ and*

$$v_{C,n}(t) = Ae^{-1.333\times10^6 t}, \quad t \geq 0$$

4. *Find the forced response. $v_C(\infty) = -30$. Thus, the complete solution is*

$$v_C(t) = -30 + Ae^{-1.333\times10^6 t}, \quad t \geq 0$$

5. *Find the coefficient A. Since $v_C(0^+) = v_C(0^-) = 90 = -30 + A$, we have $A = 120$. Thus*

$$v_C(t) = -30 + 120e^{-1.333\times10^6 t}V, \quad t \geq 0$$

   Since $\tau = RC = 7.5\mu$, the simulation time should be at least set to 5τ, for the final value will be within 1% steady-state error.

s-domain methods

Switch is at position a for a long time and then flip to position b. We use voltage divider to find

$$V_C = \frac{90}{R + \frac{1}{Cs}}\frac{1}{Cs} = \frac{90}{RCs + 1}$$

whose ODE is

$$90 = RC\frac{dv_C}{dt} + v_C = 20 \times 10^{-3}\frac{dv_C}{dt} + v_C$$

If we want to find the current $i(t)$ flowing out of $90V$, find

$$I = \frac{90}{R + \frac{1}{Cs}} = \frac{90s}{Rs + \frac{1}{C}}$$

whose ODE is

$$0 = R\frac{di}{dt} + \frac{1}{C}i = \frac{di}{dt} + 500i$$

With that, to find time solutions is a fairly routine procedure. Moreover, for the case of switching back to position a, readers are encouraged to practice by themselves.

□

Example 5.7 (First-Order ODE) *This example is similar to the previous example.*[7]
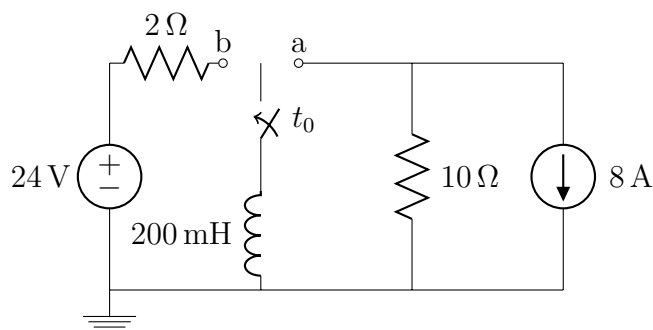
Figure 5.18: Circuit Diagram for Example 5.7

Solution:
 t-domain methods
 (a) Assume the switch is at position a for a long time, then flip to position b.

1. *Find the initial conditions. Switch is at position a for a long time, thus $i_L(0^-) = 8A$ entering from the negative polarity.*

2. *Find the 1st order ODE for $i_L(t)$. Using KVL, we get*

$$24 = Ri_L + L\frac{di_L}{dt}$$

   Substituting circuit parameters yields

$$0.2\frac{di_L}{dt} + 2i_L = 24$$

3. *Find the transient response. The characteristic equation is $0.2s + 2 = 0$, yielding $s = -10$ and*

$$i_L(t) = Ae^{-10t}, \quad t \geq 0$$

---

[7]In a similar fashion as those taught in the previous example, plot the time functions.

4. *Find the forced response. $i_L(\infty) = 12$ and the complete solution is*

$$i_{L,n}(t) = 12 + Ae^{-10t}, \quad t \geq 0$$

5. *Find the coefficient A. $i_L(0^-) = -8 = i_L(0^+) = 12 + A$, we have $A = -20$, yielding*

$$i_L(t) = 12 - 20e^{-10t}A, \quad t \geq 0$$

2') *What happens if you use the KCL in step 2?*

$$\frac{24 - v_L}{2} = \frac{1}{L} \int v_L \, dt$$

which yields

$$\frac{dv_L}{dt} + 10v_L = 0 \quad (s + 10 = 0)$$

3') *Find the transient response. The characteristic equation is $s + 10 = 0$, yielding $s = -10$ and*

$$v_L(t) = Ae^{-10t}, \quad t \geq 0$$

4') *Find the forced response by setting the derivative term to zero. Thus, $v_L(\infty) = 0$.*

5') *Find the coefficient A which needs the initial condition for $v_L(0^+)$. Since the KVL still holds when the switch is flip to position b, we have*

$$V_s = 24 = v_R(0^+) + v_L(0^+) = 2i(0^+) + v_L(0^+) = 2(-8) + v_L(0^+)$$

which, in turn, yields $v_L(0^+) = 40$. Therefore, $v_L(0^+) = 40 = A$ and

$$v_L(t) = 40e^{-10t}V, \quad t \geq 0$$

But to find $i_L(t)$, we need to use integration which is displayed below

$$i_L(t) = \frac{1}{L} \int_0^t v_L(\tau) \, d\tau + i_L(0) = -20e^{-10\tau}|_0^t + (-8) = 12 - 20e^{-10t}V, \quad t \geq 0$$

t-domain methods

(b) Now, continue to find the scenario when the switch is switched from position b back to position a.

1. *Find the initial conditions. Switch is at position b for a long time, thus $i_L(0^-) = 12A$ entering from the positive polarity.*
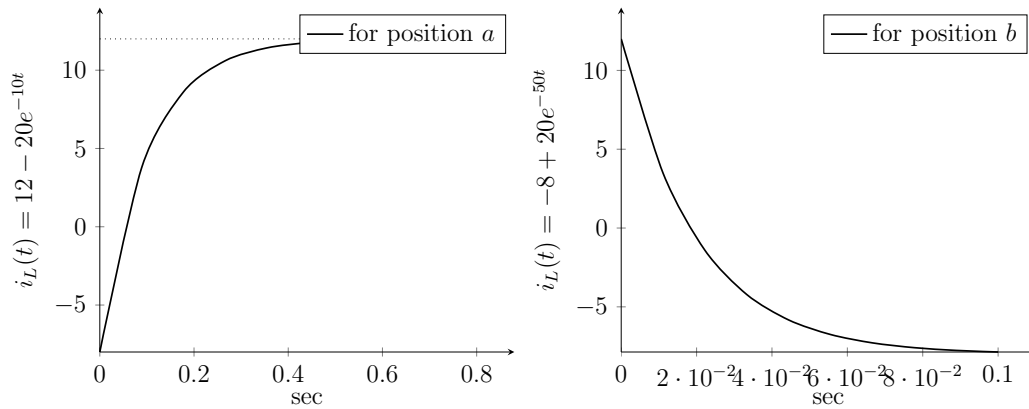
Figure 5.19: Time Response $i_L(t)$ for Example 5.7

2. *Find the 1st order ODE for $v_L(t)$. Using KCL, we get*

$$0 = 8 + \frac{v_L}{10} + \frac{1}{0.2}\int v_L(\tau)d\tau$$

which yields (by differentiation)

$$0.1\frac{dv_L}{dt} + 5v_L = 0.(0.1s + 5 = 0)$$

3. *Find the transient response. The characteristic equation is $0.1s+5 = 0$, yielding $s = -50$ and*

$$v_{L,n}(t) = Ae^{-50t}, \quad t \geq 0$$

4. *Find the forced response. $v_L(\infty) = 0$ and the complete solution is*

$$v_L(t) = Ae^{-50t}, \quad t \geq 0$$

5. *Find the coefficient A. This is trick for this example. Since the $i_L(0^+) = i_L(0^-) = 12$ when the switch is flip back to position a, the initial inductor current (12A) and the current source (8A) is injecting into the 10 Ω resistor, we have $v_R = -20 \times 10 = -200V$ initially. Thus $v_L(0^+) = -200 = Ae^0$, from which the complete solution is*

$$v_L(t) = -200e^{-50t}, \quad t \geq 0$$

It is interesting to know that the inductor current can be obtained by integrating the inductor voltage and that is

$$i_L(t) = -8 + 20e^{-50t}A, \quad t \geq 0^8$$

---

[8]Plot the inductor current.

s-domain methods

The current can be found as

$$I = \frac{24}{R + Ls}$$

whose ODE is

$$L\frac{di}{dt} + Ri = 24$$

Likewise, to find v_L, we go by

$$\frac{24 - V_L}{R} = \frac{V_L}{Ls}$$

whose ODE is readily obtained as

$$0 = L\frac{dv_L}{dt} + 2v_L = \frac{dv_L}{dt} + 10v_L$$

For switch at position b case, current divider yields

$$I_L = \frac{-8R}{R + Ls}$$

whose ODE is

$$0.2\frac{di_L}{dt} + 10i_L = -80$$

whose steady-state value is $i_L(\infty) = -8A$.

□

Example 5.8 (First-Order ODE, with AC source) *Given the following RC circuit with AC voltage source whose angular frequency is $w = 60$ ($f = w/2\pi = 9.549Hz$.)*
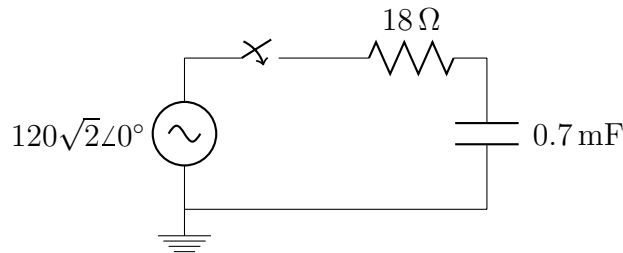
Figure 5.20: Circuit Diagram for Example 5.8

Solution: *Only time domain analysis is studied because the s-domain analysis is straightforward.*

t-domain methods

1. *Find the initial condition. Immediately after the switch is closed, the capacitor voltage remains zero and the current suddenly jumps to $120/18 = 6.667A$.*

2. *Find the ODE. Traveling around the loop and summing voltages, we have*

$$120\sqrt{2}\cos 60t = 18i + \frac{1}{C}\int i(\tau)d\tau$$

   Differentiating, we have

$$18\frac{di}{dt} + \frac{1}{0.7m}i = -120\sqrt{2}\times 60\sin 60t$$

3. *Find the forced response, we use phasor concept and it is readily found*

$$i(\infty) = 120\angle 0°/(18 - j24) = 4\angle 53.13°$$

   whose time expression is

$$i(\infty) = 4\sqrt{2}\cos(60t + 53.13°)$$

4. *Find the transient response. Use homogeneous equation and the characteristic equation is found to be $18s + 1428 = 0$, $s = -79.4$, which yields*

$$i_n(t) = Ae^{-79.4t}$$

   Thus the complete response is

$$i(t) = 4\sqrt{2}\cos(60t + 53.13°) + Ae^{-79.4t}$$

5. *Find the undetermined coefficient A. The initial condition yields*

$$i(0^+) = A + 4\sqrt{2}\cos 53.13° = 6.667,   A = 3.273$$

   Finally the complete response is

$$i(t) = 4\sqrt{2}\cos(60t + 53.13°) + 3.273e^{-79.4t},   t \geq 0 \qquad (5.3)$$

□

Example 5.9 (First-Order ODE) *Given the following RC circuit with AC voltage source, find the current after the switch is closed.*
Solution: *Only time domain analysis is studied because the s-domain analysis is straightforward.*
  t-domain methods
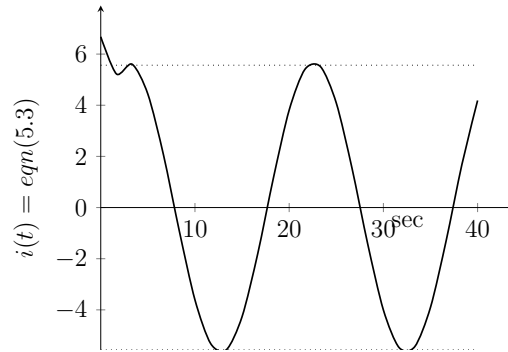
Figure 5.21: Time Response $i(t)$ for Example 5.8
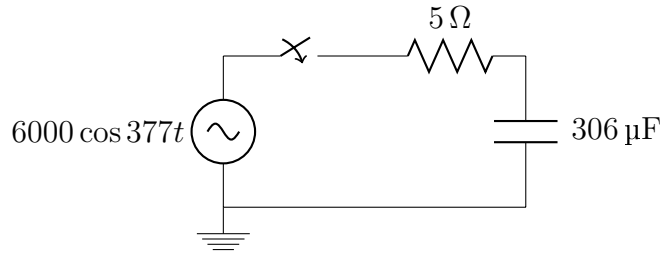
Figure 5.22: Circuit Diagram for Example 5.9

1. *Find the initial condition. Immediately after the switch is closed, the capacitor voltage remains zero and the current becomes $6000/5 = 1200A$.*

2. *Find the ODE for $i(t)$. Traveling around the loop and summing voltage leads to*

$$6000 \cos 377t = 5i + \frac{1}{C} \int i(\tau)\tau$$

   Differentiating, we have

$$\frac{10^6}{306}i + 5\frac{di}{dt} = -6000 \times 377 \sin 377t, \quad (5s + \frac{10^6}{306} = 0)$$

3. *Find the forced response using phasor concept*

$$\bar{I} = 6000\angle 0°/(5 - j8.668) = \frac{6000\angle 0°}{10\angle -60°}, \quad i.e. \ i(\infty) = 600 \cos(377t + 60°)$$

4. *Find the transient response. The characteristic equation for the homogeneous equation without input force is $5s + 3268 = 0$, leading to $s = -654$. Thus*

$$i_n(t) = Ae^{-654t}, \quad t \geq 0$$

5. *Find the coefficient A. At the instant the switch closes, we have*

$$1200 = 600\cos 60° + A$$

which yields $A = 600$ and the complete solution is

$$i(t) = 600\cos(377t + 60°) + 600e^{-654t} \tag{5.4}$$
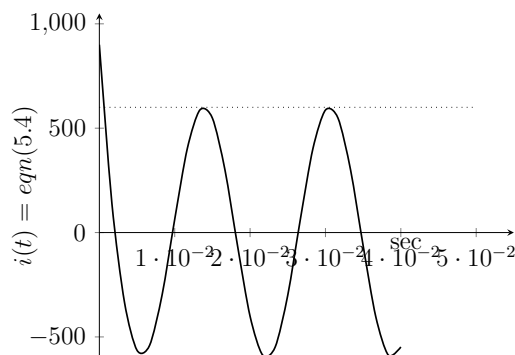
Figure 5.23: Time Response $i(t)$ for Example 5.9

☐

5.3.3   Solving procedures for the first-order systems

Summary for solving the first-order circuits (RC or RL circuits) is itemized as what follows.

Without external energy

1. Determine initial conditions using $W_C = \frac{1}{2}Cv^2, W_L = \frac{1}{2}Li^2$. That is, capacitor voltage and inductor current can not, respectively, change its value instantaneously. (If no hints, then assume initially at rest).

2. Form 1st-order ODE using KCL or KVL (t-domain methods).

3. Identify natural response / transient response $x_n(t, A) = Ae^{st}$ where x_n could be v or i.

4. Evaluate the undetermined coefficient A by using IC: $v_C(0^-) = v_C(0^+) = A$ or $i_L(0^-) = i_L(0^+) = A$.

   Note that Step 2 may be replaced by s-domain methods.

Table 5.1: Table of Impedance

Elements	R	L	C
$Z(s)$	R	Ls	$\frac{1}{Cs}$
$Z(0)$	R	0	∞
$Z(j\omega)$	R	$j\omega L$	$\frac{1}{j\omega C}$

With external energy

1. Determine initial conditions using $W_C = \frac{1}{2}Cv^2, W_L = \frac{1}{2}Li^2$. That is, capacitor voltage and inductor current can not, respectively, change its value instantaneously. (If no hints, then assume initially at rest).

2. Form 1st-order ODE by using KCL or KVL (t-domain methods).

3. Identify natural/transient response $x_n(t, A) = Ae^{st}, t \geq 0$.

4. Determine forced response, $x_f(t)$
   (a) For DC source, use $Z(0)$ and $V = IR$.
   (b) For AC source, use $Z(j\omega)$ and $\bar{V} = \bar{I}\bar{Z}$ (Phasor).

5. Evaluate the undetermined coefficient A by using IC. Thus the identity,

$$x(0) = x_f + x_n(0, A) = x_f + Ae^0$$

yields $A = x(0) - x_f$.

Note that Step 2 may be replaced by s-domain methods.

5.4 Second-Order Systems

In what follows, we will investigate deriving transient solutions for circuits that contain two energy storage elements (one L and one C). These are said to be second-order circuits. If we combine the two L's or two C's into one single element by a series or parallel combination, then the system is of first-order.

5.4.1 Facts

Recalling the following identities that we have accumulated over the learning process.

$$v = L\frac{di}{dt} \quad i = \frac{1}{L}\int v(\tau)d\tau \quad \text{Henry's law for inductors, } t\text{-domain.}$$

$$V = LsI^9 \qquad I = \frac{1}{L}\frac{V}{s} \quad \text{impedance concept for inductors, } s\text{-domain.}$$

$$i = C\frac{dv}{dt} \qquad v = \frac{1}{C}\int i(\tau)d\tau \quad \text{Faraday's law for capacitors, } t\text{-domain.}$$

$$I = CsV \qquad V = \frac{1}{C}\frac{I}{s}{}^{10} \quad \text{impedance concept for capacitors, } s\text{-domain.}$$

5.4.2 Unforced systems

We will study unforced systems first and then forced systems. The general principles and concepts are similar to the circuits of first-order degree that we have learned in the previous sections. The solution to these second-order differential equations depends, as in the case of first-order systems, on initial conditions and on forcing function. Since all the desired circuit variables may be obtained either as a function of i_L or as a function of v_C, the choice of the preferred differential equations depends on specific circuit applications.

Parallel RLC circuits

Given the following second-order parallel RLC circuit, find its current in terms of voltage.
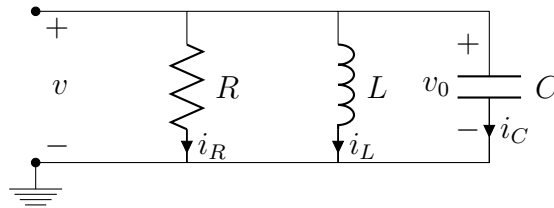
Figure 5.24: Parallel Structure

Picking a ground node at the bottom, assigning a current direction, and writing a KCL equation at the top node yield

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 &= i_C + i_L + i_R \\
&= C\frac{dv}{dt} + i_L + \frac{v}{R} \qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad (5.5) \\
&= C\frac{dv}{dt} + \underbrace{\frac{1}{L}\int v(\tau)d\tau}_{i_L} + \frac{v}{R}, \quad 0 = (Cs + \frac{1}{Ls} + \frac{1}{R})V \qquad (5.6)
\end{aligned}
$$

---

[10] This can be proved by applying the exponential signal $i_e = e^{st} \rightarrow \frac{di_e}{dt} = se^{st} = si_e$.

[10] Prove this form.

$$= \ C\frac{d}{dt}(L\frac{di_L}{dt}) + i_L + \frac{1}{R}(L\frac{di_L}{dt}) \quad 0 = (LCs^2 + 1 + \frac{L}{R}s)I \qquad (5.7)$$

t-domain methods

Differentiating the t-domain equation (5.6) yields

$$C\frac{d^2v}{dt^2} + \frac{1}{R}\frac{dv}{dt} + \frac{1}{L}v = 0. \quad (Cs^2 + \frac{1}{R}s + \frac{1}{L} = 0) \qquad (5.8)$$

The derived differential equation is expressed in v, which is v_C in this example. Can we drive an ODE in i_L?

Start with the following identities (5.7), to obtain an ODE in i_L

$$LC\frac{d^2i_L}{dt^2} + \frac{L}{R}\frac{di_L}{dt} + i_L = 0 \quad (LCs^2 + \frac{L}{R}s + 1 = 0) \qquad (5.9)$$

It should be noted that both (5.8) and (5.9) have the same characteristic equations even though the differential equations are expressed in terms of different variables, v_C and i_L respectively.

The s-domain expression (5.6) can be converted to (5.7) or vice versa by letting $V = LsI$ and $I = V/Ls$. The beauty of such s-domain operation is its simplicity – algebraic operation.

The point here is that a circuit will have one unique characteristic equation. Focusing on (5.8), substituting $v(t) = Ae^{st}$ into the equation above and factoring out Ae^{st}, it is readily seen that the corresponding characteristic equation associated with ODE (5.8) is

$$Cs^2 + \frac{s}{R} + \frac{1}{L} = 0$$

which is quadratic in s. Solving, we have

$$s_1, s_2 = -\frac{1}{2RC} \pm \sqrt{(\frac{1}{2RC})^2 - \frac{1}{LC}} = -\alpha \pm \sqrt{\alpha^2 - \omega_n^2} = -\alpha \pm j\omega_d$$

where w_n is known as natural frequency/resonant frequency and w_d is called damped frequency. Notice that the third equal sign holds true only if $\alpha^2 - w_n^2 < 0$.

The general solution has the form

$$v(t) = A_1 e^{s_1 t} + A_2 e^{s_2 t}, \quad t \geq 0$$

where the exponents s_1 and s_2 are determined by parameters R, L, C.

Learning from course of Mathematic Engineering, we know that there are 3 possible outcomes for the roots of s_1 and s_2:

1. $\alpha^2 > \omega_n^2$; Overdamped response (Distinct real roots); $\Delta > 0$.

$$v(t) = A_1 e^{s_1 t} + A_2 e^{s_2 t}$$

To find the undetermined coefficients A_1 and A_2, we find

$$\begin{aligned} v_C(0^+) &= v_0 = A_1 + A_2 \\ \frac{dv_C(0^+)}{dt} &= \frac{i_C(0^+)}{C} = s_1 A_1 + s_2 A_2 \end{aligned}$$
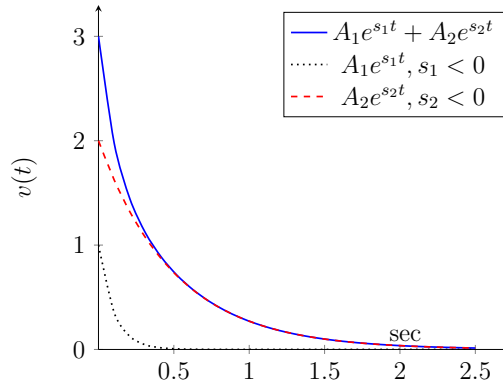
Figure 5.25: Time Response $y(t)$ for Distinct Roots (Overdamped Responses)

Can you figure out the time constant for the individual exponential functions in Figure 5.25? The meaning of time constant is worth noting from this example.

2. $\alpha^2 < \omega_n^2$; Underdamped response (Complex roots); $\Delta < 0$.

$$\begin{aligned} v(t) &= A_1 e^{-(\alpha + j w_d)t} + A_2 e^{-(\alpha - j w_d)t} \\ &= e^{-\alpha t}(A_1 e^{-j w_d t} + A_2 e^{j w_d t}) \\ &= e^{-\alpha t}[(A_1 + A_2)\cos w_d t + j(A_2 - A_1)\sin w_d t] \\ &= e^{-\alpha t}(B_1 \cos \omega_d t + B_2 \sin \omega_d t) \end{aligned}$$

To find the undetermined coefficients A_1 and A_2, we find

$$\begin{aligned} v_C(0^+) &= v_0 = B_1 \\ \frac{dv_C(0^+)}{dt} &= \frac{i_C(0^+)}{C} = -\alpha B_1 + w_d B_2 \end{aligned}$$

3. $\alpha^2 = \omega_n^2$; Critically damped response (Equal real roots); $\Delta = 0$.

$$v(t) = (A_1 + A_2)e^{-\alpha t} = A e^{-\alpha t}$$
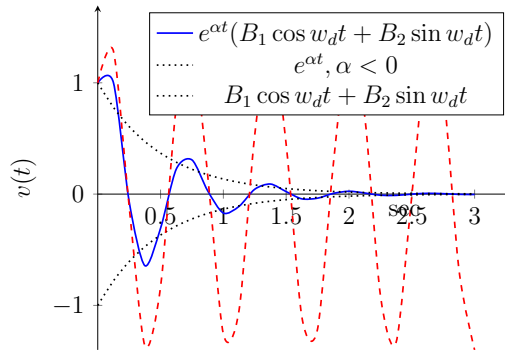
Figure 5.26: Time Response $y(t)$ for Complex Roots (Underdamped Responses)

which reduces to one undetermined constant and this is erroneous. The way to overcome this is to insert a t variable

$$v(t) = (A_1 + A_2 t)e^{-\alpha t}$$

This will have two undetermined constants and that is plausible for a second-order solution.

The undetermined coefficients A_1 and A_2 are determined by initial conditions

$$
\begin{aligned}
v_C(0^+) &= V_0, & \frac{dv_C(0^+)}{dt} &= \frac{i_C(0^+)}{C}, & \text{if the ODE is expressed in } v_C \\
i_L(0^+) &= I_0, & \frac{di_L(0^+)}{dt} &= \frac{v_L(0^+)}{L}, & \text{if the ODE is expressed in } i_L
\end{aligned}
$$
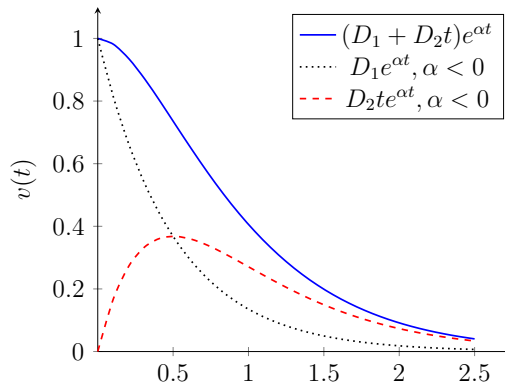
Figure 5.27: Time Response $y(t)$ for Equal Roots (Critically Damped Responses)

Example 5.10 (Overdamped Response) *Given the parallel RLC circuit of Figure 5.24 above with $v_0 = 50V, i_0 = 2A, C = 0.25\mu F, L = 40mH, R = 100\Omega$, find (a) $i_C(0), i_L(0), i_R(0)$, (b) $\frac{dv(0^+)}{dt}$, and (c) $v(t)$.*
Solution: *This is relatively ease once you learn the concepts.*

(a) $i_L(0) = 2A, i_R(0) = \frac{v(0)}{R} = \frac{50}{100} = 0.5A, i_C(0) = -i_L(0) - i_R(0) = -2.5A$.

(b) Since $i_C(0) = C\frac{dv(0)}{dt}$, we have $\frac{dv(0)}{dt} = \frac{i_C(0)}{C} = \frac{-2.5}{0.25\mu} = -10^7 V/s$.

(c) $s_1, s_2 = -\frac{1}{RC} \pm \sqrt{(\frac{1}{2RC})^2 - \frac{1}{LC}}, s_1 = -2679.5, s_2 = -37320.5$. Thus

$$v(t) = A_1 e^{-2679.5t} + A_2 e^{-37320.5t}$$

To find A_1 and A_2, we solve the following simultaneous equations

$$
\begin{aligned}
v(0) &= A_1 + A_2 = 50V \\
\frac{dv(0)}{dt} &= (-2679.5)A_1 + (-37320.5)A_2 = -10^7 V/s
\end{aligned}
$$

which yields $A_1 = -234.81, A_2 = 284.81$. Therefore an overdamped solution is

$$v(t) = -234.81 e^{-2679.5t} + 284.81 e^{-37320.5t} V, t \geq 0$$

□
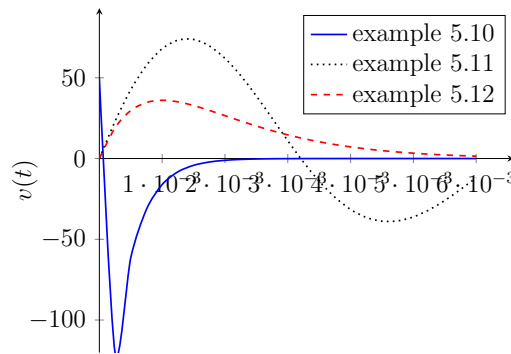
Figure 5.28: Time Response $v(t)$ for Examples 5.10-5.12

Example 5.11 (Underdamped Response) *Referring to Figure 5.24 with the following parameters: $v_0 = 0$, $i_0 = -12.25mA$, $R = 20K\Omega$, $L = 8H$, and $C = 0.125\mu F$,*

(a) find s_1 and s_2, (b) $v(t)$.
Solution: *Following the previous example, we obtain*

$$s_1, s_2 = -\frac{1}{2RC} \pm \sqrt{(\frac{1}{2RC})^2 - \frac{1}{LC}} = -200 \pm j979.8$$

Thus

$$
\begin{aligned}
v(t) &= A_1 e^{(-200+j979.8)t} + A_2 e^{(-200-j979.8)t} \\
&= e^{-200t}[(A_1 + A_2)\cos 979.8t + j(A_2 - A_1)\sin 979.8t] \\
&= e^{-200t}(B_1 \cos 979.8t + B_2 \sin 979.8t)
\end{aligned}
$$

Now evaluate B_1 and B_2 by using the initial condition

$$
\begin{aligned}
v_C(0^+) &= v_C(0^-) = 0 = B_1 \\
\frac{dv_C(0^+)}{dt} &= \frac{i_C(0^+)}{C} = \frac{1}{C}(-i_R(0^+) - i_L(0^+)) = \frac{1}{C}(-(-12.25m)) = 98 \times 10^3 \\
&= -200B_1 + 979.8B_2.
\end{aligned}
$$

Solving these simultaneous equations, we have $B_1 = 0, B_2 = 100$ and an underdamped solution is

$$v(t) = 100e^{-200t}\sin 979.8t V, \quad t \geq 0$$

□

Example 5.12 (Critically Damped Response) *Find R such that the circuit of Figure 5.24 has critically damped response $v(t)$.* [11]
Solution: *We learn that for critically damped response $\alpha^2 = \omega_n^2$ must be satisfied. Thus the constraint $\frac{1}{2RC} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{LC}} = 10^3$ yields $R = 4K\Omega$. Moreover, for such response the solution form is*

$$v(t) = D_1 t e^{-1000t} + D_2 e^{-1000t} V, \quad t \geq 0$$

To find D_1 and D_2, we, from initial condition, have

$$
\begin{aligned}
v(0^+) &= D_2 = 0 \\
\frac{v(0^+)}{dt} &= D_1 + (-1000)D_2 = \frac{1}{C}(-i_R(0^+) - i_L(0^+)) = 98000V/s
\end{aligned}
$$

Solving these simultaneous equations yields $D_1 = 98000, D_2 = 0$, giving a critically damped solution

$$v(t) = 98000te^{-1000t}V, \quad t \geq 0$$

---

[11]Same exercise, let $R = 3K$, find the time response $v_C(t)$. What type of response is it?

☐

Example 5.13 (Transient Behavior without External Force) *Using the following parameters: $L = 0.5H, R = 400\Omega, C = 0.5\mu F, v_0 = 30V$, find the initial conditions and expression of $v(t)$.*[12]
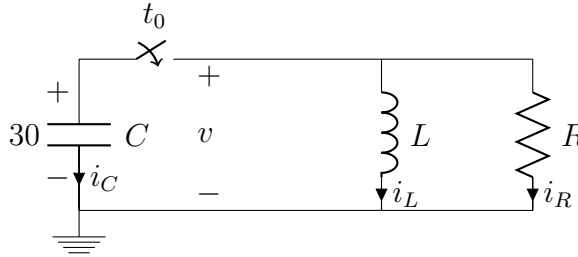
Figure 5.29: Example 5.13

Solution:

(a) *Since v_C could not change instantaneously so $v(0^+) = v_C(0^-) = 30$, $i_R = v/R = 30/400 = 0.075A$. Since i_L could not change instantaneously, thus $i_L(0^+) = 0 = i_L(0^-)$. Furthermore, KCL applied to the top node yields*

$$i_C + i_L + i_R = 0$$

giving

$$i_C(0^+) = -i_L(0^+) - i_R(0^+) = -0.075A$$

(b) $\frac{dv(0^+)}{dt} = \frac{i_C(0^+)}{C} = \frac{-0.075}{0.5\mu} = -150KV/s$

(c) *KCL applied to the top node yields differential-integral form*

$$0 = i_C + i_L + i_R = C\frac{dv}{dt} + \frac{1}{L}\int v(t)d\tau + \frac{v}{R}$$

Differentiating, we have

$$C\frac{d^2v}{dt^2} + \frac{1}{R}\frac{dv}{dt} + \frac{1}{L}v = 0, \quad (Cs^2 + \frac{1}{R}s + \frac{1}{L} = 0) \tag{5.10}$$

(d) $\Delta = (\frac{1}{2RC})^2 - \frac{1}{LC} = (\frac{1}{2\cdot400\cdot0.5\mu})^2 - (\frac{1}{0.5\cdot0.5\times10^{-6}}) = 2.25 \times 10^6 > 0$ *indicates an overdamped system.*

---

[12]Solve this exercise and plot time response via PSpice.

(e) *From (d), one solves for $s_1 = -1000, s_2 = -4000$. Thus the voltage expression is*

$$v(t) = A_1 e^{-1000t} + A_2 e^{-4000t} = -10e^{-1000t} + 40e^{-4000t}V, \quad t \geq 0$$

where A_1 and A_2 are found by applying the initial condition obtained from (a)

$$
\begin{aligned}
30 &= A_1 + A_2 \\
-150,000 &= -1000A_1 - 4000A_2
\end{aligned}
$$

To find an ODE in $i_L(t)$, substitute $v = L\frac{di_L}{di}$ into (5.10) and follow the similar step you just learned.

□

Series RLC circuit

Following the same notions for parallel circuit, we consider the following second-order series RLC circuit and derive the expression for current flowing in the circuit.
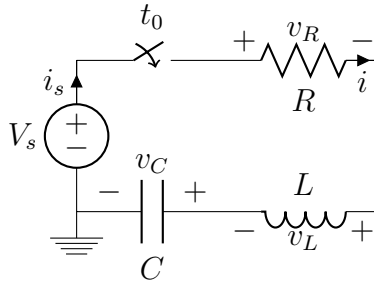
Figure 5.30: Series RLC Structure

Applying KVL around the single loop clockwise yields

$$
\begin{aligned}
v &= v_R + v_C + v_L \\
&= iR + v_C + L\frac{di}{dt} && (5.11) \\
&= iR + \frac{1}{C}\int i(\tau)d\tau + L\frac{di}{dt}, \quad V = I(R + \frac{1}{Cs} + Ls) && (5.12) \\
&= (C\frac{dv_C}{dt})R + v_C + L\frac{d}{dt}(C\frac{dv_C}{dt}) && (5.13)
\end{aligned}
$$

Differentiating the ODE (5.12) yields

$$L\frac{d^2 i}{dt} + R\frac{di}{dt} + \frac{1}{C}i = 0$$

where the differential equation is expressed in terms of i which is i_L too. Can you find the time expression in v_C?[13] It is noted that the order of the highest derivative depends on the number of the energy-storage elements. Given (5.12), the characteristic equation is

$$Ls^2 + Rs + \frac{1}{C} = 0$$

which has two roots

$$s_1, s_2 = -\frac{R}{2L} \pm \sqrt{(\frac{R}{2L})^2 - \frac{1}{LC}} = -\alpha \pm \sqrt{\alpha^2 - \omega_n^2} = -\alpha \pm j\omega_d$$

where w_n and w_d are defined as before. Thus, the general solution is

$$i(t) = A_1 e^{s_1 t} + A_2 e^{s_2 t}$$

where A_1 and A_2 are determined by initial conditions.

$$
\begin{aligned}
v_C(0^+) &= V_0, & \frac{dv_C(0^+)}{dt} &= \frac{i_C(0^+)}{C}, & \text{if the ODE is expressed in } v_C \\
i_L(0^+) &= I_0, & \frac{di_L(0^+)}{dt} &= \frac{v_L(0^+)}{L}, & \text{if the ODE is expressed in } i_L
\end{aligned}
$$

and the exponents s_1 and s_2 are determined by parameters R, L, C.

Interestingly enough, the Laplace transform (5.12) is the generalized Ohm's law ($V = IZ(s)$) we introduced when the impedance concepts was taught. The impedance concepts can be used to find the characteristic equation of the circuit. Since having established the details in the parallel cases, we briefly summarize the results. For the second-order series RLC circuits, there are 3 possible root structures:

1. $\alpha^2 > \omega_n^2$. Overdamped response (Distinct real roots) $\Delta > 0$.

$$i(t) = A_1 e^{s_1 t} + A_2 e^{s_2 t}$$

2. $\alpha^2 < \omega_n^2$. Underdamped response (Complex roots) $\Delta < 0$.

$$i(t) = B_1 e^{-\alpha t} \cos \omega_d t + B_2 e^{-\alpha t} \sin \omega_d t$$

3. $\alpha^2 = \omega_n^2$. Critically damped response (Equal real roots) $\Delta = 0$

$$i(t) = D_1 t e^{-\alpha t} + D_2 e^{-\alpha t}$$

Equipped with the analytical techniques, let's look into some examples to learn more about these.
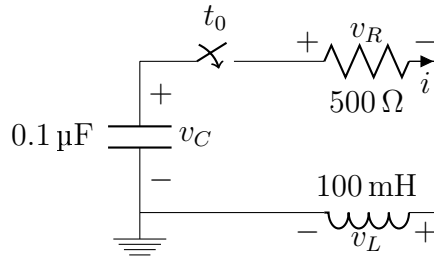
Figure 5.31: Circuit Diagram for Example 5.14

Example 5.14 *Given the circuit with $v_C(0) = 100V$, find (a) $i(t)$, (b) $v_C(t)$.*[14]
Solution: *KVL applied to the single loop yields*

$$0 = v_R + v_C + v_L = iR + \frac{1}{C}\int i(\tau)d\tau + L\frac{di}{dt}$$

Differentiating, we have

$$L\frac{d^2i}{dt^2} + R\frac{di}{dt} + \frac{1}{C}i = 0, \quad (Ls^2 + Rs + \frac{1}{C} = 0) \tag{5.14}$$

whose characteristic values can be readily obtained

$$s_1, s_2 = -\frac{R}{2L} \pm \sqrt{(\frac{R}{2L})^2 - \frac{1}{LC}} = -2800 \pm j9600$$

resulting in

$$i(t) = e^{-2800t}(B_1 \cos 9600t + B_2 \sin 9600t)A$$

Now to find B_1 and B_2, we utilize the initial condition found, listed below.

$$i(0^+) = B_1 = 0$$
$$\frac{di(0^+)}{dt} = \frac{v_C(0^+)}{L} = \frac{100}{100} \times 10^3 = 10^3 = 9600B_2$$

Solving these simultaneous equations leads to

$$B_2 = 0.1042$$

giving

$$i(t) = 0.1042e^{-2800t} \sin 9600t A, \quad t \geq 0$$

---

[13]Following the notions depicted in parallel RLC circuit, derive the second-order differential equation expressed in v_C.

[14]Solve this exercise and plot time response via PSpice.

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
v_C(t) &= \frac{1}{C}\int i(\tau)d\tau + V_0 = -iR - L\frac{di}{dt} \\
&= e^{-2800t}(100\cos 9600t + 29.17\sin 9600t)V, \quad t \geq 0 \qquad (5.15)
\end{aligned}
$$

To find an ODE in $v_C(t)$, substitute $i = C\frac{dv_C}{di}$ into (5.14) and follow the similar step you just learned.
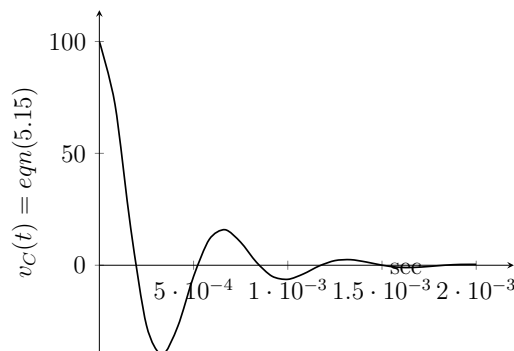
Figure 5.32: Time Response $v_C(t)$ for Example 5.14

□

Example 5.15 *Given the following circuit, find the initial condition and the current $i(t)$ after the switch is flipped to position 2.*[15]
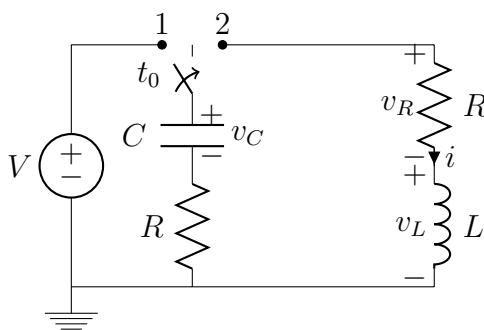
Figure 5.33: Circuit Diagram for Example 5.15

Solution:
  t-domain methods

---

[15]Find the time expression i_C when switch is at position 1 (Assume v_C initially rest) and plot time response via PSpice.

(a) $v_C(0^+) = v_C(0^-) = V$ *because C is open.*
   $i(0^+) = i(0^-) = 0$ *because* $i_L(0) = 0$.
   $v_L(0^+) = v_C(0^+) = V$ *because* $i(0^+) = 0$ *implies* $v_R(0^+) = 0$.

(b) *KVL around the right-hand loop yields*

$$v_R + v_C = v_R + v_L, \quad \text{voltage rises =voltage drops}$$

leading to

$$-iR + \underbrace{-(\frac{1}{C} \int i(\tau)d\tau)}_{v_C} = Ri + L\frac{di}{dt}, \quad 0 = (\frac{1}{Cs} + 2R + Ls)i \quad (5.16)$$

$$-(C\frac{dv_C}{dt})R - v_C = R(C\frac{dv_C}{dt}) + L\frac{d}{dt}(C\frac{dv_C}{dt}) \quad (5.17)$$

Differentiating equation (5.16),[16] we obtain

$$L\frac{d^2i}{dt^2} + 2R\frac{di}{dt} + \frac{1}{C}i = 0, \quad (Ls^2 + 2Rs + \frac{1}{C} = 0)$$

Thus the general form is

$$i(t) = A_1e^{s_1t} + A_2e^{s_2t}A, \quad t \geq 0$$

To find A_1 *and* A_2, *start with initial condition*

$$
\begin{aligned}
i(0^+) &= 0 = A_1 + A_2 \\
\frac{di(0^+)}{dt} &= \frac{v_L(0^+)}{L} = \frac{V}{L} = A_1s_1 + A_2s_2
\end{aligned}
$$

s-domain methods
Readers are encouraged to practice this second-order system.

□

5.4.3   Forced systems

To understand forced response, the key notions is better served by examples. To ease
the presentation, the examples are itemized into two categories.
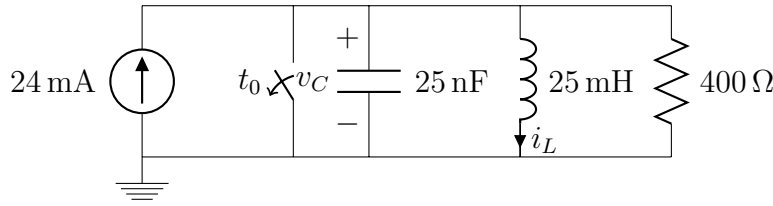
Figure 5.34: Circuit Diagram for Example 5.16

Parallel RLC circuits

Example 5.16 *Given the parallel RLC circuit with an external current source, find $i_L(t)$.*
Solution: *KCL applied to the top node yields*

$$24 \times 10^{-3} = C\frac{dv}{dt} + \frac{v}{R} + i_L \qquad (5.18)$$

Substituting $v = L\frac{di_L}{dt}$ into the equation (5.18) gives

$$24 \times 10^{-3} = LC\frac{d^2i_L}{dt^2} + \frac{L}{R}\frac{di_L}{dt} + i_L, \quad (LCs^2 + \frac{L}{R}s + 1 = 0)$$

which is an ODE expressed in terms of inductor current $i_L(t)$. Alternatively, one can substitute $i_L = \frac{1}{L}\int v(\tau)\,d\tau$ into the equation (5.18) and yields

$$24 \times 10^{-3} = C\frac{dv}{dt} + \frac{v}{R} + \frac{1}{L}\int_0^t v(\tau)\,d\tau + i_L(0)$$

Differentiating, we have

$$0 = C\frac{d^2v}{dt^2} + \frac{1}{R}\frac{dv}{dt} + \frac{1}{L}v, \quad (Cs^2 + \frac{1}{R}s + \frac{1}{L} = 0)$$

whose characteristic values are $s_1 = -20000$ and $s_2 = -80000$, giving

$$v(t) = A_1 e^{-20000t} + A_2 e^{-80000t} V, \quad t \geq 0$$

To find the coefficients, initial condition leads to

$$
\begin{aligned}
v(0^+) &= v_C(0) = 0 = A_1 + A_2 \\
\frac{dv(0^+)}{dt} &= \frac{i_C(0^+)}{C} = \frac{1}{C}(24 \times 10^{-3} - i_R(0^+) - i_L(0^+)) = 24 \times 10^{-3}/25 \times 10^{-9} \\
&= 960000 = -20000A_1 - 80000A_2
\end{aligned}
$$

---

[16]*An ODE in v_C is readily obtained.*

Solving these simultaneous equation, we have $A_1 = 16$ and $A_2 = -16$, resulting in

$$v(t) = 16e^{-20000t} - 16e^{-80000t}V, \quad t \geq 0$$

To find i_L, (5.18) implies $i_L = 24 \times 10^{-3} - C\frac{dv}{dt} + \frac{v}{R}$ or by formula

$$i_L = \frac{1}{L} \int_0^t v(\tau) \, d\tau + i_L(0) = -32e^{-20000t} + 8e^{-80000t} + 24 \quad mA, \quad t \geq 0 \qquad (5.19)$$
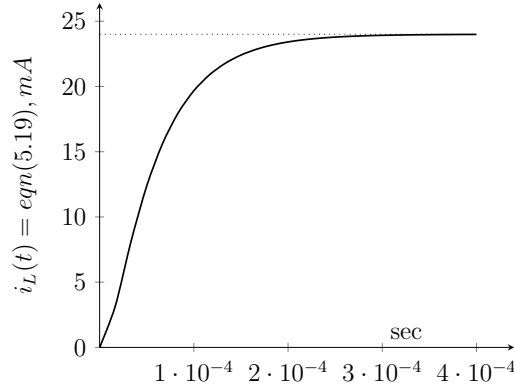
Figure 5.35: Time Response $i_L(t)$ for Example 5.16

□

Series RLC circuits

Example 5.17 *Given the following series RLC circuit with an external voltage, find its current.*
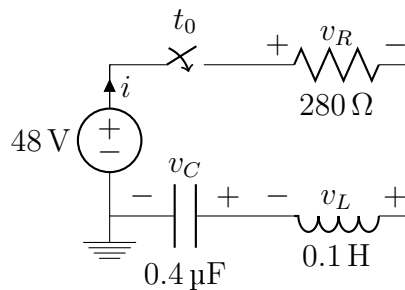
Figure 5.36: Circuit Diagram for Example 5.17

Solution: *KVL around the single loop yields*

$$48 = 280i + 0.1\frac{di}{dt} + \underbrace{\frac{1}{0.4\mu} \int i(\tau)d\tau}_{v_C} \qquad (5.20)$$

Differentiating yields

$$0 = 0.1\frac{d^2i}{dt^2} + 280\frac{di}{dt} + \frac{1}{0.4\mu}i, \quad (0.1s^2 + 280s + \frac{10^7}{4} = 0)$$

whose characteristic values are $-1400 \pm j4800$ and the natural response is

$$i(t) = e^{-1400t}(B_1 \cos 4800t + B_2 \sin 4800t), \quad t \geq 0$$

As before, to find coefficients via initial condition leads to

$$
\begin{aligned}
i(0^+) &= 0 = B_1 \\
\frac{i(0^+)}{dt} &= \frac{v_L(0^+)}{L} = \frac{1}{0.1}(48 - v_R(0^+) - v_C(0^+)) = 480 = -1400B_1 + 4800B_2V
\end{aligned}
$$

Solving these simultaneous equations, we have $B_1 = 0, B_2 = 0.1$, yielding

$$i(t) = 0.1e^{-1400t}\sin 4800t A, \quad t \geq 0$$

To find v_C

$$
\begin{aligned}
v_C &= \frac{1}{C}\int_0^t i(\tau)\ d\tau + v_C(0) \\
&= 48 - 48e^{-1400t}\cos 4800t - 14e^{-1400t}\sin 4800t V, \quad t \geq 0 \qquad (5.21)
\end{aligned}
$$

Notice that you could also obtain v_C from (5.20) which says that $v_C = 48 - 280i - 0.1\frac{di}{dt}$.
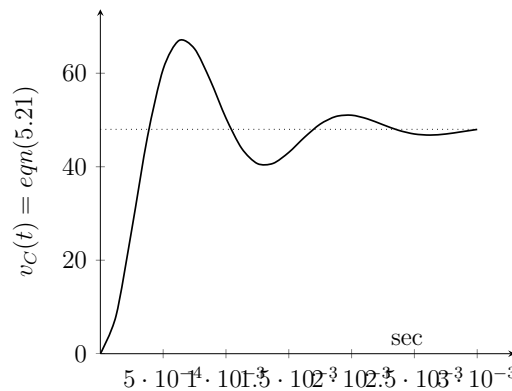
Figure 5.37: Time Response $v_C(t)$ for Example 5.17

□
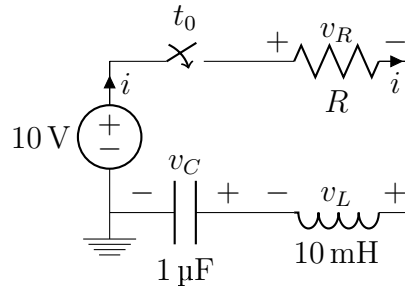
Figure 5.38: Circuit Diagram for Example 5.18

Example 5.18 *Given the series RLC circuit with an external voltage source, find the voltage across the capacitor. Assume $R = 300$ and an initially rest system.*
Solution: *KVL leads to*

$$10 = 10 \times 10^{-3}\frac{di}{dt} + Ri + v_C$$

Substituting $i = C\frac{dv_C}{dt} = 10^{-6}\frac{dv_C}{dt}$ into the equation above, we have

$$10 = 10^{-8}\frac{d^2v_C}{dt} + R \cdot 10^{-6}\frac{dv_C}{dt} + v_C$$

whose characteristic equation yields $s_1 = -2.618 \times 10^4, s_2 = -0.3820 \times 10^4$ Therefore,

$$v_C(t) = 10 + A_1e^{-2.618\times10^4 t} + A_2e^{-0.3820\times10^4 t}$$

Applying initial condition to find the coefficient results in

$$
\begin{aligned}
v_C(0^+) &= 0 = 10 + A_1 + A_2 \\
\frac{dv_C(0^+)}{dt} &= \frac{i(0^+)}{C} = 0 = -2.618 \times 10^4 A_1 - 0.3820 \times 10^4 A_2
\end{aligned}
$$

Solving these simultaneous equations, we have $A_1 = 1.708$ and $A_2 = -11.708$. Thus,

$$v_C(t) = 10 + 1.708e^{-2.618\times10^4 t} - 11.708e^{-0.3820\times10^4 t}, t \geq 0 \qquad (5.22)$$

□

Example 5.19 *Given the following series RLC circuit with an AC voltage source, find the current $i(t)$.*
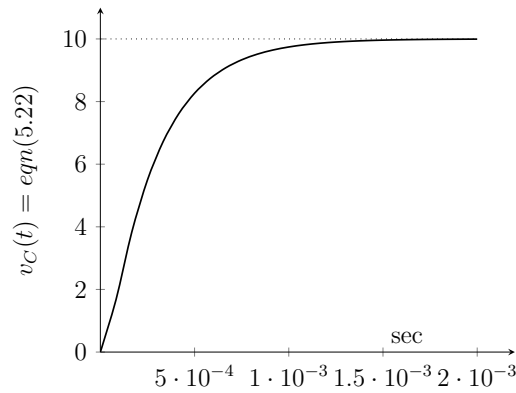
Figure 5.39: Time Response $v_C(t)$ for Example 5.18
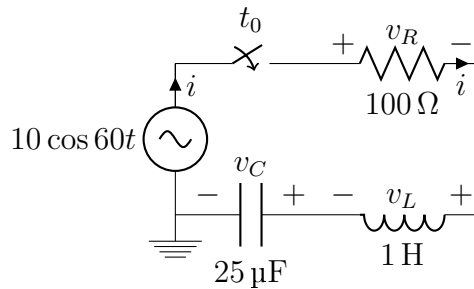
Figure 5.40: Circuit Diagram for Example 5.19

Solution: *KVL yields*

$$10\cos 60t = 100i + \frac{di}{dt} + \frac{10^6}{25}\int_0^t i(\tau)d\tau$$

Differentiating gives

$$-10 \times 60 \sin 60t = \frac{d^2i}{dt} + 100\frac{di}{dt} + \frac{10^6}{25}i, \quad (s^2 + 100s + 40000 = 0)$$

whose characteristic values are $-50 \pm j193.6$ *and the corresponding natural response is*

$$i(t) = e^{-50t}(B_1\cos 193.6t + B_2\sin 193.6t)mA, \quad t \geq 0$$

Now find the steady-state response via phase concept

$$\bar{I} = \frac{10\angle 0°}{614.85\angle -80.64°} = 0.0163\angle 80.64°, \quad i_f(\infty) = 16.3\cos(60t + 80.64°)mA$$

Thus the total response is

$$i(t) = 16.3\cos(60t + 80.64°) + e^{-50t}(B_1\cos 193.6t + B_2\sin 193.6t), \quad t \geq 0$$

Given the initial condition, the undetermined coefficients are determined from

$$
\begin{aligned}
i(0^+) &= 0 = 0.0026 + B_1 \\
\frac{di(0^+)}{dt} &= \frac{v_L(0^+)}{L} \\
&= \frac{1}{L}(v_s(0^+) - v_R(0^+) - v_C(0^+)) = 10 = -0.9650 - 50B_1 + 193.6B_2
\end{aligned}
$$

yielding $B_1 = -0.00265$ and $B_2 = 0.0043$. Therefore

$$
i(t) = 16.3\cos(60t + 80.64°) + e^{-50t}(-2.65\cos 193.6t + 4.3\sin 193.6t)mA, t \geq 0 \quad (5.23)
$$
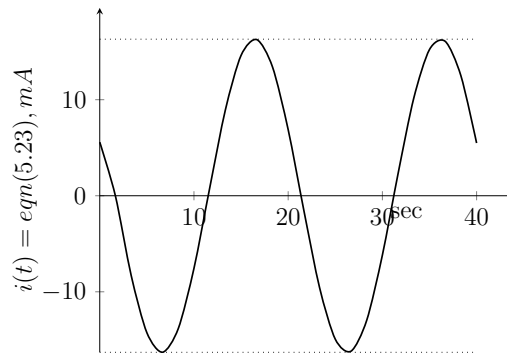
Figure 5.41: Time Response $i(t)$ for Example 5.19

□

Example 5.20 *Given the following series RLC circuit with an AC voltage source, find the current response when the switch is closed.*
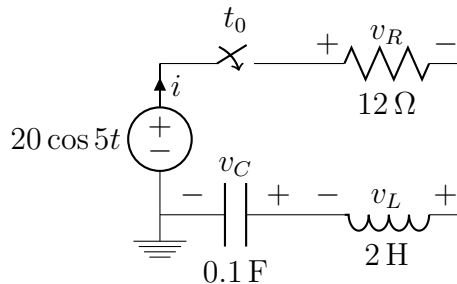
Figure 5.42: Circuit Diagram for Example 5.20

Solution: *Applying KVL yields*

$$20\cos 5t = 12i + 2\frac{di}{dt} + 10\int_0^t i(\tau)d\tau$$

Differentiating gives

$$-100\sin 5t = 2\frac{d^2 i}{dt} + 12\frac{di}{dt} + 10i, \quad (s^2 + 6s + 5 = 0)$$

whose characteristic equations gives $s_1 = -1$ and $s_2 = -5$, leading to the natural response

$$i_n(t) = A_1 e^{-t} + A_2 e^{-5t} A, \quad t \geq 0$$

Use phasor concept to find steady-state solution

$$i_f(\infty) = R_e(\frac{20\angle 0°}{12 + j8}) = 1.39\cos(5t - 33.69)A$$

Thus the total response becomes

$$i(t) = 1.39\cos(5t - 33.69°) + A_1 e^{-t} + A_2 e^{-5t} A, \quad t \geq 0$$

Use initial conation to find coefficients A_1 and A_2

$$i(0^+) = 0 = 1.16 + A_1 + A_2$$
$$\frac{di(0^+)}{dt} = \frac{v_L(0^+)}{L} = \frac{1}{L}(20 - 0 - 0) = 10 = 3.86 - A_1 - 5A_2$$

Solving these simultaneous equations, we have $A_1 = 0.086$ and $A_2 = -1.25$, yielding

$$i(t) = 1.39\cos(5t - 33.69°) + 0.086e^{-t} - 1.25e^{-5t} A, \quad t \geq 0 \qquad (5.24)$$

□

5.4.4 Solving procedures for the second-order systems

The following is a general procedure for solving a *RLC* circuit whose electrical signal is expressed in the form of

$$a\ddot{x} + b\dot{x} + cx = f, \quad \frac{dx(0)}{dt} \text{ and } x(0)$$

where x can be either $i(t)$ or $v(t)$. The solution has two components: natural response and particular response.

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= x_n(t, A_1, A_2) + x_p(t) \\ &= x_{transient} + x_{steady-state} \\ &= x_{natural} + x_{forced} \end{aligned}$$

1. Find the appropriate ordinary differential equation by applying KCL or KVL (t-domain methods).

2. Determine the forced response, $x_f(t)$.

   (a) For DC case, use $Z(0)$ and $V = IR$ (Ohm's low)

   (b) For AC case, use $\bar{Z}(j\omega)$ and $\bar{V} = \bar{I}\bar{Z}$ (Phasor technique)

   where the impedance is defined in Table 5.2.

3. Identify the natural response, $x_n(t, A_1, A_2)$

$$x_n(t, A_1, A_2) = A_1 e^{s_1 t} + A_2 e^{s_2 t}, \quad t \geq 0$$

4. $x(t) = x_n(t, A_1, A_2) + x_f(t)$ and evaluate the undetermined coefficients from initial conditions

$$\frac{dv_C(0^+)}{dt} = \frac{i_C(0^+)}{C} = \frac{1}{C}(i_s(0^+) - i_R(0^+) - i_L(0^+)), \quad v_C(0^+) = v_0$$

$$\frac{di_L(0)^+}{dt} = \frac{v_L(0^+)}{L} = \frac{1}{L}(v_s(0^+) - v_R(0^+) - v_C(0^+)), \quad i_L(0^+) = i_0$$

5. What if a complicated circuit was given? Use Thevenin or Norton technique to find the equivalent circuits looking into the terminals of interest.

   Note that the first step can be replaced by s-domain methods.

So this is it. You have gone through the first-order and second-order differential equations that characterize the dynamic behaviors of electrical circuits when switching is involved.
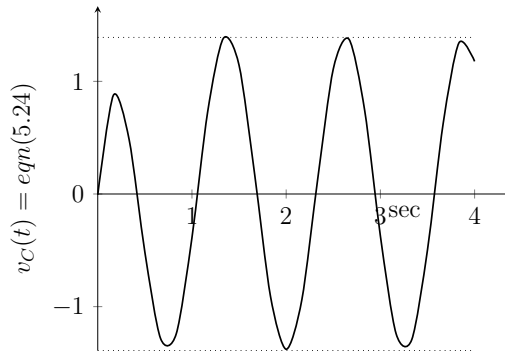
Figure 5.43: Time Response $i(t)$ for Example 5.20

Table 5.2: Table of Resistance

Elements	R	L	C	Type of Impedances
$Z(s)$	R	Ls	$1/Cs$	Exponential impedance
$Z(0)$	R	0	∞	DC impedance
$Z(j\omega)$	R	$j\omega L$	$1/j\omega C$	AC impedance

5.5   Recap

This chapter investigates time trajectory of a circuit subject to a switch operations.

• For steady-state response, we still need techniques from Chapter 4 which can be summarized as the generalized Ohm's law $\bar{V} = \bar{I}\bar{Z}$ involving complex number computations.

• A time frame is crucial for transient responses because we need to differentiate the notions of initial and steady-state at the time of switching.

• Initial conditions are found using the notions that energy can not change instantaneously.

• Have a sense of how the transient solutions behave for the 1st-order and 2nd-order systems.

• Transient solution dies out while steady-state solution lasts forever as long as it is forced.

• The order of a circuit system depends on the number of storage elements a circuit has.

• There are two methods to solve a transient problem (1) t-domain methods involve integrations and differentiations, containing KCL and KVL. (2) s-domain methods utilize the generalized Ohm's law and algebraic operations (which of course comprises KCL and KVL as well).

5.6   Problems

Problem 5.1 *In the Figure 5.44, the switch has been closed for a long time and is opened at $t = 0$. (a) Calculate the initial value of current i. (b) Calculate the initial energy stored in the inductor. (c) What is the time constant of the circuit for $t > 0$? (d) What is the numerical expression for $i(t)$ for $t \geq 0$? (e) What percentage of the initial energy stored has been dissipated in the 4Ω resistor 5 ms after the switch has been open?*
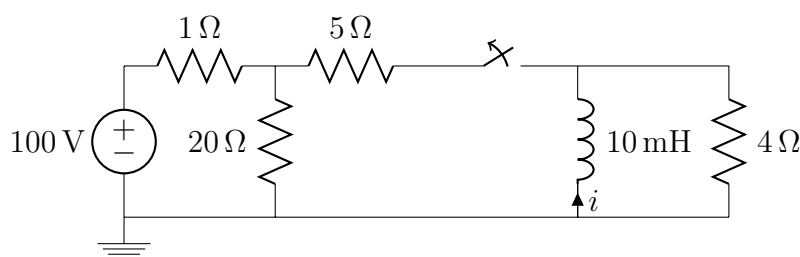
Figure 5.44: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.1

Answer: *(a) $-16A$. (b) $1.28J$. (c) 2.5×10^{-3}. (d) $i(t) = -16e^{-400t}A, t \geq 0$. (e) 98.17%.*

Problem 5.2 *Consider a series RL circuit with $R = 4\Omega$ and $L = 2H$, excited by a voltage source $v(t) = 10e^{-2t}\cos 5tV$. (a) Draw the circuit. (b) Find the impedance seen by the source. (c) Determine a time-domain expression for the series current.*
Answer: *(a) Trivial. A R in series with an L. (b) $\bar{Z} = 10\angle - 90°\Omega$. (c) $i(t) = e^{-2t}\cos(5t - 90°)A$.*

Problem 5.3 *The circuit shown in Figure 5.45 is operating in steady-state with the switch open prior to $t = 0$. Find the time expression for $i(t) < 0$ and for $t \geq 0$. Sketch $i(t)$ to scale versus time.*
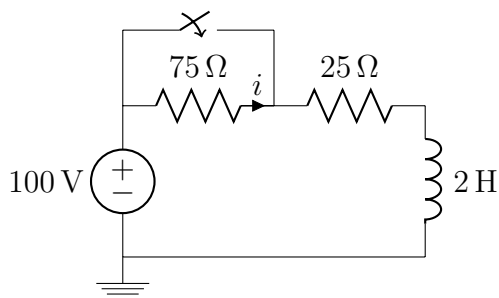
Figure 5.45: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.3

Answer: (a) $i(t) = 1A, \forall t < 0.$ (b) $i(t) = 4 - 3e^{-12.5t}A, \forall t \geq 0.$ (c) Curve exponentially grows from -1 to 4A.

Problem 5.4 Find the steady-state values of i_1, i_2 and i_3 for the circuit of Figure 5.46.
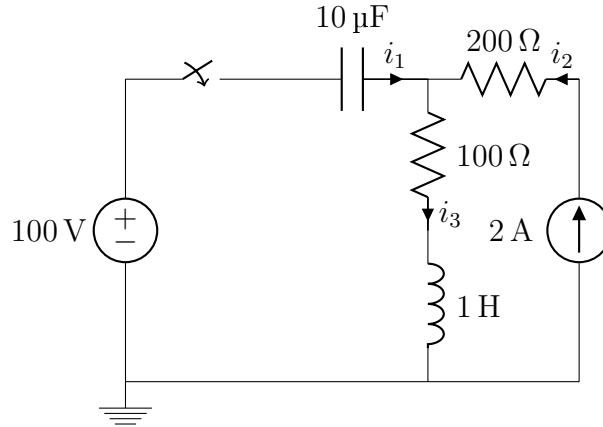
Figure 5.46: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.4

Answer: $i_1 = 0A, i_2 = i_3 = 2A.$

Problem 5.5 Given the circuit of Figure 5.47, in which the switch opens at $t = 0$, please find the time expression for $v(t)$, $i_R(t)$ and $i_L(t)$ for $t > 0$. Assume that $i_L(0) = 0$ before the switch opens.
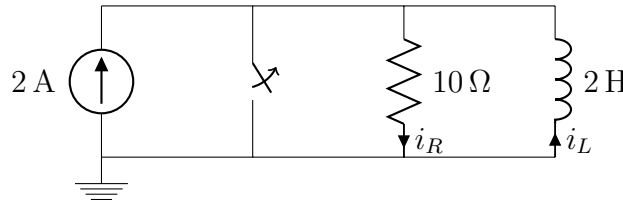
Figure 5.47: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.5

Answer: $v(t) = 20e^{-5t}V, t \geq 0$, $i_R(t) = 2e^{-5t}A, t \geq 0$ and $i_L(t) = 2 - 2e^{-5t}A, t \geq 0.$

Problem 5.6 Given the circuit of Figure 5.48, find (a) the natural response and the forced response. (b) Evaluate the initial conditions, $i(0), \frac{di(0)}{dt}$. (c) Solve for the complete current response $i(t)$. (d) At what frequency, does the response oscillate? (e) To what value should R be changed to so that the response becomes critically damped?

Answer: (a) $i_n(t) = e^{-10^7 t}(B_1 \cos 3 \times 10^7 t + B_2 \sin 3 \times 10^7 t)$, $i_f(t) = 0.$ (b) $i(0) = 0,$
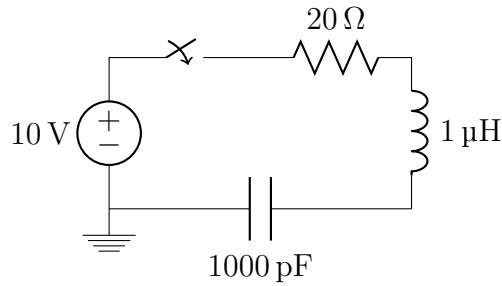
Figure 5.48: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.6

$\frac{di(0)}{dt} = -10^7$. *(c)* $i(t) = \frac{1}{3}e^{-10^7 t}\sin(3 \times 10^7 t)A, t \geq 0$. *(d)* 3×10^7 *rad/s*. *(e)* $R = 63.25\Omega$.

Problem 5.7 *The resistor in the circuit shown in Figure 5.49 is adjusted for critical damping and the initial energy stored in the circuit is $25mJ$, distributed equally in the inductor and capacitor. Find (a) I_0, (b) V_0, (c) R, (d) $v(t), t \geq 0$.*
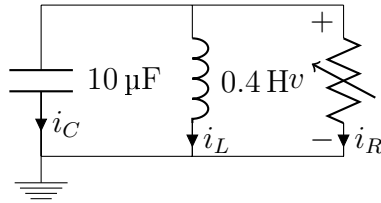
Figure 5.49: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.7

Answer: *(a) $i_0 = 0.25mA$. (b) $v_0 = 50V$. (c) $R = 100\Omega$. (d) $v(t) = 50e^{-500t} - 50000te^{-500t}V, t \geq 0$.*

Problem 5.8 *Given the circuit of Figure 5.50, find (a) the voltage across the capacitor when $t = \infty$. (b) Find the characteristic equation in s. (c) Solve for the complete current response $v_C(t)$.*
Answer: *(a) $v_C(\infty) = 10V$, $i_f(t) = 0$. (b) $10^{-2}s^2 + 400s + 10^8$. (c) $v_C(t) = 10 + e^{-2\times10^4 t}(-10\cos 97900t - 2.04\sin 97900t)V, t \geq 0$.*

Problem 5.9 *Given the circuit of Figure 5.51, find (a) the initial current flowing into inductor $t = 0^+$. (b) Find the final current flowing in inductor $i_L(\infty)$. (c) Solve for the complete current response $i_L(t)$. (c) $i_L(t) = 5.71 + 5.64e^{-\frac{t}{17.1\times10^{-3}}}A, t \geq 0$.*
Answer: *(a) $i_L(0^-) = i_L(0^+) = 66.5mA$. (b) $i_L(\infty) = 5.71A$.*

Problem 5.10 *In the circuit of Figure 5.52, switch S_1 has been in position a and switch S_2 has been closed for a long time before $t = 0$. The $2\mu F$ capacitor is initially*
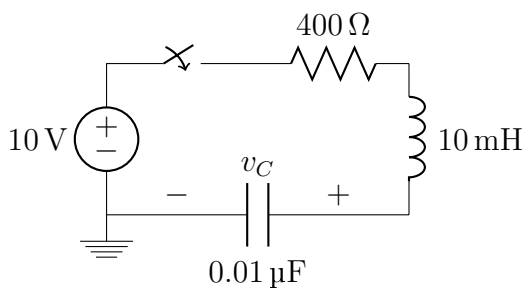
Figure 5.50: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.8
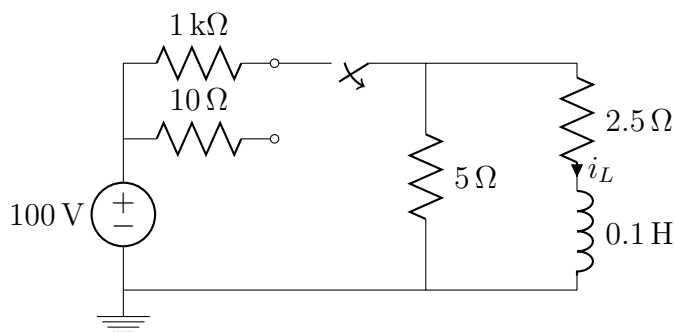
Figure 5.51: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.9

uncharged. (a) For $t = 0^-$, find i_L, v_L, i_{C2} and v_{C1}. (b) At $t = 0$, switch S_1 is flip to position 2 and switch S_2 is opened. For $t = 0^+$, find i_R, v_R, v_{C2} and v_L. (c) For $t = 0^+$, find $\frac{di_R}{dt}$, $\frac{dv_{C1}}{dt}$.
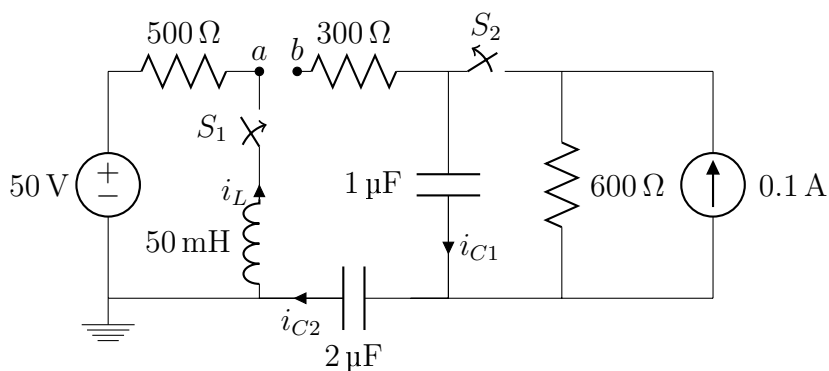
Figure 5.52: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.10

Answer: (a) $i_L = 0.1A$, $v_L = 0V$, $i_{C2} = 0A$, $v_{C1} = 60V$. (b) $i_R = 0.1A$, $v_R = -30V$, $v_{C2} = 0V$, $v_L = 30V$. (c) $\frac{di_R}{dt} = -600A/s$, $\frac{dv_{C1}}{dt} = -10^5 V/s$.

Problem 5.11 *In the circuit of Figure 5.53, the switch is closed for a long time and opened at $t = 0$. (a) Determine v_C and $\frac{dv_C}{dt}$ at $t = 0^+$. (b) Find the impedance $\bar{Z}_{ab}$. (c) Determine i_C.*
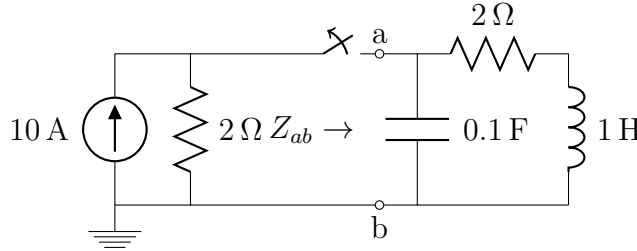
Figure 5.53: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.11

Answer: *(a) $v_C(0^+) = 10V$, $\frac{dv_C(0^+)}{dt} = -50V/s$. (b) $\bar{Z}_{ab}(s) = \frac{20+10s}{s^2+2s+10}$. (c) $i(t) = e^{-t}(B_1 \cos 3t + B_2 \sin 3t), t \geq 0A$.*

Problem 5.12 *Given the circuit of Figure 5.54, (a) find the initial condition $i(0)$ and $v(0)$ before and after the switch open, (b) find the ODE of $v(t)$, (c) find the complete solution of $v(t)$, (d) find the complete solution of $i_L(t)$. (e) Draw $i(t)$ and $v(t)$ respectively.*
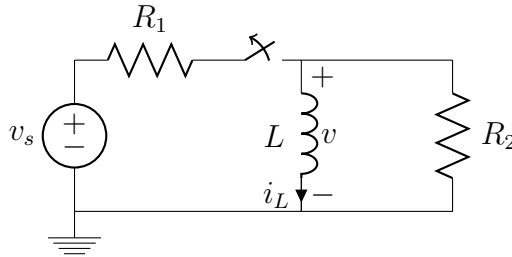
Figure 5.54: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.12

Answer: *(a) $v(0^-) = 0$, $v(0^+) = -\frac{V_s R_2}{R_1}$. (b) $\frac{dv}{dt} + \frac{R_2}{L}v = 0$, $v(t) = -\frac{V_s R_2}{R_1}e^{\frac{-R_2}{L}t}, t \geq 0$. (c) (d) $i_L(t) = \frac{V_s}{R_1}e^{\frac{-R_2}{L}t, t\geq 0}$. (e) Exponentially increases and decreases, respectively (setting t=0 and t=∞, respectively to see the trend.)*

Problem 5.13 *Given the circuit of Figure 5.55, (a) when the switch is closed, find the ODE of the inductor current using equivalent technique. (b) Determine the inductor current i_L and resistor current i_R for $t > 0$. (b) Plot the time response.*
Answer: *(a) $3\frac{di}{dt} + i = 10$. (b) $i_L(t) = 10 - 5e^{-0.333t}A$, $i_R(t) = 5 - 2.5e^{-t/3}A$.*
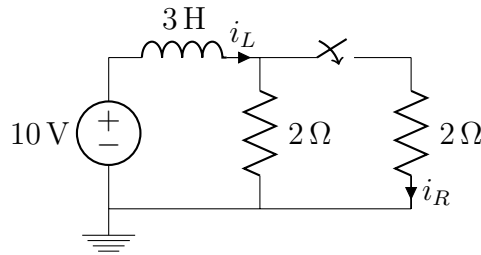
Figure 5.55: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.13

Transient response–the first-order systems

Problem 5.14 *Given the circuit shown in Figure 5.56, answer the following questions. (a) Find initial $i_L(0)$ before the switch opens. (b) Find expressions for $v(t)$,*
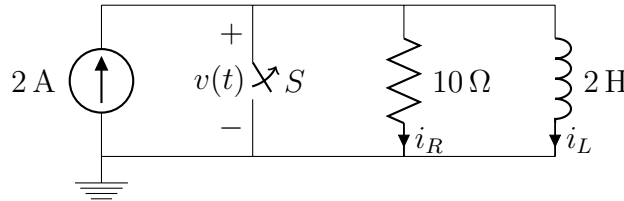
Figure 5.56: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.14

$i_R(t)$ and $i_L(t), \forall t > 0$.
Answer: *(a) $i_L(0) = 2A$, (b) $i_L(t) = 2$, $i_R(t) = 0$, $v_L(t) = 0$.*

Problem 5.15 *Solve for the current in the circuit shown in Figure 5.57 after the switch closes. Assuming $v_C(0) = 5V$, (a) find the natural response. (b) Find the forced response. (Hint: try a particular solution of the form Ae^{-t}.)*
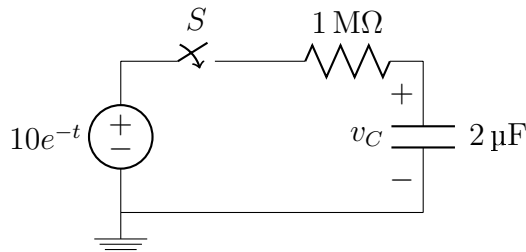
Figure 5.57: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.15

Answer: $i_n(t) = -15e^{-\frac{t}{2}}$, $i_p(t) = 20e^{-t}$.

Problem 5.16 *At $t = 0$, a charged $10\mu F$ capacitance is connected to a resistor as shown in Figure 5.58. At $t = 0$, the resistor voltage is 50V. At $t = 30sec$, the resistor*

voltage is 25V. (a) Find the transient response in terms of R and C for t > 0. (b) Find the resistance R.
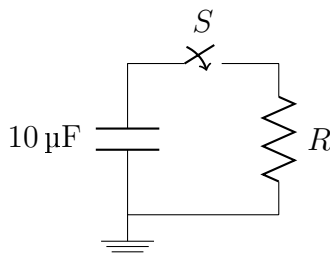
Figure 5.58: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.16

Answer: *(a)* $v_C = v_i e^{-\frac{t}{RC}}$*, (b)* $R = 4.328 M\Omega$*.*

Problem 5.17 *Given Figure 5.59, with* $R = 2\Omega$*,* $C = 5F$ *and* $I = 10A$*, (1) find the expression for the capacitor voltage* $v_C(t)$ *and* $i_C(t)$*. (2) Plot both functions.*
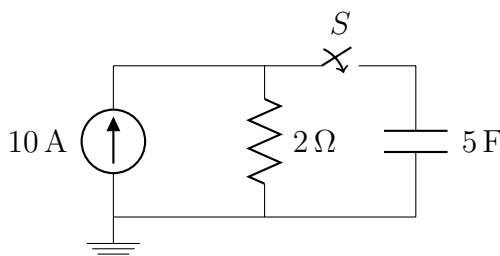
Figure 5.59: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.17

Answer: *Convert the Norton source into Thevenin source. Then the ODE is readily obtained as* $10\dot{v}_C + v_C = 20$*, whose solution is then* $v_C = 10(1 - e^{-10t})V$*.*

Problem 5.18 *For the circuit of Figure 5.60, answer the following questions. (a) What is the time constant (after the switch opens)? (b) What is the maximum magnitude of* $v(t)$*? (c) How does the maximum magnitude of* $v(t)$ *compare to the source voltage? (d) Find the time t at which* $v(t)$ *is one-half of its value immediately after the switch opens.*
Answer: *(a)* $\tau = 1ms$*. (b)* $v_{max} = 150V$*. (c) 10 times the value of* v_s*. (d) 0.6931 ms.*

Problem 5.19 *Given Figure 5.61, (1) find the complete solution for the inductor* $i_L(t)$*. (2) Find voltage across* 6Ω *resistor.*
Answer: *Find the initial condition* $i_L(0) = 1A$*, going upward, before the switch is closed. When switch is closed, the Thevenin equivalent seen by L is* $R_T = 6.81\Omega$*,* $V_T = 19.09V$*. Then a single loop with L is obtained.*
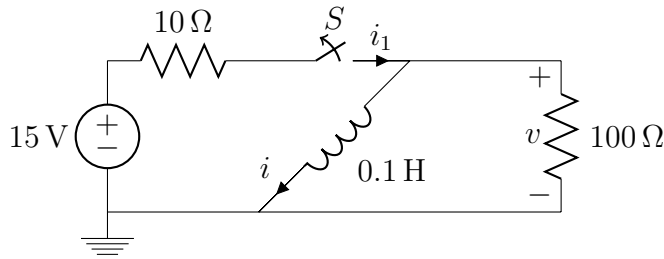
Figure 5.60: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.18
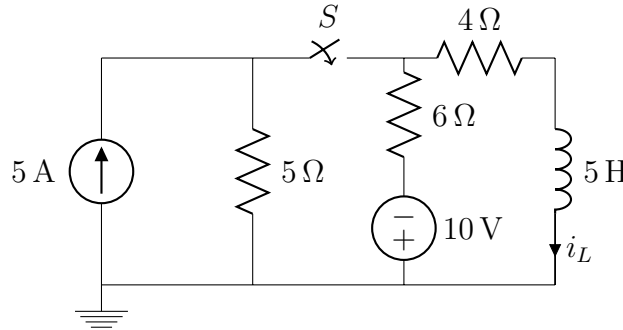
Figure 5.61: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.19

Problem 5.20 *Given the circuit in Figure 5.62 and switch S is closed for a long time and then open at $t = 0$. (a) Determine the initial values of i_1 and i_2 at $t = 0^+$. (b) Find the current expression for $i_2(t)$.*
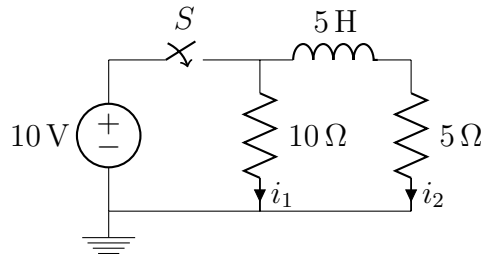
Figure 5.62: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.20

Answer: $i_2(0^+) = i_2(0^-) = 2A$, $i_1(0^+) = -i_1(0^+) = -2A$, $i_2(t) = 2e^{-3t}A$.

Problem 5.21 *The circuit shown in Figure 5.63 is operating in steady state with the switch open prior to $t = 0$. Find expressions for $i(t)$ for $t < 0$ and for $t \geq 0$.*
Answer: *The steady state value is $1A$, $t < 0$, $i(t) = 4 - 3e^{-12.5t}A, t \geq 0$.*

Problem 5.22 *Given the circuit in Figure 5.64, (a) use source transformation converting current source into voltage source. (b) Use KVL to find the ODE for $v_C(t)$.*
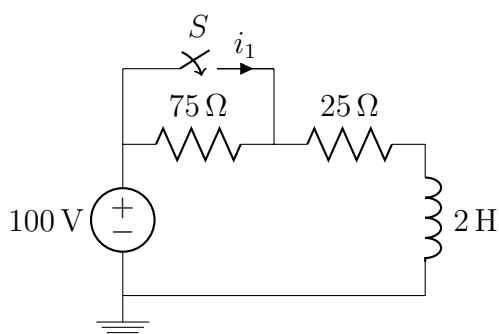
Figure 5.63: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.21

(c) Find the steady-state response. (d) Find the natural response and (e) the complete solution.
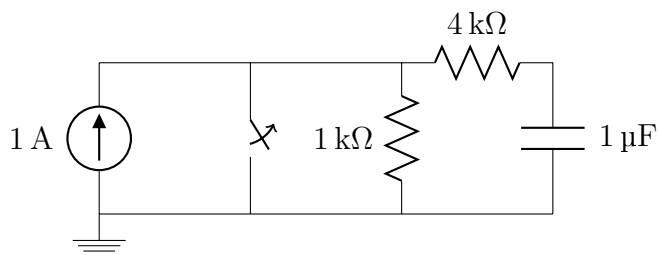
Figure 5.64: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.22

Answer: *(a) skip. (b) $s = -200$. (c) $i_C(\infty) = 0$. (d) $i_H(t) = Ae^{-200t}$. (e) $i_C(t) = 0.2e^{-200t} A$.*

Problem 5.23 *Given the circuit in Figure 5.65, (a) what is the steady-state inductor current due to 24V and 8A, respectively, right before the switch is open? (b) Use KVL to find the ODE for $i_L(t)$ after the switch is open. (c) Find the natural response . (d) Find the complete response. (e) Draw the complete response $i_L(t)$ where t is the x axis.*
Answer: *(a) $i_L(0) = 4A$. (b) $24 = 2i + 0.2\frac{di}{dt}$. (c) $i_n(t) = Ae^{-10t}$. (d) $i(t) = 12 - 8e^{-10t} A$.*

Problem 5.24 *Given Figure 5.66 and assume that the switch has been closed for a very long time prior to $t = 0$. (a) Derive the ODE for $i(t)$ and $v(t)$. (b) Find expressions for $i(t)$ and $v(t)$.*
Answer: *(a) $v(t) = -10e^{-200t}V, t \geq 0$. (b) $i(t) = 0.05(1 + e^{-200t})A, t > 0$.*

Problem 5.25 *Find the expression for $i(t)$ for $t < 0$ and for $t \geq 0$. Sketch $i(t)$ to scale versus time for Figure 5.67.*
Answer: *$i(t) = 4 - 3e^{-12.5t}A, t \geq 0$, $i(t) = 1A, t < 0$.*
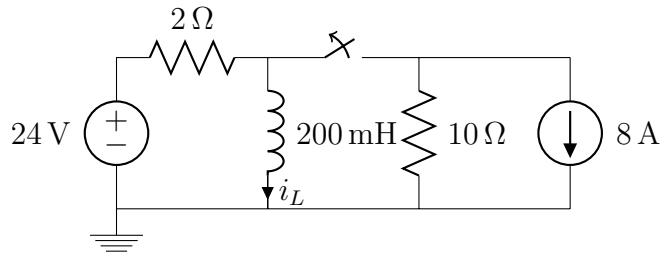
Figure 5.65: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.23
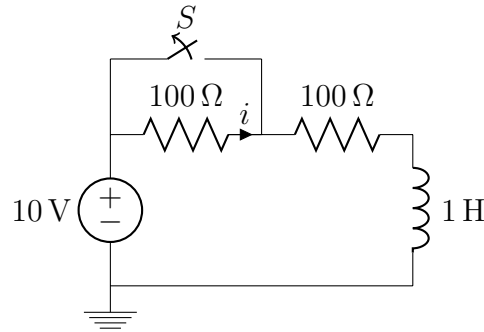
Figure 5.66: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.24
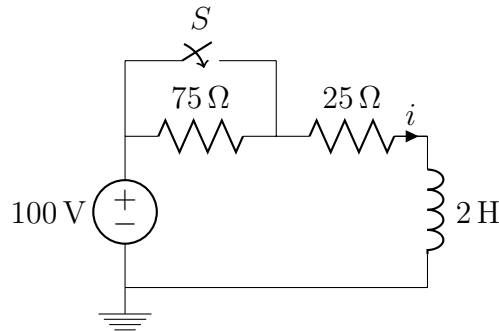
Figure 5.67: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.25

Problem 5.26 *Find the expression for $i(t)$ and find the complete solution for the circuit of Figure 5.68. (Assume $i_p = Ae^{-t}$.)*
Answer: $i(t) = -e^{-t} + e^{-0.5t} A, t \geq 0$.

Problem 5.27 *Given Figure 5.69, (a) determine the initial state of $v_C(0)$. (b) Find the time constant of the system. (c) Find the steady-state value $v_C(infinity)$. (d) Find complete solution of $v_C(t)$ by node voltage method.*
Answer: *(a) $v_C(0^-) = 0 = v_C(0^+)$. (b) $s = -100$, $\tau = 0.01sec$. (c) $v_C = 10V$. (d) $v_C(t) = 10(1 - e^{-100t})V$.*
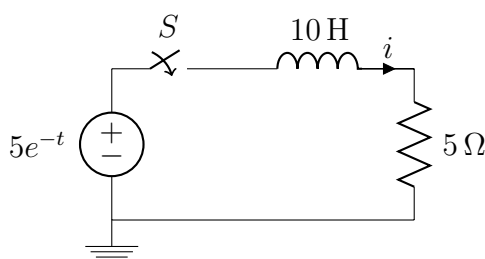
Figure 5.68: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.26
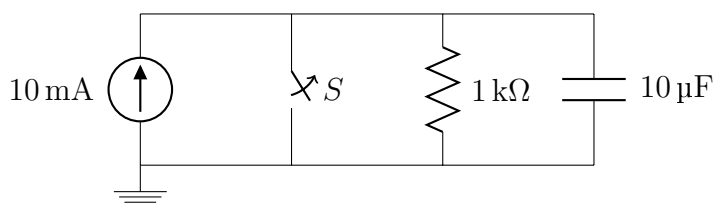
Figure 5.69: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.27

Transient response–the second-order systems

Problem 5.28 *In Figure 5.70, initial conditions being zero is assumed. (a) Write*
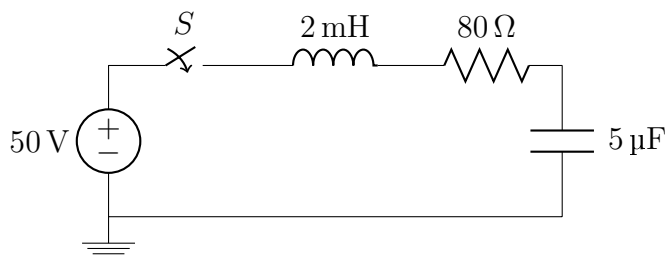
Figure 5.70: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.28

the differential equation for $v_C(t)$. (b) Solve for $v_C(t)$ if $R = 80\Omega$.
Answer: *(a)* $\frac{d^2 v_C(t)}{dt^2} + 4 \times 10^4 \frac{dv_C(t)}{dt} + 10^8 v_C(t) = 50 \times 10^8$, $s_1 = -0.2679 \times 10^4$, $s_2 = -3.732 \times 10^4$. *(b)* $v_C(t) = 50 - 53.87 e^{s_1 t} + 3.867 e^{s_2 t}$.

Problem 5.29 *Determine $i_L(t)$ and $v_C(t)$ for $t > 0$ in the circuit given in Figure 5.71.*
Answer: *(1) Find the initial condition before the switch is closed. $i_L(0) = 0$, $v_C(0) = 4$. (2) The Thevenin equivalent looking into the left from terminals ab is $V_T = 8V$ and $R_T = 4/3\Omega$. (3) A single loop RLC circuit is then obtained.*

$$8 = \frac{4}{3}i + \frac{di}{dt} + 3 \int i \, dt$$
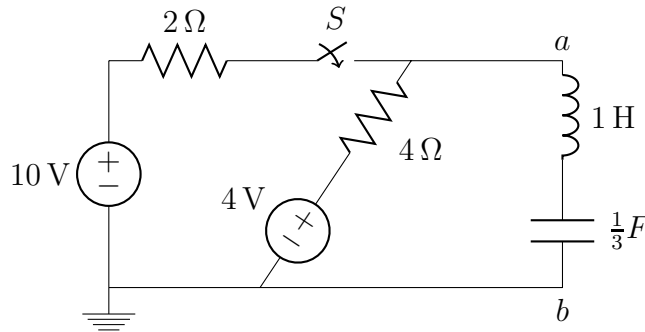
Figure 5.71: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.29

Differentiating once, we have

$$\frac{d^2i}{dt^2} + \frac{4}{3}\frac{di}{dt} + 3i = 0$$

Substituting $i = \frac{1}{3}\frac{dv_C}{dt}$ into the first equation yields

$$8 = \frac{4}{9}\frac{dv_C}{dt} + \frac{1}{3}\frac{d^2v_C}{dt^2} + v_C$$

With that, solution is readily obtained.

Problem 5.30 *A DC source is connected to a series RLC circuit by a switch that closes at t=0 as shown in Figure 5.72. The initial conditions are $i(0) = 0$ and $v_C(0) = 0$. Write the differential equation for $v_C(t)$. Solve for $v_C(t)$ if $R = 20\Omega$.*
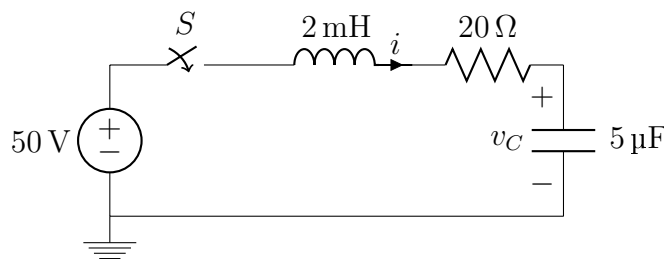
Figure 5.72: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.30

Answer: $v_C(t) = 50 - 50e^{-\alpha t}\cos\omega_n t - 28.86e^{-\alpha t}\sin\omega_n t.$

Problem 5.31 *Initially, for the circuit shown in Figure 5.73, both the current in the inductor and the voltage across the capacitor are zero. Find the steady-state values of i_1, i_2, i_3, i_4 and v_C after the switch has been closed for a long time.*
Answer: $i_1 = 200mA, i_2 = i_4 = 100mA, i_3 = 0A, v_C = 100V.$
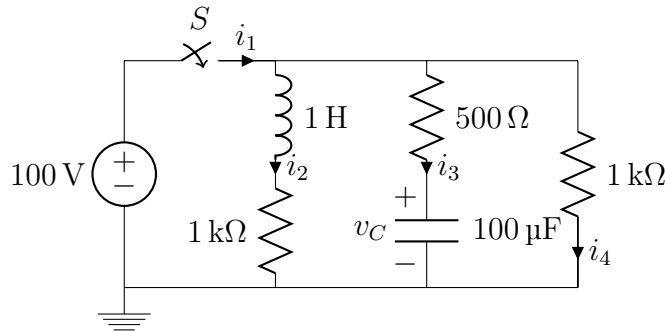
Figure 5.73: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.31

Problem 5.32 *(a) When S_1 and S_2 in Figure 5.74 are closed, derive the ODE for input current $i(t)$ and solve for $i(t)$. (b) Find the impedance in terms of s, seen from the terminal a and b of S_1. Explain how this impedance is related to the ODE you found in (a). (c) When S_1 is closed and S_2 is open, derive the ODE for the capacitor voltage $v(t)$ and solve for $v(t)$. (d) Find the impedance for $\bar{Z}(s)$ seen form the terminal c and d of S_2. Explain any connection with $\bar{Z}(s)$ of (c).*
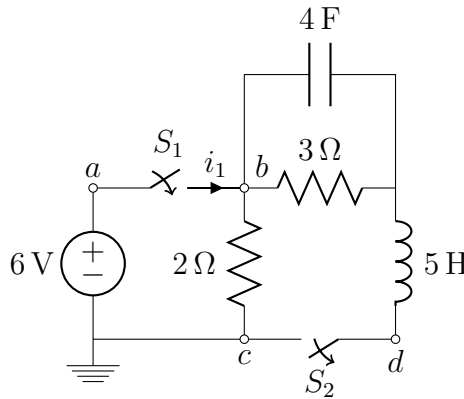
Figure 5.74: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.32

Answer: *(a) $60\frac{d^2 i_1}{dt^2} + 5\frac{di_1}{dt} + 3i_1 = 15$, $i(t) = 5 + e^{-0.042t}(-2\cos 0.22t + 5.073\sin 0.22t)$, $t \geq 0$. (b) $\frac{120s^2 + 10s + 6}{60s^2 + 29s + 5}$. (c) $\frac{60s^2 + 5s + 3}{12s + 1}$.*

Problem 5.33 *Given Figure 5.75, assume the energy storage elements are initially at rest. (a) Find the steady state solution for $v(t)$. (b) Derive the ODE for $v(t)$.(c) Find the general solution $v(t)$.*
Answer: *(a) $v(\infty) = 0V$. (b) $v(t) = A_1 e^{-0.268 \times 10^5 t} + A_2 e^{-3.73 \times 10^5 t} V, t \geq 0$. (c) $v(t) = 2.89(e^{-0.268 \times 10^5 t} - e^{-3.73 \times 10^5 t})V, t \geq 0$.*
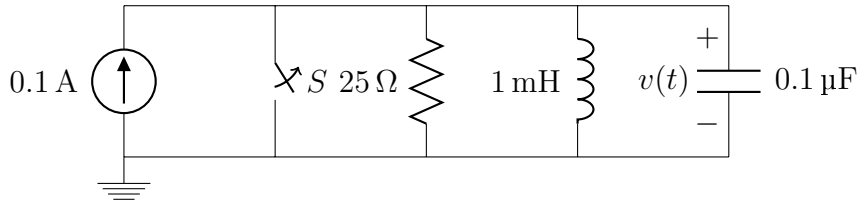
Figure 5.75: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.33

Problem 5.34 *Given a more involved Figure 5.76, (a) find the equivalent Thevenin circuit seen by the capacitor. What are v_t and R_t respectively? (b) Solve for $v(t), t > 0$ in terms of v_t, v_2. (This is a symbolic calculation, not numerical computation.)*
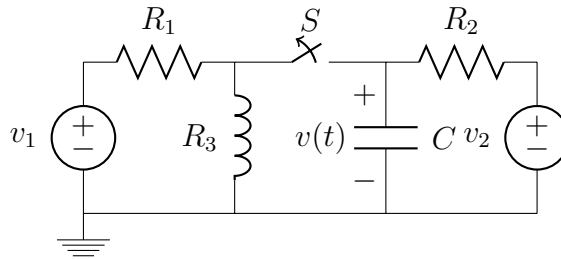
Figure 5.76: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.34

Answer: *(a) $v_t = R_t(\frac{v_1}{R_1} + \frac{v_2}{R_2})$. (b) $C\frac{dv}{dt} + \frac{v}{R_2} = \frac{v_2}{R_2}$ whose solution is $v(t) = v_2 + v_t e^{-\frac{t}{R_2 C}}$.*

Problem 5.35 *Solve for the steady-state values of the labeled currents for Figure 5.77.*
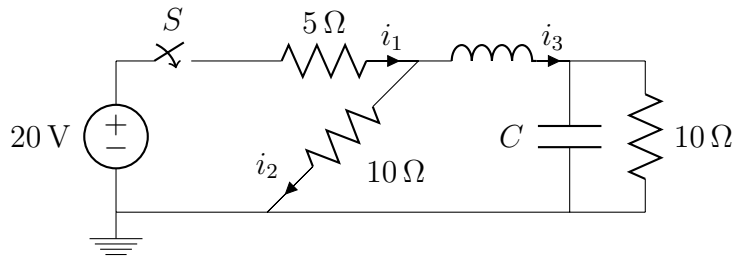
Figure 5.77: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.35

Answer: *$i_1 = 2A$, $i_2 = 1A$, $i_3 = 1A$.*

Problem 5.36 *Find the steady-state values of i_1, i_2 and i_3 for the circuit shown in Figure 5.78.*
Answer: *$LC\frac{d^2 i_3}{dt} + CR\frac{di_3}{dt} + i_3 = 2$. $i_1(\infty) = 0$, $i_2(\infty) = 2A$, $i_3(\infty) = 2A$.*
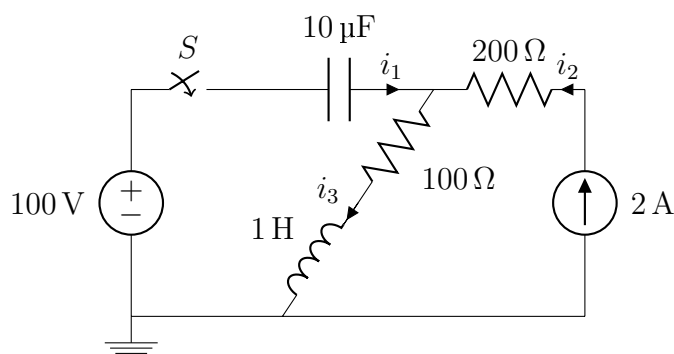
Figure 5.78: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.36

Problem 5.37 *Assume the circuit of Figure 5.79 is initially at rest, closed at $t = 0$ second and then open at $t = 1$ second. (a) Find the initial value for $V_C(0)$, $\frac{dV_C(0)}{dt}$ and $i_L(0)$ at the moment when the switch is open. (b) Find the ODE in terms of v_C (voltage of capacitor) when the switch is open. (c) Find the characteristic equation for ODE found in (b). (d) Write the complete solution for v_C without solving for coefficients A_1 and A_2.*
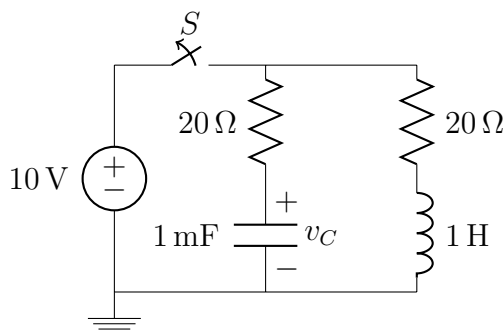
Figure 5.79: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.37

Answer: *(a)* $v_C(0^+) = 10V, i_L(0^+) = 0.5A$. *(b)* $10^{-3}\frac{d^2 v_C}{dt^2} + 40 \times 10^{-3}\frac{dv_C}{dt} + v_C = 0$. *(c)* $s_1 = -20 + j24.5$, $s_2 = -20 - j24.5$. *(d)* $v_C(t) = e^{-20t}(B_1 \cos 24.5t + B_2 \sin 24.5t)$.

Problem 5.38 *Given the circuit in Figure 5.80, answer the following questions. (a) Find the inductor current before the switch is closed. (b) After the switch is closed, find the Thevenin seen by terminal ab and draw the equivalent circuit diagram with the inductor attached. (c) Find the inductor current $i_L(t)$ after the switch is closed.*
Answer: *(a)* $i_L(0^-) = 4A$. *(b)* $V_{oc} = 16V$, $I_{sc} = 2A$, $R_t = 8\Omega$. *(c)* $16 = 8i + 5\frac{di}{dt}$ $5s + 8 = 0$, $s = -\frac{-8}{5}$, $i_L(t) = Ae^{\frac{-8t}{5}} + 2$, $A = 2$.

Problem 5.39 *Given Figure 5.81, (a) find $i_L(0^-)$, $v_C(0^-)$. (b) Determine the inductor current $v_C(t)$ for $t > 0$. (c) Find capacitor current $i_L(t)$ for $t > 0$.*
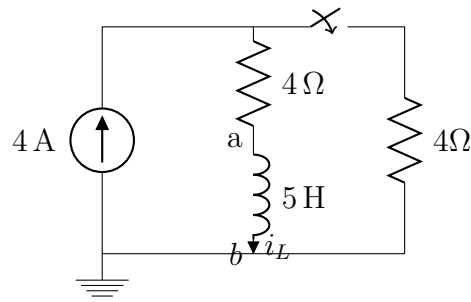
Figure 5.80: Circuit Diagram for Problem 5.38
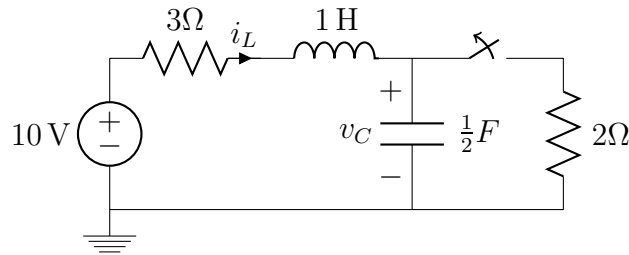
Figure 5.81: Problem 5.39

Answer: (a) $i_L(0^-) = 2A$, $v_C(0^-) = 4V$, (b) $i_L(t) = 4e^{-t} - 2e^{-2t}, t \geq 0$, (c) $v_C(t) = 10 - 8e^{-t} + 2e^{-2t}, t \geq 0$.

Chapter 6

Frequency Responses

All the input signals we have learned so far is limited to an AC circuit having a fixed frequency that **can not be changed during analysis**. In fact, all the currents and voltages in a linear circuit are function of angular frequency. It is precisely this dependency (on frequencies) that allows special networks such as filters to be designed for particular applications. **In this chapter, the frequency of an input signal is allowed to vary during analysis.** The changing impedance of jwL and $\frac{1}{jwC}$ to a sinusoidal signal is the key to frequency selective networks, which can block a certain range of frequency and allow some frequencies to pass. Depending on the parameters of L and C, the selective circuits are devised into 3 major categories in our text (but more can be found in many text books).

6.1 Low-Pass Filters

Given the following circuit diagram, the underlying problem is to investigate the magnitude of the output signal $\bar{V}_{out}$ when the frequency of the input signal is varying. In this subsection, we will investigate a circuit that allows low frequencies to pass (low-pass) while block high frequencies as much as possible. In other words, only low frequencies get passed to the output. To this end, start with KVL around the single loop and find the phasor current displayed below.

$$\bar{I} = \frac{\bar{V}_{in}}{R + j\omega L} = \frac{V_{in}\angle 0°}{R + j\omega L} = \frac{V_{in}}{R\sqrt{1 + (\omega L/R)^2}} \angle \tan^{-1} \frac{-\omega L}{R}$$

t-**domain methods**
Use of circuit law: Apply Ohm's law to the resistor, to obtain the output voltage

$$\bar{V}_{out} = \bar{I}R = \frac{V_{in}}{\sqrt{1 + (\omega L/R)^2}} \angle - \tan^{-1} \frac{\omega L}{R} \tag{6.1}$$
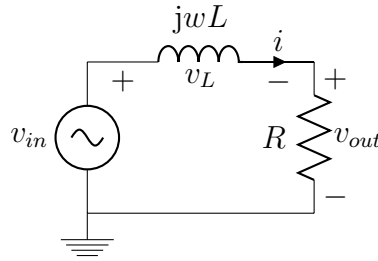
Figure 6.1: First-Order Low-Pass RL Filter

whose $|output/input|$ ratio (known as transfer function) can be readily found as

$$|H(\omega)| = \frac{V_{out}}{V_{in}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + (\omega L/R)^2}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + (\frac{\omega}{\omega_{co}})^2}} \tag{6.2}$$

where $\omega_{co} = \frac{R}{L}$ $(or, f_{co} = \frac{R}{2\pi L})$ is termed **corner, cut-off, break or half power frequency.** This is because at the corner frequency, the power transferred to the output is half of its input power. To see this, setting $w = w_{co} = \frac{R}{L}$ in equation (6.1) leads to

$$\bar{V}_{out} = \frac{\bar{V}_{in}}{\sqrt{2}}$$

yielding

$$P_{out} = \frac{V_{out}^2}{R} = \frac{V_{in}^2}{2R} = \frac{P_{in}}{2}$$

s-domain methods

The transfer function (6.2) can be obtained easily using impedance concept. To this end, recalling voltage divider yields

$$\bar{V}_{out} = \frac{R\bar{V}_{in}}{R + Ls}$$

and the transfer function evaluated at a particular frequency is

$$H(s)|_{s=jw} = \frac{\bar{V}_{out}}{\bar{V}_{in}} = \frac{R}{R + jwL} = \frac{1}{1 + \frac{jwL}{R}}$$

whose magnitude is that of (6.2).[1] This demonstrates that to find the transfer function of a circuit network you can use either circuit laws or impedance concept.

It is also interesting, from equation (6.1), to understand how the output voltage changes with input frequency. Recalling (6.1) and varying the frequency w from 0 to

---

[1]Verify this result, noting that $H(jw)$ is a complex number.
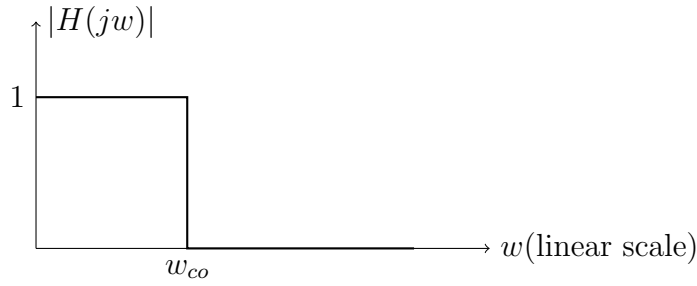
Figure 6.2: Ideal Low-Pass Filter: Magnitude vs. Linear w

∞, we see that

$$
\begin{aligned}
V_{out} &= V_{in}, \quad \angle V_{out} = 0° \quad \text{when } w \to 0 \\
V_{out} &= \frac{V_{in}}{\sqrt{2}}, \quad \angle V_{out} = -45° \quad \text{when } w \to w_{co} \\
V_{out} &= 0, \quad \angle V_{out} = -90° \quad \text{when } w \to \infty
\end{aligned}
$$

meaning, this is a low frequency passed circuit. A quick way to find whether a circuit is a low-pass or high-pass (high frequency passes) filter can be inferred from the impedance property of an inductors which behaves like a short circuit when $w \to 0$, resulting in $V_{out} = V_{in}$ and behaves like an open circuit when $w \to \infty$, resulting in $V_{out} = 0$.

Another low-pass filter circuit is a little bit complex than the first one, leading to a second order low-pass filer.
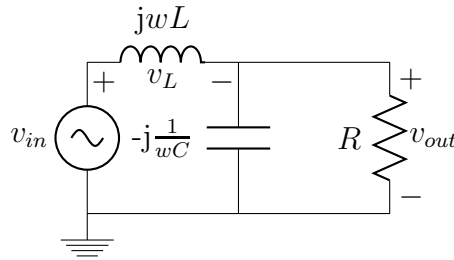
Figure 6.3: Second-Order Low-Pass RLC Filter

t-domain methods

Use of the circuit law to tackle the problem. Again start with KVL around the left-hand loop and the right-hand loop respectively.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\bar{V}_{in} &= \bar{I}_1(j\omega L) + (\bar{I}_1 - \bar{I}_2)\frac{1}{j\omega C} = \bar{I}_1(j\omega L + \frac{1}{j\omega C}) = \bar{I}_2(\frac{1}{j\omega C}) \\
0 &= (\bar{I}_2 - \bar{I}_1)\frac{1}{j\omega C} + \bar{I}_2 \cdot R = -\bar{I}_1(\frac{1}{j\omega C}) + \bar{I}_2(R + \frac{1}{j\omega C})
\end{aligned}
$$

Solving, we have

$$\bar{I}_2 = \frac{\bar{V}_{in}}{R(1 - \omega^2 LC) + j\omega L} = \frac{V_{in}}{R\sqrt{(1 - \omega^2 LC)^2 + (\omega L/R)^2}} \angle \tan^{-1} \frac{-\omega L}{R(1 - \omega^2 LC)}$$

Then, apply the Ohm's law to the output resistor, to obtain output voltage

$$\bar{V}_{out} = \bar{I}_2 R = \frac{V_{in}}{\sqrt{(1 - \omega^2 LC)^2 + (\omega L/R)^2}} \angle \tan^{-1} \frac{-\omega L}{R(1 - \omega^2 LC)}$$

From which, the output-input ratio is obtained as[2]

$$|H(\omega)| = \frac{V_{out}}{V_{in}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{(1 - \omega^2 LC)^2 + (\omega L/R)^2}} \tag{6.3}$$

s-domain methods

Despite the complexity in obtaining the transfer function for the second order low-pass filter, there is another way to find the transfer function via impedance concept and is given below.

$$\begin{aligned}
H(s) &= \frac{V_{out}(s)}{V_{in}(s)} = \frac{(1/sC)//R}{sL + (1/sC)//R} \\
&= \frac{\frac{R}{RCs+1}}{Ls + \frac{R}{RCs+1}} = \frac{R}{RLCs^2 + Ls + R} = \frac{1}{LCs^2 + Ls/R + 1}
\end{aligned}$$

Evaluating $H(s)$ at $s = jw$ leads to

$$H(jw) = \frac{1}{1 - w^2 LC + j\frac{wL}{R}}$$

whose magnitude is exactly that of (6.3).

6.2   High-Pass Filters

Understanding the notion of low-pass filter, we will investigate circuits that allow high frequencies to pass (high-pass) but block low frequencies as much as possible. A first-order high-pass filter is introduced first and then a second-order filter second. Following the analysis for the low-pass filters, we find the phasor current displayed below

---

[2]Find the transfer function in s. Ans: $H(s) = \frac{1}{LCs^2 + \frac{L}{R}s + 1}$.
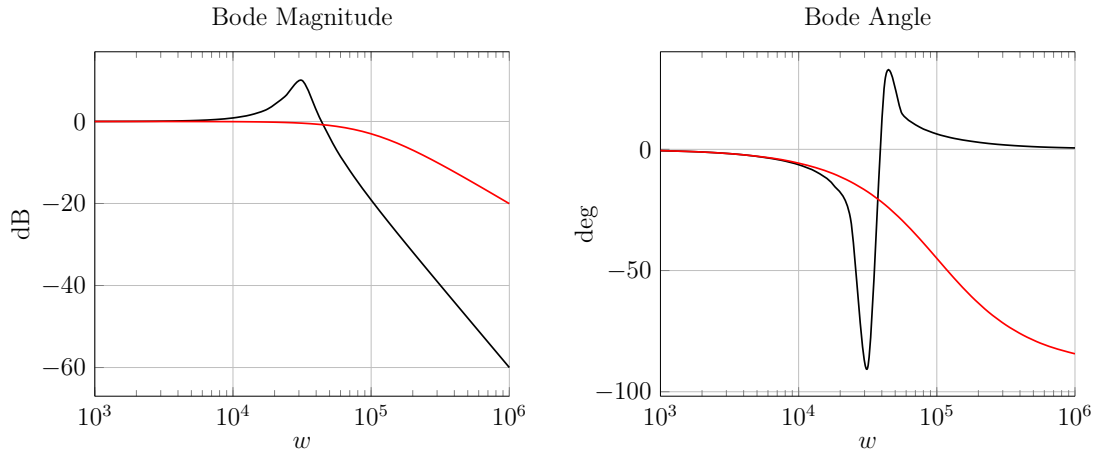
Figure 6.4: Bode Plots for the 1st and 2nd-order Low-Pass Filters
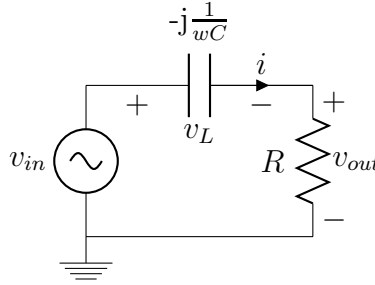
Figure 6.5: First-Order High-Pass RC Filter

$$\bar{I} = \frac{\bar{V}_{in}}{R - j\frac{1}{\omega C}} = \frac{V_{in}\angle 0^\circ}{R(1 - j\frac{1}{\omega RC})} = \frac{V_{in}}{R\sqrt{1 + (\frac{1}{\omega RC})^2}} \angle \tan^{-1}\frac{1}{\omega RC}$$

Applying Ohm's law to the output resistor, to find the output voltage

$$\bar{V}_{out} = \bar{I} \cdot R = \frac{V_{in}}{\sqrt{1 + (1/\omega RC)^2}} \angle \tan^{-1}\frac{1}{\omega RC} \tag{6.4}$$

Then, the transfer function describing the output-input relationship is

$$|H(\omega)| = \frac{V_{out}}{V_{in}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + (1/\omega RC)^2}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + (\omega_{co}/\omega)^2}} \tag{6.5}$$

where the frequency $\omega_{co} = \frac{1}{RC}$ is known as **corner, break , cutoff, or half power frequency**. Recalling (6.4) and varying the frequency w from 0 to ∞, we see that

$$V_{out} \;\; = \;\; 0, \quad \angle V_{out} = 90^\circ \quad \text{when } w \to 0$$

$$V_{out} = \frac{V_{in}}{\sqrt{2}}, \quad \angle V_{out} = 45° \quad \text{when } w \to w_{co}$$

$$V_{out} = V_{in}, \quad \angle V_{out} = 0° \quad \text{when } w \to \infty$$

meaning, it is a high frequency passed circuit.[3] For a second-order high-pass filter, we start writing KVL for the two loops respectively.
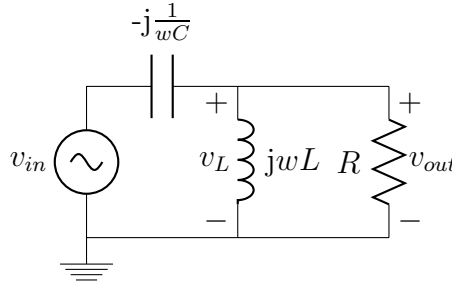
Figure 6.6: Second-Order High-Pass RLC Filter

$$\bar{V}_{in} = \bar{I}_1(\frac{1}{j\omega C}) + (\bar{I}_1 - \bar{I}_2)j\omega L = \bar{I}_1(\frac{1}{j\omega C + j\omega L}) - \bar{I}_2(j\omega L)$$

$$0 = (\bar{I}_2 - \bar{I}_1)j\omega L + \bar{I}_2 R = -\bar{I}_1(j\omega L) + \bar{I}_2(R + j\omega L)$$

Solving, we have the current for the right-hand loop

$$\bar{I}_2 = \frac{(-\omega^2 LC\bar{V}_{in})}{R(1 - \omega^2 LC) + j\omega L} = \frac{(-\omega^2 LC)V_{in}}{R\sqrt{(1 - \omega^2 LC)^2 + (\omega L/R)^2}} \angle \tan^{-1} \frac{-\omega L}{R(1 - \omega^2 LC)}$$

and the output voltage becomes

$$\bar{V}_{out} = \bar{I}_2 R = \frac{(-\omega^2 LC)V_{in}}{\sqrt{(1 - \omega^2 LC)^2 + (\omega L/R)^2}} \angle \tan^{-1} \frac{-\omega L}{R(1 - \omega^2 LC)}$$

Lastly, the transfer function[4] is

$$|H(\omega)| = \frac{V_{out}}{V_{in}} = \frac{\omega^2 LC}{\sqrt{(1 - \omega^2 LC)^2 + (\omega L/R)^2}} \angle \tan^{-1} \frac{(\omega/\omega_n)^2}{\sqrt{(1 - \omega^2/\omega_n^2)^2 + \xi^2(\omega/\omega_n)^2}}$$

s-domain methods

Another method is to use impedance technique. By voltage divider, we have

$$V_{out} = \frac{Ls//R}{\frac{1}{Cs} + Ls//R}I_{in} = \frac{RLCs^2}{RLCs^2 + Ls + R}I_{in}$$

---

[3]Analyzing the impedance property of a capacitor when frequency varies and make you conclusion.

[4]Find the $H(s)$ via impedance concept and plot the frequency response.
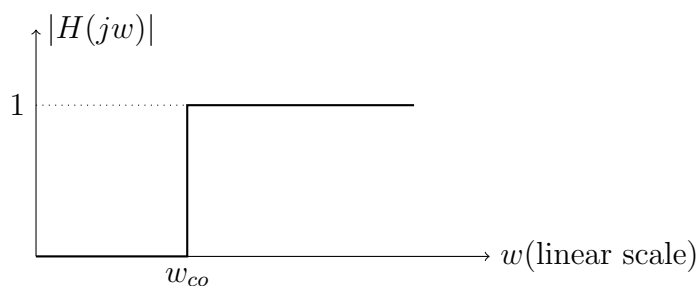
Figure 6.7: Ideal High-Pass Filter: Magnitude vs Linear w

Canceling out R leads to

$$\frac{V_{out(s)}}{V_{in}(s)} = \frac{LCs^2}{LCs^2 + \frac{L}{R}s + 1}$$

Obviously, s-**domain approach is easier algebraically to manipulate the mathematic equation.**

After establishing the notions of frequency selection circuits, we are ready to move forward to understand how to plot frequency response. To this end, Bode plot is useful. Two plots are needed to completely describe the concept of Bode plots. One is a plot of magnitude and the other is a plot of angle/phase.

6.3 Bode Plots

A Bode plot shows magnitude in decibels vs frequency in a log scale. It is useful when dealing with transfer functions.

To begin with, we need to convert the magnitude of a transfer function into decibels. To this end, we define

$$|H(jw)|_{dB} \triangleq 20 \log |H(jw)|$$

Some numerical examples are listed below.

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
100 \longleftrightarrow 40\text{dB} & 1/100 \longleftrightarrow -40\text{dB} \\
2 \longleftrightarrow 6\text{dB} & 1/2 \longleftrightarrow -6\text{dB} \\
1 \longleftrightarrow 0\text{dB} & \sqrt{2} \longleftrightarrow -3\text{dB}
\end{array}
$$

The advantages of such definition are

1. Extreme magnitudes can be displayed clearly on a single plot.

2. Decibels plots can be approximated by straight lines provided that a logarithmic scale is used for frequency.

3. Multiplication of magnitudes can be converted into addition. For example,

$$20 \log(10w) = 20 \log w + 20 \log 10 = 20 \log w + 20 \ dB$$

which illustrates that an increase of a factor of 10 contributes 20 dB.

$$20 \log(10^n w) = 20 \log w + 20 \log 10^n = 20 \log w + 20n \ dB \qquad (6.6)$$

A geometrical illustration of (6.6) is depicted below
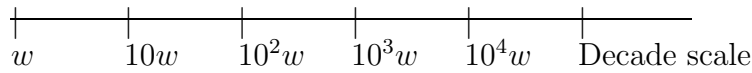
Figure 6.8: Log Scale

Or another example,

$$20 \log(2w) = 20 \log w + 20 \log 2 = 20 \log w + 6.06 \ dB$$

which illustrates that an increase of a factor of 2 contributes 6 dB.

$$20 \log(2^n w) = 20 \log w + 20 \log 2^n = 20 \log w + 6.06n \ dB \qquad (6.7)$$

A linear scale means the variable is **added** by a factor for equal length while a logarithmic scale means the variable is **multiplied** by a factor for equal length. The concept is illustrated in the following. Before proceeding, we define
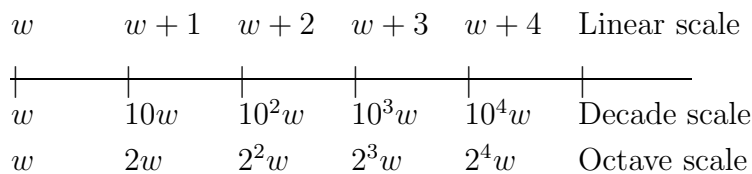
Figure 6.9: Illustration of 3 Different Scales

Table 6.1: Evaluation of Points, relative to w_i

Frequencies (x)	dB_i (y)
$\frac{w_i}{100}$	$0dB$
$\frac{w_i}{10}$	$0dB$
w_i corner freq.	$3.010\ dB$
$10w_i$	$20dB$
$100w_i$	$40dB$
$10^n w_i$	$20ndB$

A **decade** is a 10-to-1 change in frequency measured in a logarithmic scale. Since on a log scale, we have

$$\log\frac{10}{1} = \log\frac{100}{10} = \log\frac{10^3}{10^2} = \log 10 = 1$$

That is to say **one** log **unit increment is equivalent to a factor of 10 times increment in linear scale.** So a decade is a range of frequency for which the ratio of the highest frequency to the lowest frequency is 10. In sum, the number of decade is calculated according to what follows.

$$\text{number of decade } \sharp \overset{\triangle}{=} \log_{10}(\frac{w_2}{w_1}) \Leftrightarrow \frac{w_2}{w_1} = 10^\sharp \quad (equivalently, w_2 = w_1 \times 10^\sharp)$$

6.3.1   Line approximations for first-order terms

When plotting a Bode plot, it is convenient to use line approximations for the first-order terms. Consider the first-order term of the following form.

$$H(s)|_{s=jw} = s + z|_{s=jw} = jw + z = \sqrt{w^2 + z^2}\angle\tan^{-1}\frac{w}{z} = z\sqrt{(\frac{w^2}{z^2} + 1)}\angle\tan^{-1}\frac{w}{z}$$

Now taking $20\log$ on the magnitude[5] and let $z = w_i$, we have

$$dB_i = 20\log\sqrt{[1 + (\frac{w}{w_i})^2]} \approx 20\log(\frac{w}{w_i}) = 20\log w - 20\log w_i, \quad w >> w_i \quad (6.8)$$

The equation (6.8), based on ratio, bears the form $y = ax + b$ (ie., a linear function), where $y = dB_i$, $x = \log w$, $a = 20$, and $b = -20\log w_i$. To plot, we evaluate the following particular points to sketch.

When plotting via PSpice, users are asked to provide information on START frequency (w_{start}), END frequency (w_{end}), and Number of points per Decade (nd).

---

[5]We neglect the constant z in front to simplify the analysis for now.
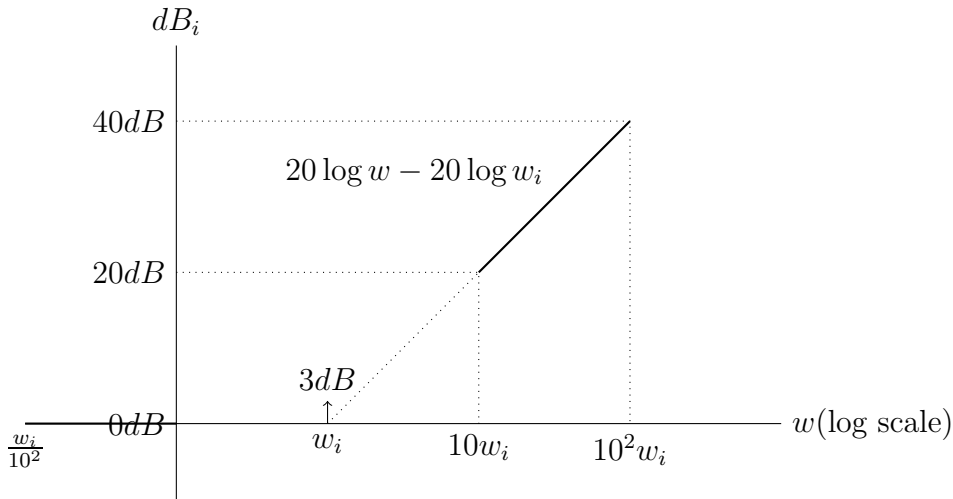
Figure 6.10: Line Approximation of Magnitude Plot, 1st-order Term

The formula above can be applied to determine the frequencies **in a given decade** between w_{start} and w_{end}. For example, if $w_{start} = 50$ and $w_{end} = 5000$ and the number of points per decade is nd=20, the frequencies **in one decade** between 50 and 500 would be

$$w_k = w_{start} \times 10^{k/nd}, \quad k = 0, 1, 2, \cdots, nd \tag{6.9}$$

yielding

$$w_0 = 50, w_1 = 56.10, w_2 = 62.95, \cdots, w_{20} = 500 \quad (unit : Hz \ or \ rad/sec.)$$

There is another terminology known as **octave** whose definition is a 2-to-1 change in frequency measured in a logarithmic scale.

$$\text{number of octave } \sharp \overset{\triangle}{=} \log_2(\frac{w_2}{w_1}) = \log(\frac{w_2}{w_1})/\log 2 \Leftrightarrow \frac{w_2}{w_1} = 2^{\sharp}$$

It is noted that the formula (6.9) to find frequencies in a decade is readily applicable to find frequencies in an octave by replacing the number 10 with 2. Therefore, **an advantage of logarithm over linear scale is that a wide range of frequency can be covered in one plot**. Before continuing our analysis, recall the following property of logarithms given by

$$\log(\frac{ab}{cd}) = \log ab - \log cd = \log a + \log b - \log c - \log d$$

6.3.2 A low-pass filter

To illustrate, consider a first-order low-pass transfer functions (see (6.2) for reference)

$$H(f) = \frac{1}{1 + j(\frac{f}{f_c})} = \frac{1}{1 + j(\frac{w}{w_c})}, \quad w = 2\pi f$$

whose magnitude is

$$H(f) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + (\frac{f}{f_c})^2}} \angle - \tan^{-1} \frac{f}{f_c}$$

The decibel is defined as

$$|H(f)|_{dB} = 20\log \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + (\frac{f}{f_c})^2}} = 20\log(1) - 20\log[1 + (\frac{f}{f_c})^2]^{\frac{1}{2}} = -10\log[1 + (\frac{f}{f_c})^2]$$

Low freq. asymptote

For $f << f_c$ $|H(f)|_{dB} = -10\log(1) = 0dB$

$$\angle H(f) = -\tan^{-1} 0 = 0°$$

For $f = 10^{-2} f_c$ $|H(f)|_{dB} = -10\log(1 + (\frac{0.01 f_c}{f_c})^2) \approx 0dB$

$$\angle H(f) = -\tan^{-1} 0.01 = -0.58°$$

For $f = 10^{-1} f_c$ $|H(f)|_{dB} = -10\log(1 + (\frac{0.1 f_c}{f_c})^2) \approx 0dB$

$$\angle H(f) = -\tan^{-1} 0.1 = -5.72°$$

For $f = f_c$ $|H(f)|_{dB} = -10\log 2 = -3dB$

$$\angle H(f) = -\tan^{-1} 1 = -45°$$

High freq. asymptote

For $f = 10 f_c$ $|H(f)|_{dB} = -10\log(1 + (\frac{10 f_c}{f_c})^2) \approx -20dB$

$$\angle H(f) = -\tan^{-1} 10 = -84.28°$$

For $f = 10^2 f_c$ $|H(f)|_{dB} = -10\log(1 + (\frac{10^2 f_c}{f_c})^2) \approx -40dB$

$$\angle H(f) = -\tan^{-1} 100 = -89.42°$$

For $f >> f_c$ $|H(f)|_{dB} = -10\log(\frac{f}{f_c})^2 dB$

$$\angle H(f) = -\tan^{-1} \infty = -90°$$

Obviously, we have $\angle H(f) = -\tan^{-1} \frac{f}{f_c}$.
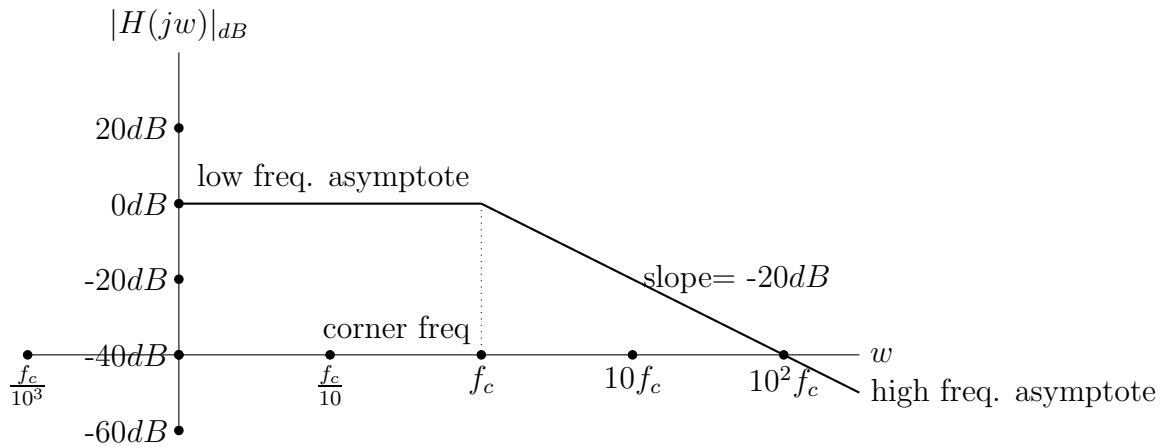
Figure 6.11: Line Approximation of Magnitude Plot, 1st-order Low-Pass Filter

Notice that the point in the magnitude plot where low frequency asymptote and high frequency asymptote meets is known as corner, cutoff, break, or half power frequency. But where is the corner frequency in the angle plot? You will find it occurs at $\angle H(jf_c) = \pm 45°$ in the angle plot.
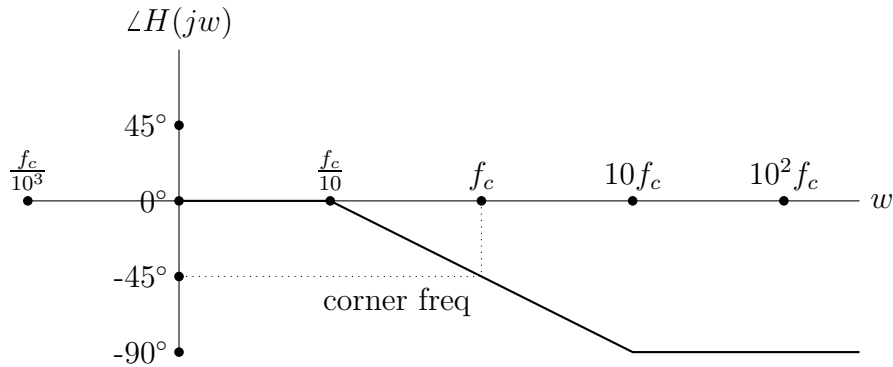
Figure 6.12: Line Approximation of Angle Plot, 1st-order Low-Pass Filter

Example 6.1 (Frequency Response of Low-Pass Filters) *Given the following circuit, find the frequency response.*
Solution: *Apply voltage divider to obtain the following input-output ratio (transfer function) in terms of w.*

$$\bar{Z} = 10^4 - j\frac{10^9}{\omega}, \quad \bar{V}_{out} = \frac{\bar{V}_{in}(-j10^9/\omega)}{10^4 - j(10^9/\omega)} = \frac{\bar{V}_{in}}{1 + j(\omega/10^5)}$$
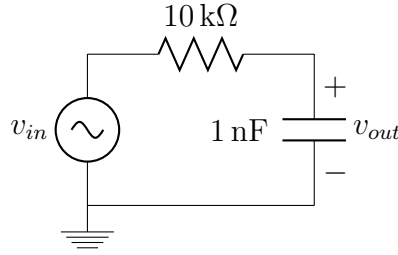
Figure 6.13: Circuit Diagram for Example 6.1

thus $\omega_{co} = 10^5 = 1/RC, f_{co} = 15.9KHz$. Furthermore[6]

$$20 \log |\frac{\bar{V}_{out}}{\bar{V}_{in}}| = -20 \log \sqrt{1 + (\frac{\omega}{10^5})^2}$$

$$For\ \omega >> 10^5 \quad 20 \log |\frac{V_{out}}{V_{in}}| \approx -20 \log(\omega/10^5)$$

$$For\ \omega << 10^5 \quad 20 \log |\frac{V_{out}}{V_{in}}| \approx -20 \log 1 = 0$$

It is noted that over high frequency range ($10^n w$), the asymptote is a straight line with slope of 20dB per decade. To see this, it is easy to verify the following identity

$$-20 \log \frac{10^n w}{10^5} = -20 \log \frac{w}{10^5} - 20 \log 10^n = -20 \log \frac{w}{10^5} - 20n \quad dB$$

meaning for an increase of one decade the magnitude drops -20dB. Please refer to Figure 6.10 for detail, noting that it has a negative slope for this case ($w_i = 10^5$).

□

6.3.3   A high-pass filter

Now consider the transfer function of a high-pass filter (see (6.5) for reference)

$$\begin{aligned} H(f) &= \frac{j(\frac{f}{f_c})}{1 + j(\frac{f}{f_c})} = \frac{\frac{f}{f_c}}{\sqrt{1 + (\frac{f}{f_c})^2}} \angle \frac{\pi}{2} - \tan^{-1} \frac{f}{f_c} \\ &= \frac{1}{1 - j(\frac{f_c}{f})} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + (\frac{f_c}{f})^2}} \angle \tan^{-1} \frac{f_c}{f} \end{aligned}$$

---

[6]Plot the frequency response of this 1st-order and 2nd-order low-pass filter via PSpice.

Therefore

$$|H(f)|_{dB} = -10\log[1 + (\frac{f_c}{f})^2]$$

and arguing in the same fashion as the low-pass filter, we have

Low freq. asymptote

For $f << f_c$ $\qquad |H(f)|_{dB} = -10\log(\frac{f_c}{f})^2 dB$

$$\angle H(f) = -\tan^{-1} 0 = 90°$$

For $f = 10^{-2}f_c$ $\qquad |H(f)|_{dB} = -10\log(1 + (\frac{f_c}{0.01f_c})^2) \approx -40dB$

$$\angle H(f) = -\tan^{-1} 100 = 89.42°$$

For $f = 10^{-1}f_c$ $\qquad |H(f)|_{dB} = -10\log(1 + (\frac{f_c}{0.1f_c})^2) \approx -20dB$

$$\angle H(f) = -\tan^{-1} 10 = 84.28°$$

For $f = f_c$ $\qquad |H(f)|_{dB} = -3dB$

$$\angle H(f) = -\tan^{-1} 1 = 45°$$

High freq. asymptote.

For $f = 10^2 f_c$ $\qquad |H(f)|_{dB} = -20\log(1 + (\frac{f_c}{100f_c})^2) \approx 0dB$

$$\angle H(f) = -\tan^{-1} 0.01 = 0.58°$$

For $f = 10^1 f_c$ $\qquad |H(f)|_{dB} = -20\log(1 + (\frac{f_c}{10f_c})^2) \approx 0dB$

$$\angle H(f) = -\tan^{-1} 0.1 = 5.72°$$

For $f >> f_c$ $\qquad |H(f)|_{dB} = -20\log(1) = 0dB$

$$\angle H(f) = -\tan^{-1} 0 = 0°$$

Example 6.2 (Frequency Response of High-Pass Filters) *Given the following circuit, find the frequency response.*
Solution: *Apply voltage divider to obtain the following input-output ratio (transfer function) in terms of w. Since $\bar{Z} = 10,000 - j10^9/\omega$,*

$$\bar{V}_{out} = \frac{\bar{V}_{in} \cdot 10,000}{10,000 - j10^9\omega} = \frac{\bar{V}_{in}}{1 - j10^5\omega}$$

Thus $\omega_{co} = 10^5 rad/s, f_{co} = 15.9 KHz$. Furthermore,

$$20\log|\frac{\bar{V}_{out}}{\bar{V}in}| = 20\log\frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + (10^5/\omega)^2}} = -20\log\sqrt{1 + (\frac{10^5}{\omega})^2}$$
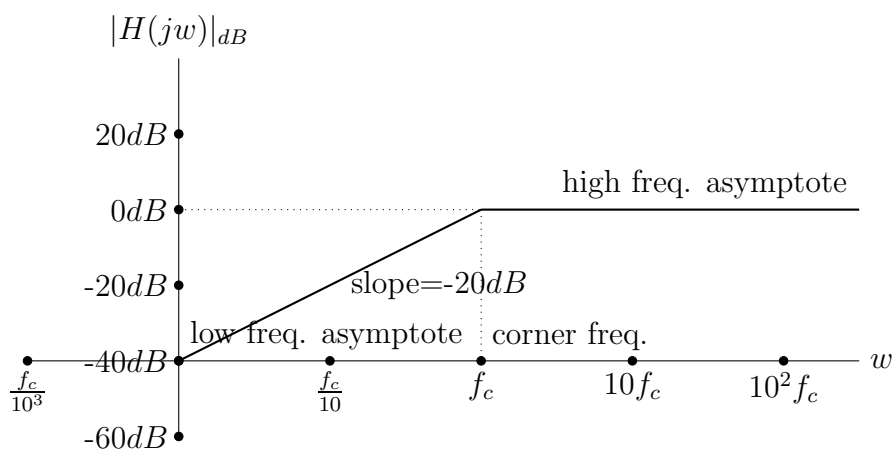
Figure 6.14: Line Approximation of Magnitude Bode Plot: 1st-order High-Pass Filter
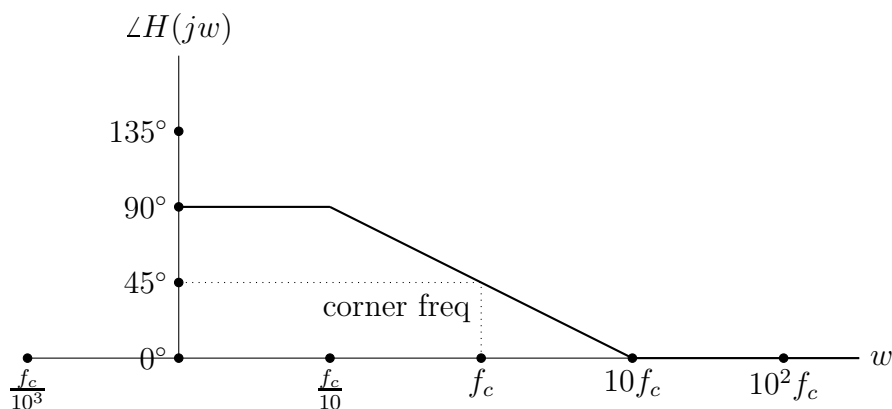
Figure 6.15: Line Approximation of Angle Plot: 1st-order High-Pass Filter
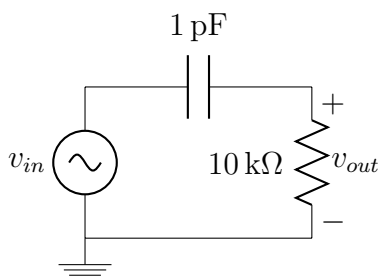
Figure 6.16: Circuit Diagram for Example 6.2

$$For \ \omega << 10^5, \quad 20\log|\frac{V_{out}}{V_{in}}| = -20\log 10^5/\omega = 20\log\frac{\omega}{10^5}$$

$$For \ \omega >> 10^5, \qquad 20\log|\frac{V_{out}}{V_{in}}| \approx -20\log 1 = 20\log 1$$

Bode Magnitude   Bode Angle
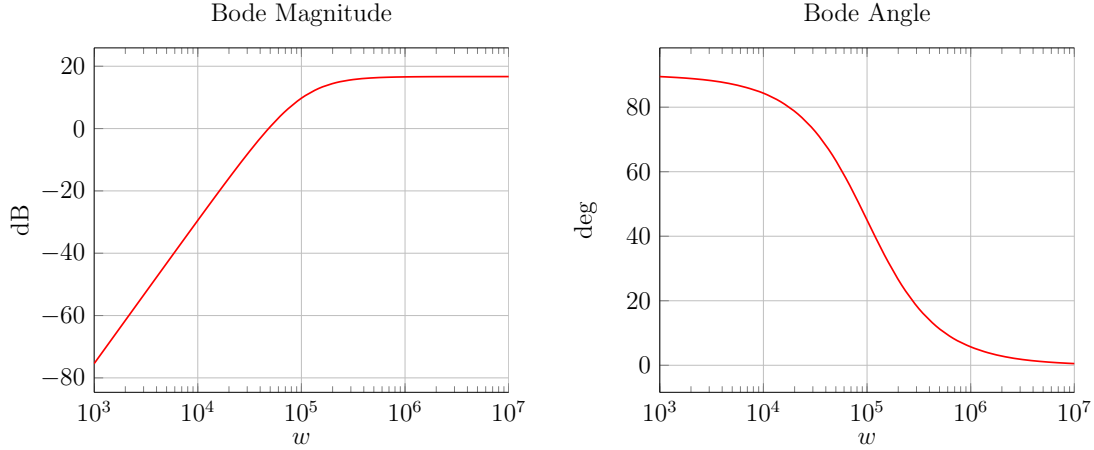
Figure 6.17: Bode Plots for 1st High-Pass Filters

□

Example 6.3 (Effect of Low-Pass Filters) *Suppose that an input signal given by*

$$v_{in}(t) = 5\cos(20\pi t) + 5\cos(200\pi t) + 5\cos(2000\pi t)$$

is applied to the low-pass RC filter shown below $R = 1000/2\pi$ and $C = 10\mu F$. Find an expression for the output signal.
Solution: *Applying voltage divider, we have*

$$\bar{V}_{out} = \left(\frac{\frac{1}{jwC}}{R + \frac{1}{jwC}}\right)\bar{V}_{in} = \frac{1}{1 + jwRC}\bar{V}_{in}$$

yielding

$$|H(jw)| = \frac{1}{1 + \sqrt{(\frac{w}{w_{co}})^2}} \qquad\qquad (6.10)$$

where $w_{co} = \frac{1}{RC} = 2\pi f_{co}$ whose cut-off frequency is $f_{co} = \frac{1}{2\pi RC} = 100$ Hz. It should be easy to see that f_{co} is inversely proportional to R.[7] The Bode plot can be readily obtained.

Since the input signal contains 3 different frequencies, we analyze the output componentwise.

---

[7]Try $R = 10^4/2\pi$ and plot the Bode diagram, what do you find?

Evaluating the transfer function for the frequency $f = 10 = 10^{-1}f_{co}$, we have

$$H(10) = \frac{1}{1 + j\frac{f}{f_{co}}} = \frac{1}{1 + j\frac{10}{100}} = 0.9950\angle - 5.71°$$

Noting that the magnitude 0.9950 is equivalent to 0.04321 in dB (since $10\log 0.9950 = 0.04321$ dB).

$$\bar{V}_{out} = H(10)\bar{V}_{in} = (0.9950\angle - 5.71°)(5\angle 0°) = 4.975\angle - 5.71°$$

Evaluating the transfer function for the frequency $f = 100 = f_{co}$, we have

$$H(100) = \frac{1}{1 + j\frac{f}{f_{co}}} = \frac{1}{1 + j\frac{100}{100}} = 0.7071\angle - 45°$$

Noting that the magnitude 0.7071 is equivalent to -0.301 in dB (since $10\log 0.7071 = -0.301$ dB).

$$\bar{V}_{out} = H(100)\bar{V}_{in} = (0.7071\angle - 45°)(5\angle 0°) = 3.535\angle - 45°$$

Evaluating the transfer function for the frequency $f = 1000 = 10f_{co}$, we have

$$H(1000) = \frac{1}{1 + j\frac{f}{f_{co}}} = \frac{1}{1 + j\frac{1000}{100}} = 0.09950\angle - 84.29°$$

Noting that the magnitude 0.09950 is equivalent to -20 in dB (since $10\log 0.0995 = -20$ dB).

$$\bar{V}_{out} = H(1000)\bar{V}_{in} = (0.09950\angle - 84.29°)(5\angle 0°) = 0.4975\angle - 84.29°$$

Now, we can write an expression for the output signal by adding the output components together since this is a linear circuit and the superposition property holds.

$$v_{out}(t) = 4.975\cos(20\pi t - 5.71°) + 3.535\cos(200\pi t - 45°) + 0.4975\cos(2000\pi t - 84.29°)$$

□

6.4 Band-Pass Filters

Filters may also be band-passed where only a band of frequencies is passed while all others are attenuated (rejected). To analyze a band-pass filer, we need to define a terminology first: **3-dB Bandwidth.** That is, The range of frequency in which the amplitude of the signal is equal to or greater than $1/\sqrt{2}$ times the maximum amplitude of the signal.

In what follows, we will study the combination of an inductor and a capacitor in series or in parallel where a phenomenon known as resonance can occur.
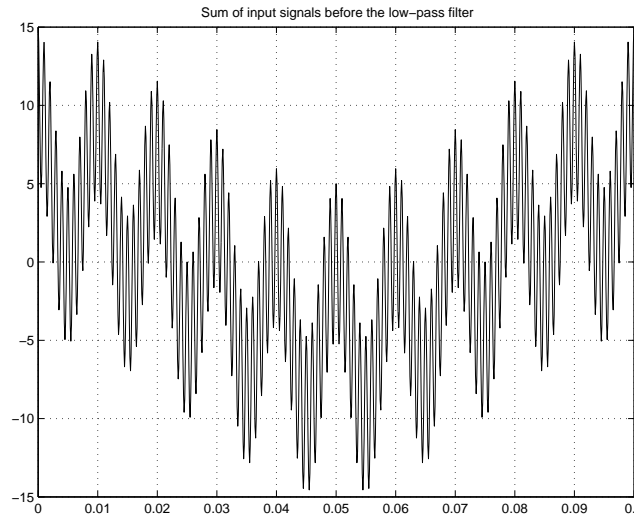
Figure 6.18: Plot of Time Domain Input Signals
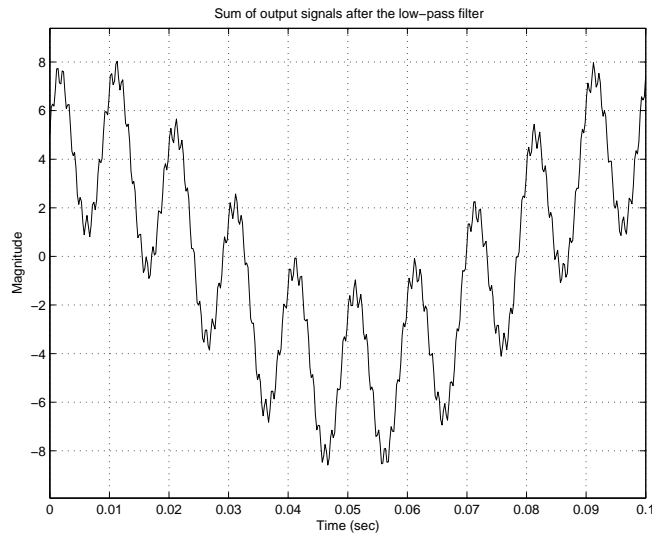
Figure 6.19: Plot of Time Domain Output Signals

6.4.1   Series resonance

A characteristic of low-loss (R≈0), second-order system, at a particular resonant frequency, the system could have a forced response with significant amplitude for a moderate forced input. Given a series RLC circuit below, with varying input frequency from 0 to ∞, it is readily seen that the phasor current is
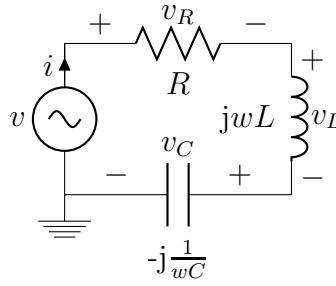
Figure 6.20: Series RLC Structure
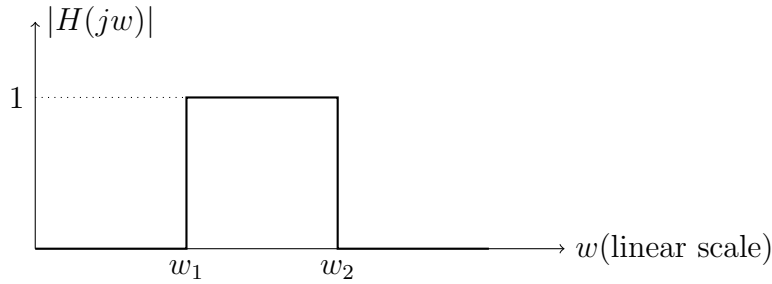
Figure 6.21: Ideal Band-Pass: Magnitude vs Linear w

$$\bar{I} = \frac{\bar{V}}{R + j(\omega L - \frac{1}{\omega C})} = \frac{V}{\sqrt{R^2 + (\omega L - \frac{1}{\omega C})^2}} \angle - \tan^{-1} \frac{\omega L - \frac{1}{\omega C}}{R} \qquad (6.11)$$

Note that I will be maximized when $\omega L = \frac{1}{\omega C}$, therefore the **resonant frequency** is defined as the ω such that $\bar{Z}(\omega_r) = R \approx 0$. Thus, $\omega_r L = \frac{1}{\omega_r C}$ or equivalently, $\omega_r = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}} = \omega_n$

It is noted that if the series connection is excited at the resonant frequency w_r the circuit becomes equivalent to a pure resistive network (acting like a short circuit if $R \approx 0$.) Furthermore, we observe that at $w = 0$ the capacitor is an open circuit and at $w = \infty$ the inductor is an open circuit, so that at these extremes in frequency, the resulting current is zero, meaning no output. Thus this is a selective network; but this time, it blocks high and low frequencies and let a certain band frequency passes. This is why it is called a band-pass filter.

To find the band (range of frequency), let's try to find its 3-dB bandwidth. Since

$$\frac{V}{\sqrt{R^2 + (\omega L - \frac{1}{\omega C})^2}} = \frac{V}{\sqrt{2}R}$$

we have, after removing the numerator,

$$\sqrt{R^2 + (\omega L - \frac{1}{\omega C})^2} = \sqrt{2}R$$

Squaring, we have

$$R^2 + (\omega L - \frac{1}{\omega C})^2 = 2R^2$$

which, after taking the square root, yields

$$\omega^2 LC + \omega RC - 1 = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \omega^2 LC - \omega RC - 1 = 0$$

Apply formula for quadratic equation to the equations above, to find solutions for w.

$$-\frac{R}{2L} \pm \sqrt{(\frac{R}{2L})^2 + \frac{1}{LC}} \qquad \frac{R}{2L} \pm \sqrt{(\frac{R}{2L})^2 + \frac{1}{LC}}$$

$$\omega_1 = -\frac{R}{2L} + \sqrt{(\frac{R}{2L})^2 + \frac{1}{LC}} \qquad \omega_2 = \frac{R}{2L} + \sqrt{(\frac{R}{2L})^2 + \frac{1}{LC}}$$

thus the **bandwidth** $(w_2 - w_1)$ of the series circuit is

$$\beta = \omega_2 - \omega_1 = \frac{R}{L}$$

An important index measuring ability of a filter to pass a band of frequencies is its **quality factor** which is to determine the sharpness near resonance.

$$Q_s = \frac{\omega_r}{\beta} = \frac{\omega_r L}{R} = \frac{1}{\omega_r RC}$$

Hence, increasing R lowers the Q_s, degrading the filter.

To find the frequency response, we determine the transfer function from V to I in terms of s. To this end, impedance Ohm's law gives

$$\bar{V} = \bar{I} Z(s) = \bar{I}(R + Ls + \frac{1}{Cs})$$

leading to

$$H(s) = \frac{\bar{I}}{\bar{V}} = \frac{1}{R + Ls + \frac{1}{Cs}}$$

Letting $s = jw$, we have[8]

$$H(jw) = \frac{I}{V} = \frac{1}{R + j(wL - \frac{1}{wC})} \tag{6.12}$$

whose magnitude in dB is readily obtained as

$$|H(jw)|_{dB} = 20 \log |H(jw)| = -10 \log[R^2 + (wL - \frac{1}{wC})^2]$$
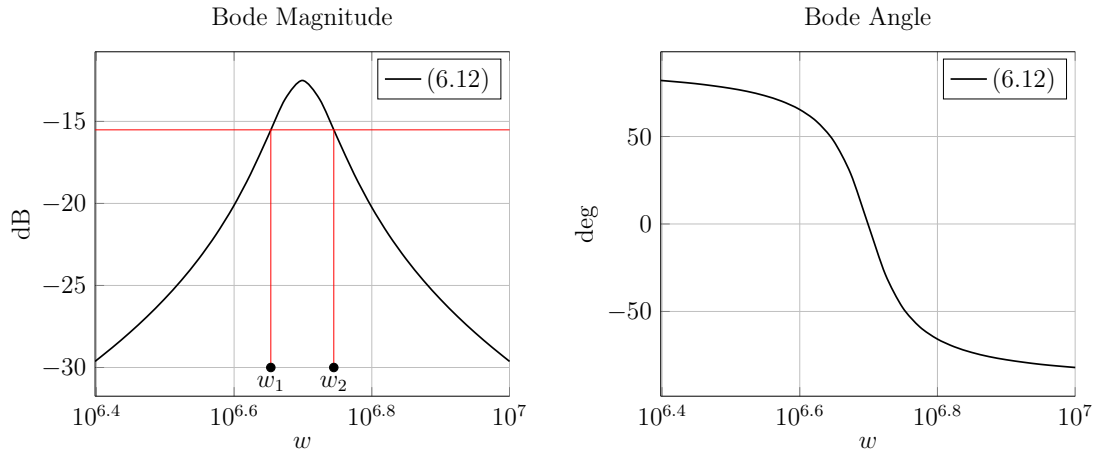
Figure 6.22: Bode Plot of a Series Resonance Circuit

Following the similar procedure introduced before, we have

$$w \to 0 \qquad |H(jw)|_{dB} = -20\log\frac{1}{wC} = 20\log\frac{w}{C}, \quad \text{capacitive} \qquad (6.13)$$

$$w \to w_r \qquad |H(jw)|_{dB} = -20\log R, \quad \text{pure resistive} \qquad (6.14)$$

$$w \to \infty \qquad |H(jw)|_{dB} = -20\log wL, \quad \text{inductive} \qquad (6.15)$$

It is known from (6.13) and (6.15) that the magnitude plot will decrease $-20dB$ per decade. Most importantly, equation (6.14) does not yield $0dB$ and do you know why?

Note that the transfer function is from $\bar{V}$ to $\bar{I}$. If the transfer function from $\bar{V}$ to $\bar{V}_R$ is desired, we have

$$H(jw) = \frac{\bar{V}_R}{\bar{V}} = \frac{R}{R + j(wL - \frac{1}{wC})} = \frac{R}{R[1 + j(\frac{wL}{R} - \frac{1}{wRC})]} = \frac{1}{1 + j(\frac{wL}{R} - \frac{1}{wRC})} \quad (6.16)$$

The plot should give you $0dB$ at the resonance since $20\log 1 = 0$.

Example 6.4 (Series Resonance) *Given parameters $\omega_r = 5Mrad/s$, $\omega_1 = 4.5Mrad/s$, $C = 0.01\mu F$, find Q_s, β, L and R for the circuits shown in Figure 6.24.*
Solution: *Since $\omega_r = 1/\sqrt{LC}$, we have $L = 1/C\omega_r^2 = 4\mu F$. Applying formula leads to*

$$4.5 \times 10^6 = \omega_1 = -\frac{R}{2 \cdot 4.5 \times 10^6} + \sqrt{(\frac{R}{9 \times 10^6})^2 + (5 \times 10^6)^2}$$

---

[8]Compared with (6.11), what is your observation from (6.12)? Ans: (6.12) is a ratio form.
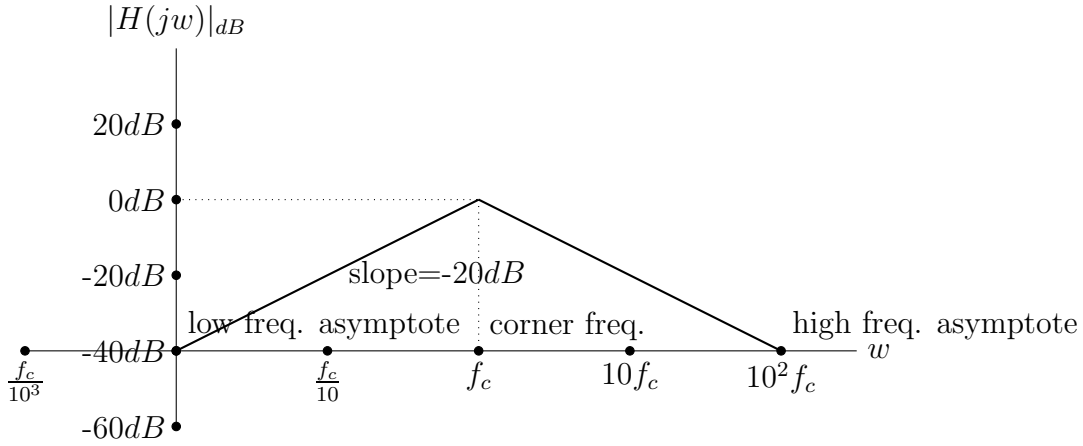
Figure 6.23: Line Approximation of Magnitude Plot: Band-Pass Filter
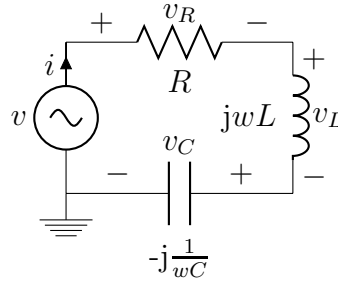
Figure 6.24: Circuit Diagram for Example 6.4

yielding $R = 4.22\Omega$. Moreover,

$$\omega_2 = \frac{R}{2L} + \sqrt{(\frac{R}{2L})^2 + \frac{1}{LC}} = 5.555 \times 10^6 rad/s = 5.555 Mrad/s$$

Thus

$$\beta = \omega_2 - \omega_1 = 1.055 \times 10^6 = 1.055 Mrad/s$$
$$Q_s = 5 \times 10^6/1.055 \times 10^6 = 4.74$$

The plot is shown in Figure 6.22.

$\square$

    A second example shows the phasor relationship in a circuit when resonance occurs. It is noted that imaginary parts due to L and C respectively canceled out, resulting in an extreme output (either maximum or minimum output). This is not an example of a frequency response, but a time response.

Example 6.5 (Series Resonance) *[1] Given the following circuit and suppose it is working at the resonant frequency, find the phasor voltages across the elements and draw a phasor diagram.*
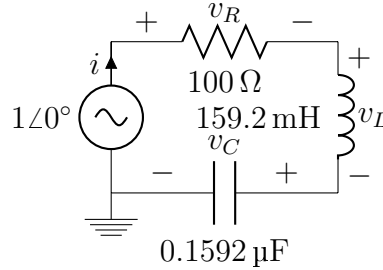
Figure 6.25: Circuit Diagram for Example 6.5

Solution: *First, find the resonant frequency*

$$f_r = \frac{1}{2\pi\sqrt{LC}} = 1000Hz, \quad Q = \frac{2\pi f_r L}{R} = 10$$

At the resonant frequency, we find

$$\bar{Z}_C = j2\pi f_r L = j1000\Omega, \quad \bar{Z}_L = -j\frac{1}{2\pi f_r C} = -j1000\Omega$$

As expected, the reactance $wL = \frac{1}{wC}$ are equal in magnitude at resonance, leading to pure resistive network $\bar{Z} = R + \bar{Z}_L + \bar{Z}_C = 100\Omega$. To continue, we find the loop current and element voltages below

$$\bar{I} = \frac{1\angle 0°}{100} = 0.01\angle 0°$$

and

$$\bar{V}_R = \bar{I}R = 1\angle 0°, \quad \bar{V}_C = \bar{I}\bar{Z}_C = 10\angle -90°, \quad \bar{V}_L = \bar{I}\bar{Z}_L = 10\angle 90°$$

and the phasor diagram 6.26 showing the voltage relationship is displayed below. It is noted that the voltage magnitudes across the inductance and capacitance are magnified by the quality factor Q_s when compared with the source voltage $\bar{V}_s$.

□

6.4.2   Parallel resonance

Given the following circuit diagram, we, by Ohm's law, have

$$\bar{V} = \frac{\bar{I}}{\bar{Y}} = \frac{I}{(\frac{1}{R} + \frac{1}{j\omega L}) + j\omega C} = \frac{I}{\sqrt{(\frac{1}{R})^2 + (\omega C - \frac{1}{\omega L})^2}}\angle -tan^{-1} - (\omega C - \frac{1}{\omega L})R$$

$$\bar{V}_L = 10\angle 90°$$

$$\bar{V}_R = \bar{V}_s = 1\angle 0°$$

$$\bar{V}_C = 10\angle -90°$$
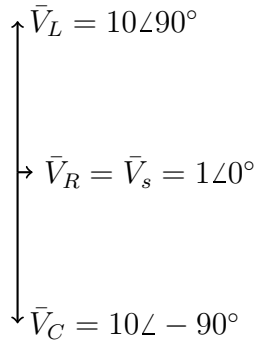
Figure 6.26: Phasor Diagram
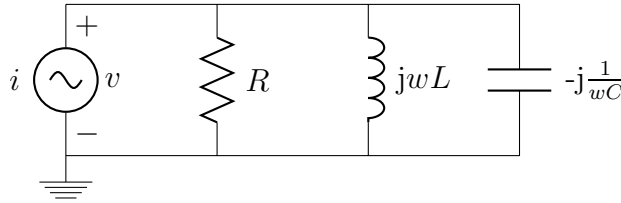
Figure 6.27: Parallel Structure

The magnitude of V will be maximized when $\omega C = \frac{1}{\omega L}$, therefore, the resonant frequency is the ω_r such that $\bar{Z}(\omega_r) = R$, in other words

$$\omega_r C = \frac{1}{\omega_r L} \text{ or } \omega_r = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}} = \omega_n \tag{6.17}$$

It is noted that if the parallel connection is excited at the resonant frequency w_r the parallel combination is equivalent to a pure resistive network (an open circuit if $R = 0$.) Furthermore, recalling the parallel circuit, we observe that at $w = \infty$ the capacitor is a short circuit and at $w = 0$ the inductor is a short circuit, so that at these extremes in frequency, the resulting current is $\bar{I}_s$ flowing through either capacitor or inductor (In either cases, the resistor current is 0.)

Again, let's find its $3dB$-bandwidth. Since

$$\frac{I}{\sqrt{(\frac{1}{R})^2 + (\omega C - \frac{1}{\omega L})^2}} = \frac{IR}{\sqrt{2}}$$

we have

$$\frac{1}{R^2} + (\omega C - \frac{1}{\omega L})^2 = \frac{2}{R^2}$$

yielding

$$\omega^2 LC + \frac{L}{R}\omega - 1 = 0 \qquad\qquad \omega^2 LC - \frac{L}{R}\omega - 1 = 0$$

$$-\frac{1}{2RC} \pm \sqrt{(\frac{1}{2RC})^2 + \frac{1}{LC}} \qquad\qquad \frac{1}{2RC} \pm \sqrt{(\frac{1}{2RC})^2 + \frac{1}{LC}}$$

$$\omega_1 = -\frac{1}{2RC} + \sqrt{(\frac{1}{2RC})^2 + \frac{1}{LC}} \qquad \omega_2 = \frac{1}{2RC} + \sqrt{(\frac{1}{2RC})^2 + \frac{1}{LC}}$$

Thus the bandwidth of the parallel circuit is

$$\beta = \omega_2 - \omega_1 = \frac{1}{RC}$$

and the quality factor is

$$Q_p = \frac{\omega_r}{\beta} = \omega_r RC = \frac{R}{\omega_r L}$$

Hence, increasing R raises the Q_s, upgrading the filter.

To find the frequency response, we determine the transfer function from I to V in terms of s. To this end, the impedance Ohm's law gives

$$\bar{I} = \bar{V} Y(s) = \bar{V}(\frac{1}{R} + \frac{1}{Ls} + Cs)$$

leading to

$$H(s) = \frac{\bar{V}}{\bar{I}} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{R} + \frac{1}{Ls} + Cs}$$

Letting $s = jw$, we have

$$H(jw) = \frac{\bar{V}}{\bar{I}} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{R} + j(wC - \frac{1}{wL})} \tag{6.18}$$

whose magnitude in dB is readily obtained as

$$|H(jw)|_{dB} = 20\log|H(jw)| = -10\log[\frac{1}{R^2} + (wC - \frac{1}{wL})^2]$$

Following the similar procedure introduced before, we have

$$w \to 0 \quad |H(jw)|_{dB} = -20\log\frac{1}{wL} = 20\log\frac{w}{L}, \quad \text{inductive} \tag{6.19}$$

$$w \to w_r \quad |H(jw)|_{dB} = -20\log\frac{1}{R}, \quad \text{pure resistor} \tag{6.20}$$

$$w \to \infty \quad |H(jw)|_{dB} = -20\log wC, \quad \text{capacitive} \tag{6.21}$$

It is known from (6.19) and (6.21) that the magnitude plot will decrease $-20dB$ per decade. Most importantly, equation (6.20) does not yield $0dB$ and do you know why? Note also that the transfer function is from I to V. Readers are encouraged to find the transfer function from I to I_R?
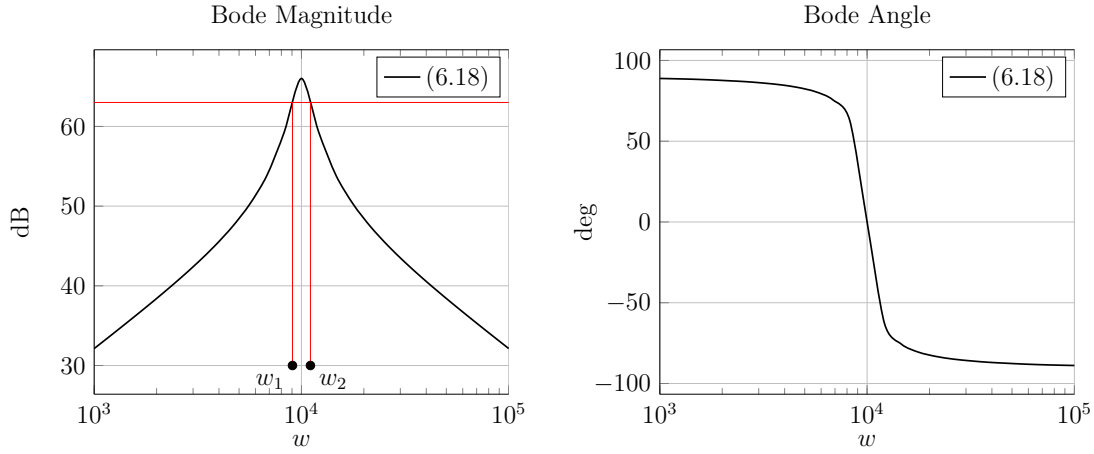
Figure 6.28: Bode Plot of a Parallel Resonance Circuit

Example 6.6 (Parallel Resonance) *Given $R = 2K\Omega$, $L = 40mH$, $C = 0.25\mu F$, find the following quantities: (a) ω_r, ω_1, ω_2, Q_p, $V_m(\omega_r)$, $V_m(\omega_1)$, $V_m(\omega_2)$. (b) The R such that $\beta = 500rad/s$.*
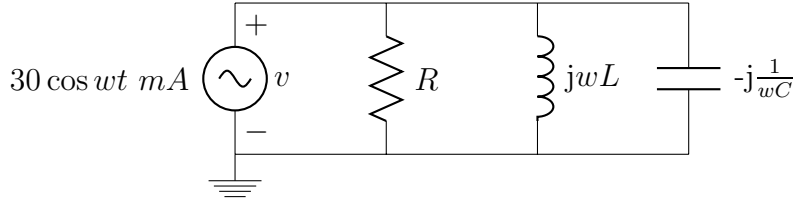
Figure 6.29: Circuit Diagram for Example 6.6

Solution: *Applying the formulas, we have the following results.*

$$\omega_r = 1/\sqrt{LC} = 1/\sqrt{40 \times 10^{-3} \cdot 0.25^{-6}} = 10^4 rad/s(1590Hz)$$

$$\omega_1 = -\frac{1}{2RC} + \sqrt{(\frac{1}{2RC})^2 + \frac{1}{LC}} = 9049.88 rad/s$$

$$\omega_2 = \frac{1}{2RC} + \sqrt{(\frac{1}{2RC})^2 + \frac{1}{LC}} = 11,049.88 rad/s$$

$$V_m(\omega_r) = I_m \cdot R = 50 \times 10^{-3} \cdot 2 \times 10^3 = 100V$$

$$V_m(\omega_1) = V_m(\omega_2) = V_m/\sqrt{2} = 70.7V$$

$$R = 1/\beta \cdot C = 1/500 \cdot 0.25 \times 10^{-6} = 8K\Omega$$

The magnitude plot in Figure 6.28 indicates that the peak frequency is $f = w_0/2\pi = 1590KHz$.

□

An application of narrow band filters is seen in rejecting interference due to AC line power. Any undesired 60-Hz signal originating in the AC line power can cause serious interference in sensitive instruments. Given the following circuit, find its transfer function and plot the Bode plot.
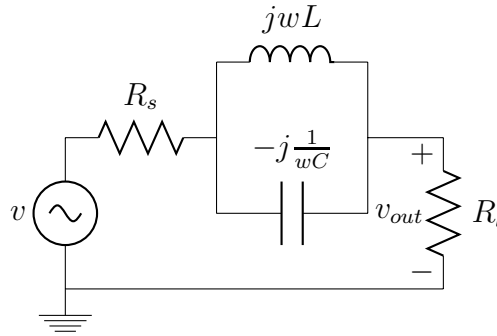
Figure 6.30: A Notch Filter

Applying voltage divider, we have

$$\bar{V}_{out} = \left(\frac{R_l}{R_s + R_l + jwL//jwC} \right) \bar{V}_{in} = \left(\frac{R_l}{R_s + R_l + j\frac{wL}{1-w^2LC}} \right) \bar{V}_{in}$$

yielding zero output (i.e. signal is blocked) when $w^2LC = 1$. To filter out the undesired 60-Hz noise, we have the following formula

$$(2\pi 60)^2 LC = 1$$

Let $L = 100mH$ then $C = 70.36\mu F$. To find its transfer function, we have

$$H(w) = \frac{R_l}{R_s + R_l + j\frac{wL}{1-w^2LC}} = \frac{R_l}{\sqrt{(R_s + R_l)^2 + (\frac{wL}{1-w^2LC})^2}} \angle -\tan^{-1}\frac{wL(R_s + R_L)}{1 - w^2LC}$$

Thus

$$\begin{aligned} \text{For } w << w_{co}, \quad |H(w)|_{dB} &= 20\log R_l - 10\log[(R_s + R_l)^2 + (\frac{wL}{1-w^2LC})^2] \\ &= 20\log\frac{R_l}{R_s + R_l} \\ \text{Hint: } w &\to 0, \quad jwL = 0 \text{ and } 1/jwC = \infty \\ \text{For } w = w_{co}, \quad |H(w)|_{dB} &= 20\log R_l - 10\log[(R_s + R_l)^2 + (\frac{wL}{1-w^2LC})^2] \end{aligned}$$
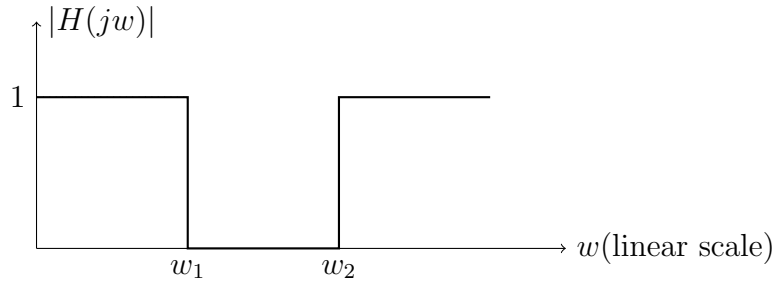
Figure 6.31: Ideal Band-Reject Filter: Magnitude vs Linear w Plot

$$
\begin{aligned}
&& = & \quad 20\log\frac{R_l}{\infty} \\
\text{For } w >> w_{co}, \quad |H(w)|_{dB} && = & \quad 20\log R_l - 10\log[(R_s + R_l)^2 + (\frac{wL}{1 - w^2 LC})^2] \\
&& = & \quad 20\log\frac{R_l}{R_s + R_l} \\
\text{Hint: } w & \rightarrow & \infty, & \quad jwL = \infty \text{ and } 1/jwC = 0
\end{aligned}
$$

This is known as a **band-reject filter.** However, in this example $w_1 = w_2$ and a special name **notch filter** is given.

The following numerical example is based on the analysis displayed above where the frequency responses (magnitude and angle) are generated based on $R_s = 50\Omega$, $R_l = 100\Omega$, $L = 100mH$, $C = 70.36\mu F$.
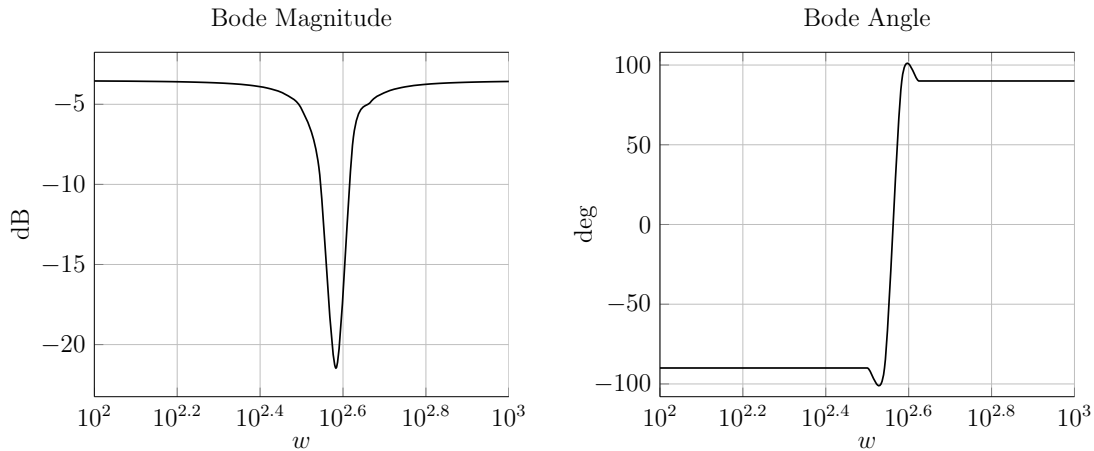
Figure 6.32: Bode Plot of a 60-Hz Notch Circuit

The following example establishes a connection between time responses and frequency responses.

Example 6.7 (Time Response vs. Frequency Response) *For a series RLC circuit,if its natural response is $V = 100e^{-100t}sin100\sqrt{99}t$ V with $C = 1\mu F$, find w_r, β, Q_p, R and L.*
Solution: *We can derive a differential-integral form as follows*

$$I = I_R + I_C + I_L = \frac{v}{R} + C\frac{dv}{dt} + \frac{1}{L}\int vd\tau$$

Differentiating, we obtain

$$C\frac{d^2v}{dt^2} + \frac{1}{R}\frac{dv}{dt} + \frac{1}{L}v = 0, \quad (Cs^2 + \frac{1}{R}s + \frac{1}{L} = 0)$$

whose characteristic values are

$$
\begin{aligned}
s_1, s_2 &= -\frac{1}{2RC} \pm \sqrt{(\frac{1}{2RC})^2 - \frac{1}{LC}} \\
&= -\alpha \pm \sqrt{\alpha^2 - w_r^2} \\
&= -\alpha \pm jw_d
\end{aligned}
$$

Same derivation is found in Section 5.3. With this knowledge and knowing that $V = 100e^{-100t}\sin 100\sqrt{99}t$, we have

$$100 = \alpha = \frac{1}{2 \cdot R \cdot 10^{-6}}$$

Solving, $R = 5K\Omega$ and $\beta = \frac{1}{RC} = 2\alpha = 200rad/s$. This demonstrates that the time domain parameter 2α contains bandwidth information. Furthermore, the damped frequency is

$$\omega_d = \sqrt{w_r^2 - \alpha^2}$$

we have

$$\omega_r = \sqrt{\omega_d^2 + \alpha^2} = 1000rad/s$$

This shows that resonant frequency is contained in $\alpha^2 + w_d^2$. In sum, the relationship between time response and frequency response is displayed below.

$$\beta = 2\alpha \quad and \quad w_r^2 = \alpha^2 + w_d^2$$

The remaining characteristic parameters are easily obtained

$$
\begin{aligned}
L &= 1/C\omega_r^2 = 1/(10^{-6} \cdot (10^3)^2) = 1H \\
Q_p &= \omega_r/2\alpha = 1000/2 \cdot 100 = 5
\end{aligned}
$$

This example shows that one can obtain frequency information by analyzing the time domain information. Of course, to do that you need to understand both analyses. Notice that increasing R raises Q_p but lowers Q_s.

□

Example 6.8 *Given the following radio circuit Figure 6.33 where the variable capacitor represents the tuner that can select certain radio stations. Find the frequency when $C = 200pF$.*
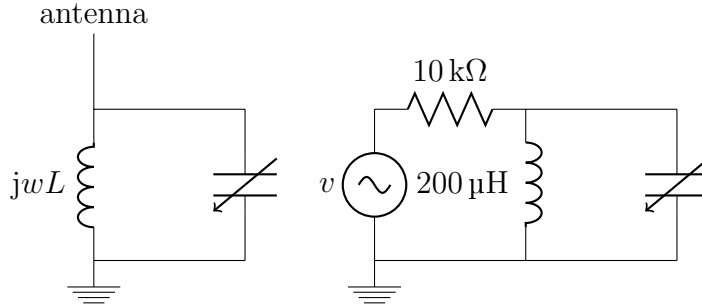
Figure 6.33: Circuit Diagram for Example 6.8

Solution: *Apply voltage divider to obtain the following input-output ratio in terms of w. (Transfer function=$\frac{RLCs^2+Ls+R}{LCs^2+1}$)*

$$\frac{\bar{V}_0}{\bar{V}} = \frac{(200\mu//C)}{10K + (200\mu//C)} = \frac{10^6}{10^6 + j(2\omega - \frac{5\times10^{13}}{\omega})}$$

The peak value occurs at

$$2\omega_r = \frac{5 \times 10^{13}}{\omega_r}$$

which yields $\omega_r = 5 \times 10^6 rad/s$, that is, $f_r = 796KHz \approx 800KHz$.
   The magnitude plot shows that the peak occurs at $800KHz$ approximately.

□
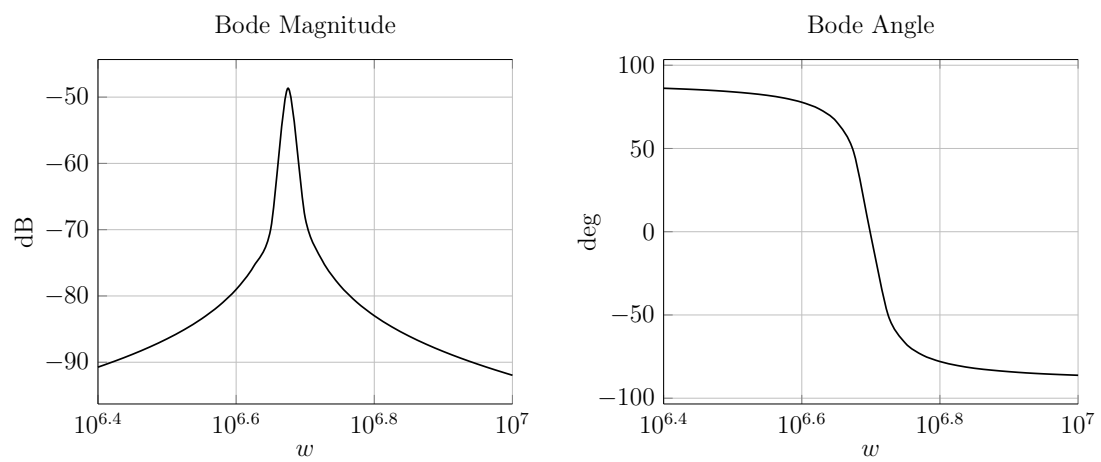
Figure 6.34: Bode Plot of a Radio Circuit

6.5   Recap

Frequency responses are different from time responses, but are equally important in circuit theory.

• Semilog scale means the y-axis is a linear scale even though $20 \log y$ is used, but the x-axis is on log scale where 10 to the nth power (10^n) is used, signified by $1, 2, 3, \cdot, n$ on a log scale.

• The benefit of using a log scale is that it covers a wide range of frequency due to its ratio expression.

• A transfer function is a fractional form. Taking log will turn multiplication and division into addition and substraction. These properties make plotting Bode plot easier by considering the basic forms and adding them up.

• Selective networks have many applications in frequency related devices.

• Resonance is a crucial property for low resistance, second-order systems.

• Math review:

$$x + jy = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2} \angle \tan^{-1} \frac{y}{x}$$
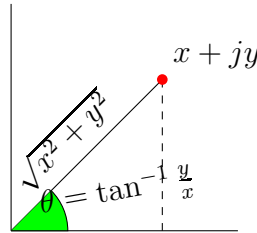
Bode log magnitude and angle

$$
\begin{aligned}
20 \log |x + jy| &= 20 \log \sqrt{x^2 + y^2} = 10 \log(x^2 + y^2), \quad \theta = \tan^{-1} \frac{y}{x} \\
20 \log |\frac{1}{x + jy}| &= 20 \log \frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}} = -10 \log(x^2 + y^2), \quad \theta = -\tan^{-1} \frac{y}{x}
\end{aligned}
$$

6.6   Problems

Problem 6.1 *(a) What frequency is half way between 100 and 1000Hz on a log frequency scale? (b) On a linear frequency scale?*
Answer: *(a)* $\log \frac{x}{100} = \frac{1}{2}$, *thus x=316.2Hz. (b) 550 Hz.*

Problem 6.2 *How may decades are between $f_1 = 20Hz$ and $f_2 = 15KHz$ (i.e., audio frequency)? (b) How many octaves ($\log_2$)*
Answer: *(a)* $\log \frac{15K}{20} = 2.87$. *(b) 9.55.*

Problem 6.3 *In the Figure 6.35, determine the cutoff frequency for the high-pass filter.*
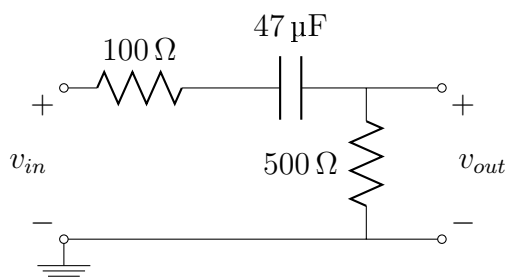
Figure 6.35: Circuit Diagram for Problem 6.3

Answer: *56.86 rad/s.*

Problem 6.4 *Suppose that an input signal given by*

$$v_{in} = 5\cos(500\pi t) + 5\cos(1000\pi t) + 5\cos(2000\pi t)$$

is applied to the low pass RC filter shown in Figure 6.36. (a) Find an expression for the output signal. (b) What is your observations when compared with the input signal?
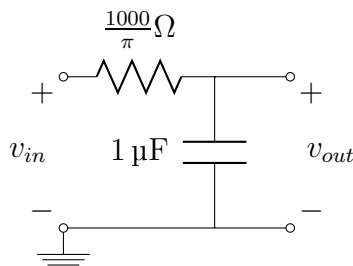
Figure 6.36: Circuit Diagram for Problem 6.4

Answer: *(a)* $v_{in} = 4.472 \cos(500\pi t - 25.57°) + 3.535 \cos(1000\pi t - 45°) + 2.236 \cos(2000\pi t - 63.43°)$. *(b) The input frequency is unchanged, but the input magnitude is attenuated and its angle is shifted.*

Problem 6.5 *The following components are available to construct a parallel resonant circuit:* $L_1 = 7.5mH$, $L_2 = 15mH$, $C_1 = 6\mu F$, $C_2 = 3\mu F$ *and* $R = 2k\omega$. *Design a circuit that will have the highest possible resonant frequency. Specify (a) w_r (b) w_1 (c) w_2 (d) β (e) Q. (Hint: There are two ways to combine two similar elements – series and parallel.*
Answer: *(a)* $L_{eq}=7.5m//15m=5mH$, $C_{eq} = 6\mu + 3\mu = 2\mu F$, $w_r = 10^4$. *(b)* $w_1 = 9875.78$ *rad/s. (c)* $w_2=10125.78$ *rad/s. (d)* $\beta = 250$ *rad/s. (e)* $Q = 40$.

Problem 6.6 *Up to present, you have learned 4 different filters LOW-PASS, HIGH-PASS, BAND-PASS, and BAND-REJECT. Given the circuits in Figure 6.37, (a) what kind of selective circuits they are and state the reason? (b) Find their transfer function respectively. (c) Draw the remaining filters and find their transfer function.*
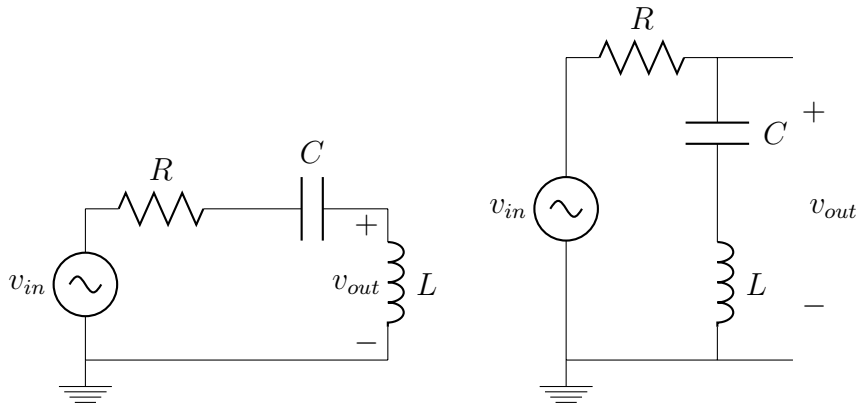
Figure 6.37: Circuit Diagram for Problem 6.6

Answer: *(a) High-pass,* $H(jw) = \frac{jwL}{r+jwl-j\frac{1}{wC}}$. *(b) Band-reject,* $H(jw) = \frac{jwL-\frac{1}{wC}}{R+jwl-j\frac{1}{wC}}$. *(c) When V_R is output, we have a band-pass filter. (d) When V_C is output, we have a low-pass filter.*

Problem 6.7 *Suppose that we want a series band-pass filter that passes components between 45-55KHz. Design a circuit using 1mH inductor. (a) What is the f_r? (2) Find Q_s. (c) Find R using formula Q_s. (d) Find C using formula f_r.*
Answer: *(a)* $f_r = 50KHz$ *or* $100\pi K$ *Rad/s. (b)* $Q_s = 5$. *(c)* $R = 20\pi\Omega$. *(d)* $C = 0.101 \times 10^{-7}F$.

Problem 6.8 *Given a series RLC circuit, find its impedance in terms of R, Q_s, and f_r.*
Answer: $\bar{Z} = R[1 + Q_s(\frac{f}{f_r} - \frac{f_r}{f})]\Omega$.

Problem 6.9 *Given the circuit for problem 6.38, (a) find the type of filter when output is at the inductor terminal. (b) Find the type of filter when output is measured at LC terminal. Use Pspice to check the results.*
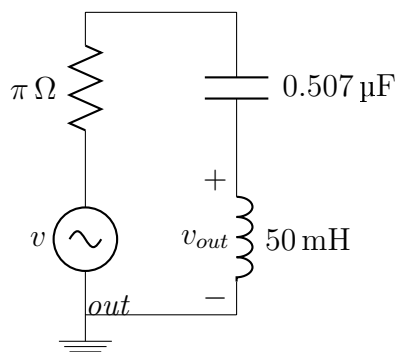
Figure 6.38: Circuit Diagram for Problem 6.9

Answer: *(a) A high-pass filter. (b) A band-reject filter.*

Problem 6.10 *Given Figure 6.39, determine the type of filter generated by the circuits (a) and (b). Please write down some explanations justifying the results, not just an answer.*
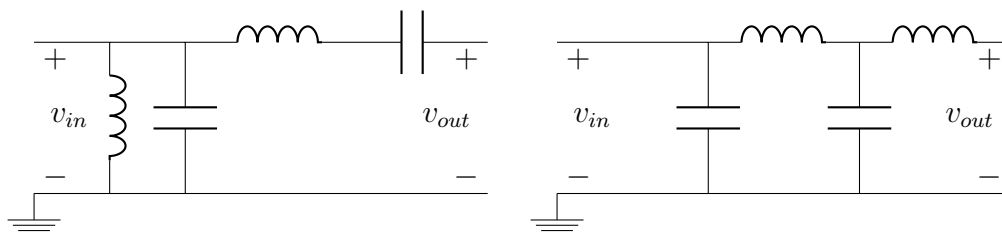
Figure 6.39: Circuit Diagram for Problem 6.10 (a) Left, (b) Right

Answer: *(a) Bandpass filter. (b) Lowpass filter.*

Problem 6.11 *The transfer function $H(f) = \frac{\bar{V}_{out}}{\bar{V}_{in}}$ of a filter is shown in Figure 6.40. If the input signal is given by*

$$v_{in} = 2\cos(10^4\pi t + 30°)$$

(a) what is the frequency in Hz for the input signal? (b) Find the functional value of the transfer function at the input frequency. (c) Find steady-state time expression of the output of the filter.
Answer: *(a) $10^4\pi = w = 2\pi f$, $f = 5000$. (b) $H(5000) = 1.5\angle - 45°$. (c) $v_{out} = 2\cos(10^4\pi t - 15°)$.*
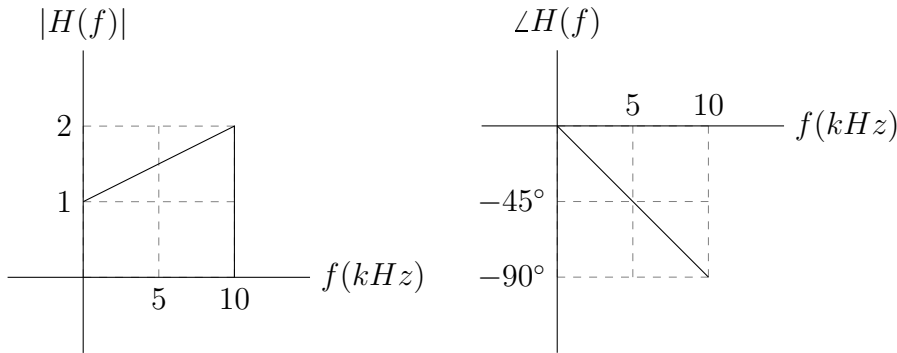
Figure 6.40: Circuit Diagram for Problem 6.11

Problem 6.12 *Given Figure 6.41, two AM broadcast stations have carrier frequencies of 680 and 880 KHz. Both are transmitting music and voice whose frequency extends from 0 to 20KHz (thus the BW=40KHz). Design a bandpass filter to pass the low frequency station and block the high frequency station. (a) Find the transfer function $H(s) = \frac{v_{out}}{v_{in}}$. (b) Find L and C. (For Pspice students, use $v_{in} = \cos 2\pi 680Kt + \cos 2\pi 880Kt$ to check filter effect at the result, just like what the book shows.)*
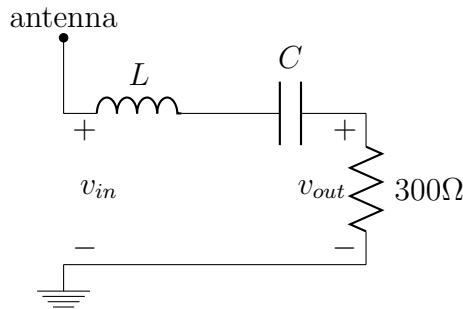
Figure 6.41: Circuit Diagram for Problem 6.12

Answer: (a) $H(s) = \frac{RCs}{Rcs + LCs^2 + 1}$. (b) $L = 1.194mH$, $C = 45.9pF$, where $p = 10^{-12}$.

Problem 6.13 *A transfer function is given by*

$$H_1(f) = \frac{10}{1 + j\frac{f}{100}} \quad and \quad H_2(w) = \frac{1}{jw}$$

Analyze the $20 \log |H(f)|_{dB}$ magnitude plot and sketch the asymptote Bode magnitude plot, respectively. (Hint: Just follow the definition and $\log \frac{a}{b} = \log a - \log b$.)
Answer: *Please see the plot below*
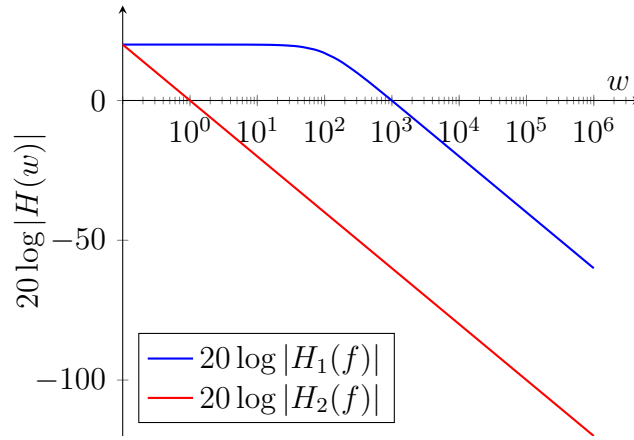
Figure 6.42: Bode Magnitude Plot for Problem 6.13

$$20 \log |H_1(f)|_{dB} = 20 \log 10 - 20 \log \sqrt{1 + f^2/10^4} = 20 - 20 \log \sqrt{1 + f^2/10^4}$$

Then,

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
f << 100 & 20 \\
f \rightarrow 100 & 20 - 3 = 17 dB \\
f >> 100 & 20 - 20 \log \dfrac{f}{10^2}
\end{array}
$$

Similarly

$$20 \log |H_2(f)| = 20 \log 1 - 20 \log \sqrt{f^2} = -20 \log f$$

Then,

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
f = 0.1 & 20 \\
f = 1 & 0 \\
f = 10 & -20
\end{array}
$$

Problem 6.14 *Given Figure 6.43, determine the transfer function relating i_C to the source $v_s(t)$.*

Answer: $V_C(s) = \frac{Ls}{RLCs^2 + Ls + R}$. $I_C(s) = \frac{V_C(s)}{1/Cs} = \frac{LCs^2}{RLCs^2 + Ls + R}$. $H(jw) = \frac{-2w^2}{54 - 12w^2 + j18w}$.
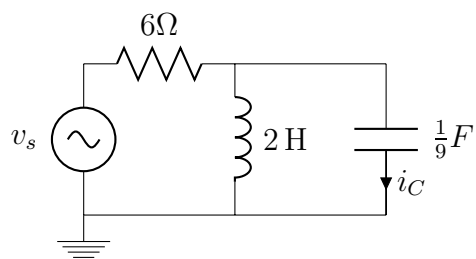
Figure 6.43: Circuit Diagram for Problem 6.14

Chapter 7

Diodes

Diodes are the simplest nonlinear element in electronics. They are constructed by
p-type (holes) and n-type (free electrons) material. When these two material are
connected, due to diffusion, some mobile carriers swim across the junction, resulting
in recombination, forming a depletion region, and causing a potential energy barrier
(shown by the battery) near junction area. Figure 7.1 demonstrates the internal be-
haviors of a junction diode. This pn junction property appears in almost all electronic
elements to be taught in this Reader. Being familiar with diodes can be a crucial step
in learning more complicated electronic devices. It is understandable, to keep this
Reader brief, that we will keep the diode internal physics short, but focus our discus-
sion on the external behaviors of diodes and some of their circuit applications. To
know more about diode physics please check the references for details.
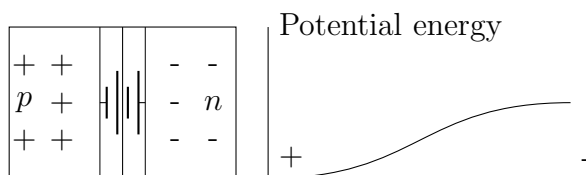
Figure 7.1: (a) + = Holes, Depletion/Barrier, - = Electrons and (b) Potential Barrier

7.1 Fundamentals

Diodes can only have two states for operations – ON or OFF; at any instant only one
state (either ON or OFF) is valid. As shown in Figure 7.1b, the n-type terminal has
a higher potential energy to break in order to conduct current. Figure 7.2 tells how.
If a positive voltage $v_D > 0.7$ ($0.7V$ is known as a knee/threshold voltage) is applied
to the diode, a large current can flow in the diode. This condition is termed **forward**

bias. If a negative voltage v_D is applied to the diode, only a small current can flow until its breakdown voltage is reached in the diode and this is called **reverse bias**. It is noticed that when diode conducts, the resistance is very small, as can be seen by the vertical line in the $i - v$ curve whose slope is almost infinity.

• Forward bias (low resistance, acting as a short circuit): p-type material is more **positive** than n-type material or equivalently, n-type material is more **negative** than the p-type material.

• Reverse bias (high resistance, acting as an open circuit): p-type material is more **negative** than n-type material or equivalently, n-type material is more **positive** than the p-type material.

Mathematically, the bottom line is to argue the status using $v_{pn} = v_p - v_n > 0$ for forward bias, and $v_{pn} = v_p - v_n < 0$ for reverse bias.

• The knee voltage is 0.7 for silicon and 0.3 for germanium. Theoretically, the current
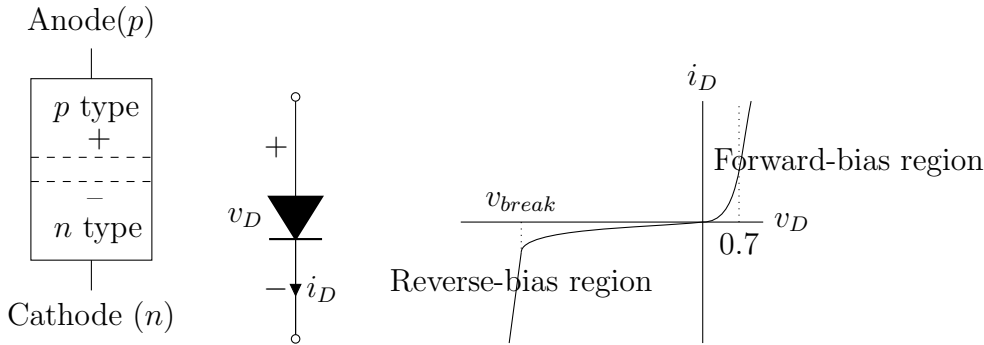
Figure 7.2: (a) A pn Junction, (b) Diode Symbol and (c) $i - v$ Characteristic

and voltage relationship of a pn junction diode is governed by Shockley equation

$$i_D = I_s(exp(\frac{v_D}{nV_T}) - 1) \approx I_s exp(\frac{v_D}{nV_T}) \tag{7.1}$$

where parameter n is related to type of material used in a diode. V_T is thermal voltage and I_s is saturation current on the order of 10^{-14}A. Diodes that are operated in the reverse bias region is called **Zener diodes** where breakdown voltage v_{break} at the reverse-bias region is reached.

PSpiceLab 7.1 ($i - v$ **Property of a Real Diode**) *Given the following diode circuit where the real diode is modeled by D1N4002 in PSpice, use DC sweep from $-15V$ to $15V$ to generate the $v - i$ characteristic.*
Solution:
Objectives: (1) Verify the i/o characteristic of a diode. (2) Learn DC sweep technique. (3) Change axis variables.
PreLab: Understand a diode has two states – ON and OFF, which is controlled by the
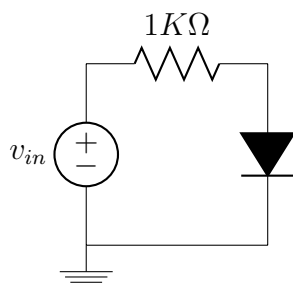
knee voltage.
Lab: The result confirms the analysis
PostLab: Can a mathematic model be devised to mimic the behavior of a diode?

□

To model a real diode, we often assume an offset/knee/threshold voltage value to be 0.7. This is the simplest gimmick, yet more to come.

7.2 Large-Signal Circuit Models

In this section we will investigate how a nonlinear circuit is converted into a linear circuit. With linear circuits established, we will see examples that nonlinear circuits become solvable.

7.2.1 Load-line analysis

Since a diode is a nonlinear circuit element, we don't know the value of v_D in a circuit. A graphic method provides a way to solve this problem. For example, consider a circuit in Figure 7.3. where v_s and R_s represent a Thevenin equivalent circuit and
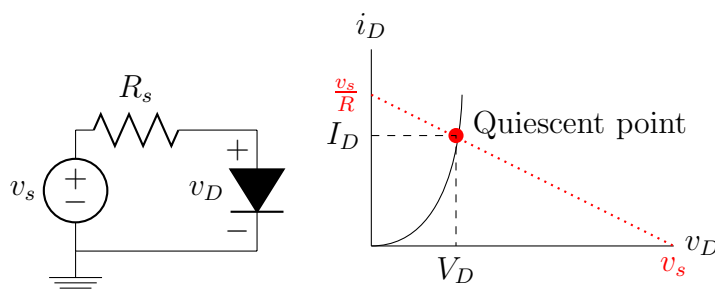
Figure 7.3: (a) Circuit, (b) Load Line Analysis

v_D is the diode voltage. To find the operating point (V_D, I_D), known as **Quiescent**

point (point at rest), we write the KVL in a clockwise direction and yield

$$v_s = i_D R_s + v_D$$

This line can be found and drawn on the $i - v$ plot. To this end, find its interception points on x- and y-axis by setting $i_D = 0$ and $v_D = 0$, respectively. Then connecting these two lines to find the Q crossover point.

Example 7.1 (Real Diode) *Given a real diode circuit and its input waveform as shown below, find the output voltage waveform and the transfer function from v_{in} to v_{out}*
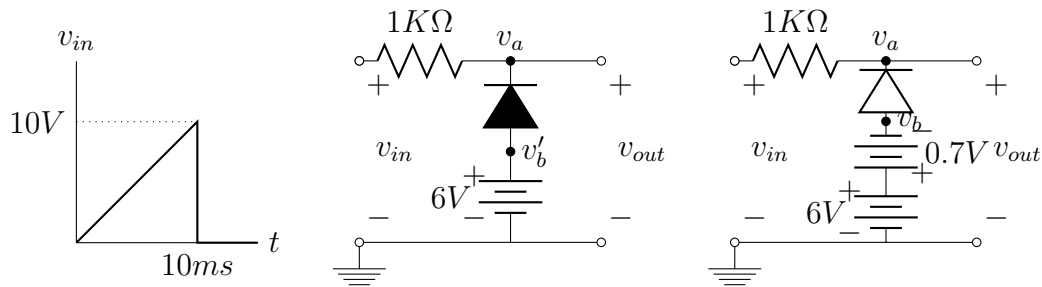
Figure 7.4: (a) Input Waveform (b) Real Diode and its Equivalents

Solution: *Obviously for the real diode to conduct, we must have $v_a \leq 5.3$ because $v_b = 5.3V$. Once it is conducting, the voltage v_a remains $5.3V$. For all voltage values between $10 \geq v_a > 5.3$, the real diode is an open circuit and thus, $v_{in} = v_{out}$. A diagram is depicted in Figure 7.5.*
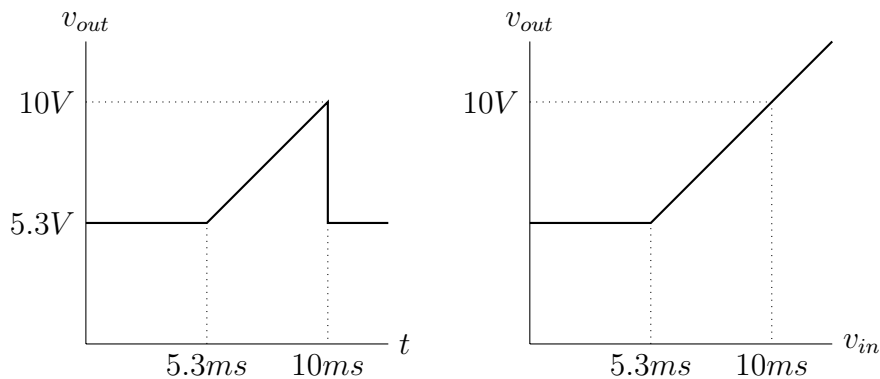
Figure 7.5: (a) Output Waveform and (b) Transfer Function

$\square$

PSpiceLab 7.2 (Wave Shaping) *Re-generate Figure 7.5 using PSpice.*
Solution:
Objectives: (1) Understand wave shaping capability of a diode. (2) Knee voltage can be designed by adding an external DC voltage.
PreLab: This diode circuit clips the low part ($V_{in} \leq 5.3V$) of the input signal.
Lab: The result confirms the analysis.
PostLab: Noticing that the line cutting the lower portion of the wave is NOT a line with zero slop (i.e, a horizontal line), but rather, it is a line with a slope of $1/r$.

□

7.2.2 Zener voltage regulation

To regulate an output signal that contains periodic components, a filter is a good choice to eliminate the periodic contents. However, if an output signal fluctuates in magnitude, then a Zener diode is a good choice to stabilize the output signal. From
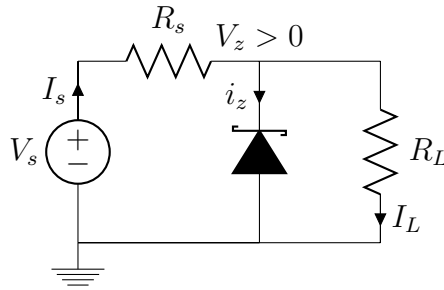
Figure 7.6: Zener Voltage Regulator

Figure 7.6, we have source current and load current, respectively, shown below

$$I_s = \frac{V_s - V_z}{R_s}, \quad I_L = \frac{V_z}{R_L}$$

and by KCL, we have Zener current

$$I_z = I_s - I_L$$

To have the Zener diode working properly, we must make sure the diode is working within its specifications because every Zener diode has its own v_{break} or V_z. To illustrate, we have the following example.

Example 7.2 *Consider the Zener voltage regulator circuit of Figure 7.6, where the Zener diode has values of $3.7mA < I_z < 100mA$, $V_z = 3.3V$; $V_s = 10V, R_s = 1K\Omega$.*

What is the minimal allowable value of R_L?
Solution: *First, we find the source current to be (because V_z is given)*

$$I_s = \frac{10 - 3.3}{1K} = 6.7mA$$

To find the minimal R_L, we need to find maximal I_L, which implies the I_z must be minimal because $I_s = I_z + I_L$ with I_s being fixed. Therefore, we have

$$I_L(max) = 6.7m - 3.7m = 3mA$$

and

$$R_L(min) = \frac{3.3}{3m} = 1.1K\Omega$$

Expand the argument to find $R_L(max)$. **The key, when dealing with Zener diodes, is to place the Zener diode with arrow pointing away from ground, so that the diode sustains a negative voltage across the diode.** *The following example demonstrates why.*

□

Example 7.3 (Zener Diode) *Given the following Zener regulator circuit, if v_{in} fluctuates between $200V$ and $220V$, what is the corresponding v_L? Assume $V_z = 100V$ and $R_z = 20\Omega$.*
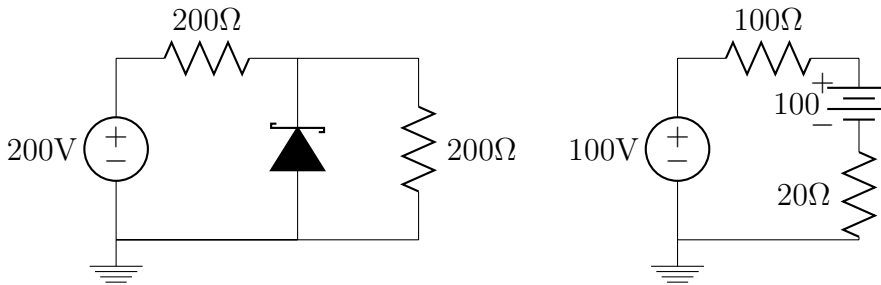
Figure 7.7: (a) A Zener Diode Circuit, (b) Thevenin Equivalent Circuit

Solution: *First, find the Thevenin circuit looking into the Zener diode terminals, leading to $V_T = 100V$ and $R_T = 100\Omega$.*

For $V = 200$, we have

$$v_L = 100 + \frac{100}{120}20 = 116V$$

For V = 220, we have

$$v_L = 110 + \frac{110}{120}20 = 118V$$

Thus 10% increases in input from 200V to 220V, output voltage only changes 1.7%. The trick is to find Thevenin circuit when complex circuits are involved. Thevenin is a handy tool whenever a complicated circuit is encountered.

□

PSpiceLab 7.3 (Load Line Analysis) *Given the following Zener circuit where the Zener diode is modeled by D1N750 (whose break voltage is 4.7V) in Pspice, use DC sweep from 0V to 20V to generate its $i - v$ characteristic. (b) Plot the load line.*
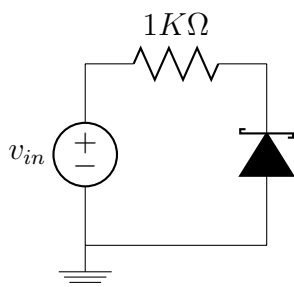
Figure 7.8: Load Line of a Zener Diode Circuit

Solution:
Objectives: (1) Understand reversed bias. (2) Lean DC sweep technique. (3) Draw a load line on PSpice probe window.
PreLab: To draw the load line, see Figure 7.3.
Lab: Follow the steps to find the result as theory has predicted.
PostLab: Why is that the direction of the Zener diode is reversed?[1] What if the circuit involved is more complex than what is shown here?[2]

□

7.2.3   Ideal diode model

Ideal diode means the diode acts as a short circuit when the diode is forward-biased $v_D \geq 0$ and act as an open circuit when reverse-biased $v_D < 0$. Pictorially, we have the following figure to depict an ideal diode. Moreover, another model, which is more accurate than the ideal one shown in red color, is to assume an offset value $0.7V$ directly as shown by the green color in the same figure.

---

[1]Ans: so that we don't need to reverse the polarity of source. Note that the plot is drawn on the first quadrant, not the third quadrant.
[2]Use Thevenin technqiue.
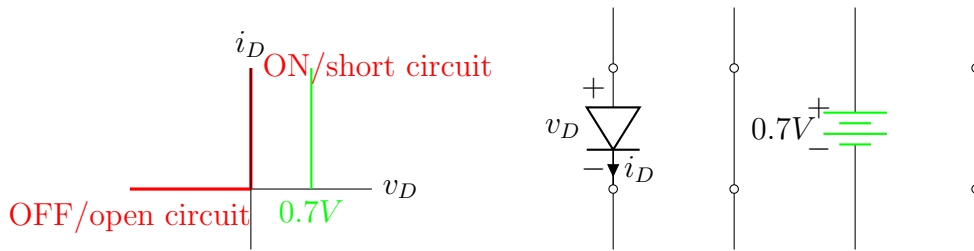
Figure 7.9: Ideal Diode Characteristic

7.2.4   Solving an ideal diode circuit

When solving a circuit containing ideal diodes, we don't know in advance which diode is ON and which is OFF. A practical method to overcome this dilemma, solving a diode circuit, is to
- assume the state of diodes first,
- solve the assumed state condition to find a solution,
- check the consistency of the solution with the assumed states.
- If the result is consistent with the assumed states, the analysis is completed.
- Otherwise, restart from step 1.

Here is an example where ideal diodes are assumed.

Example 7.4 (Analysis for Ideal Diodes) *Given a diode circuit, find the output voltage v_o for (1) $v_1 = v_2 = 5V$ (2) $v_1 = 5V, v_2 = 0V$, (3) $v_1 = v_2 = 0V$. Assume the diodes are ideal.*
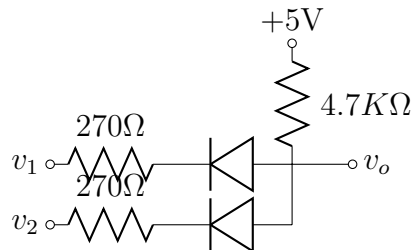
Figure 7.10: Circuit Diagram for Example 7.3

Solution: *There are $2^2 = 4$ possible scenarios for these two diodes to consider and they are*
(1) Assume D_1 is OFF and D_2 is OFF, meaning both diodes are open circuits and thus no current flowing through 4.7Ω resistor. So $v_o = 5$ confirms that both diodes must be OFF since v_0 is not larger than 5V.
(2) Assume D_1 is ON and D_2 is OFF, meaning D_1 is short circuit while D_2 remains open. Under this assumption, we should have current passing through D_1, but it is

Table 7.1: State Combinations of Two Diodes

D_1	D_2
ON	ON
ON	OFF
OFF	ON
OFF	OFF

zero for $i_1 = \frac{5-5}{4970} = 0$. This is the contradiction we seek – NO GO.

(3) Assume D_1 is OFF and D_2 is ON, meaning D_2 is short circuit while D_1 remains open. Under this assumption, we should have current passing through D_2 and it is $i_1 = \frac{5-0}{4970} = 1mA$, which confirms the second trial assumption is correct. Thus, $v_0 = 5 - 4.72 = 0.27V$ Notice that if the second trial were in correct then we would have to go for a third trial and a forth trial.

(3) Assume D_1 is ON and so is D_2, meaning both are conducting currents. $i_1 = i_2 \frac{5}{4970} = 1mA$ and $v_0 = 0.27V$.

Actually, this is an AND gate in the view of digital logic.

□

If a knee voltage, say $0.7V$ is assumed for a diode, then we need to take the given knee voltage into consideration. This is the topic of next section.

7.2.5 Piecewise-linear diode model

If we need a more accurate diode model than the ideal model, a linear model, inspired by Figure 7.2 and introduced here, is usually considered. To derive, we write the linear model satisfying KVL as

$$v = iR_D + V_D \tag{7.2}$$

where R_D denotes the diode resistance and V_D denotes the knee voltage of the diode. It is verifiable that equation (7.2) is the line in Figure 7.11, R_D is the inverse of the slope and V_D is an intersection point of equation (7.2) with x-axis. By varying the slope, we can have equation (7.2) approximate the curve in Figure 7.2c, representing the forward bias curve.

Example 7.5 *Given the following piecewise linear model, Figure 7.12, find the corresponding circuit model.*

Solution: *First, find the resistor for segments $0a$ and ab by inverting the corresponding slope of segments. Second, find the intersection of each segment at x-axis, which is zero and -2, respectively.*

□
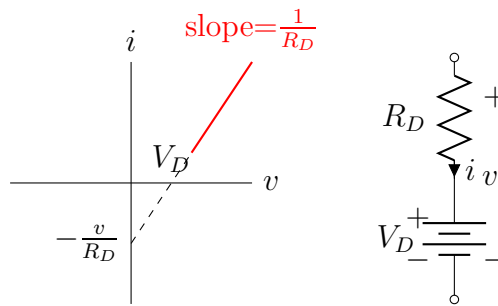
Figure 7.11: A Linear Function and Corresponding Circuit Model
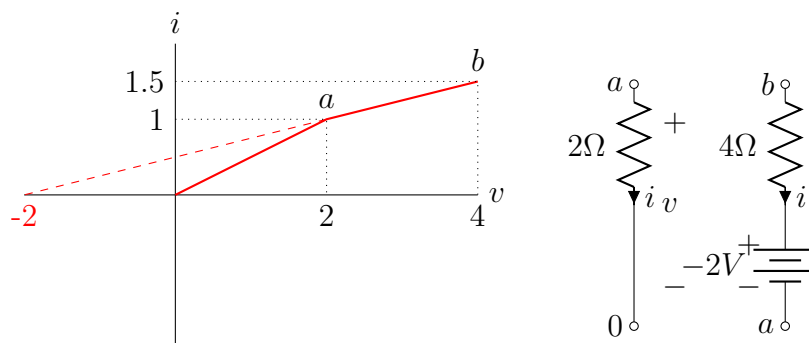
Figure 7.12: A Linear Function and Corresponding Circuit Model

In sum, we can use a piecewise-linear model to approximate the real model in Figure 7.2. However, another much simple linear model (vertical line) is often seen in application too. With that information, we have established a piecewise-linear model
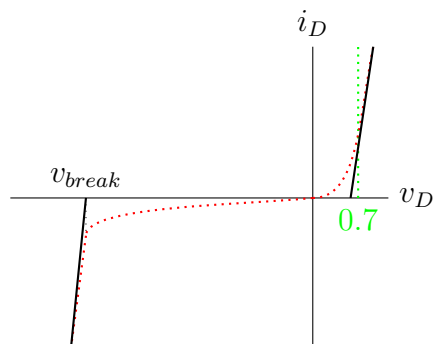
Figure 7.13: Graphic Model to Approximate a Real Diode Characteristic

for a real diode and summarized in Figure 7.14.
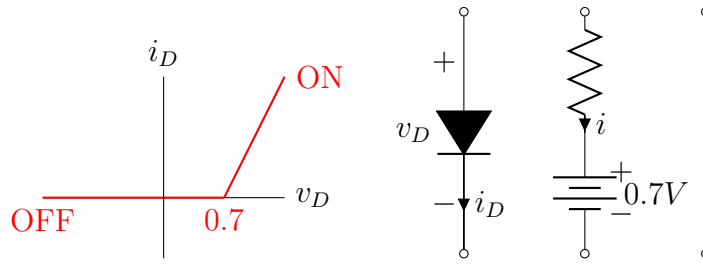
Figure 7.14: Piecewise-Linear Diode Characteristic

7.3   Small-Signal Circuit Models

Since a real diode has a nonlinear v_D-i_D characteristic, the piecewise linear model provides an excellent technique to model a diode element in a circuit. We use a DC voltage to bias a nonlinear device at an operating point (as seen in the large-signal analysis) and then linearize the nonlinear device at the operating point. In a diode model, a dynamic resistor is therefore found. To see this, we recall the Shockley equation

$$i_D = I_s(exp(\frac{v_D}{nV_T}) - 1) \approx I_s exp(\frac{v_D}{nV_T}) = I_{DQ} + i_d \tag{7.3}$$

Linearizing, we have

$$\frac{di_D}{dv_D}|_{V_{DQ}} = \underbrace{I_s exp(\frac{v_{DQ}}{nV_T})}_{I_{DQ}} \frac{1}{nV_T} = \frac{I_{DQ}}{nV_T} = \frac{1}{r_D}$$

Taking reciprocal of the above equation yields

$$r_D = \frac{nV_T}{I_{DQ}} \tag{7.4}$$

The linearization technique involving Q-point determination and AC excitation is illustrated in the following diagram, Figure 7.15.

To implement the idea, we have the following circuit displayed in Figure 7.16 where C_1 is called **bypassing capacitor** whose capacitance is so large that it serves as a short circuit to the AC signal while functioning as an open circuit for DC signal. The quiescent operating point (Q-point) is unaffected by AC source or the load. Therefore, conceptually, we have the following two circuits. The significance of this demonstration is that a nonlinear diode circuit is transformed into a linear circuit and the circuit theory from Chapters $1 \sim 6$ can be readily applied. To continue, the voltage gain is easily obtained as

$$A_v = \frac{v_{out}}{v_{in}} = \frac{R_p}{R + R_p} < 1$$
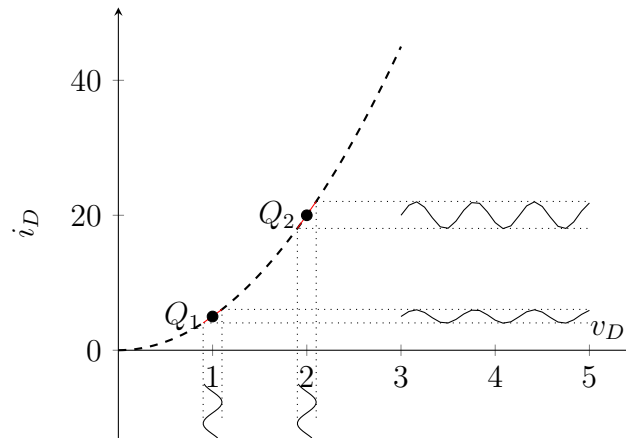
Figure 7.15: Linearization, Q-Points and Magnification
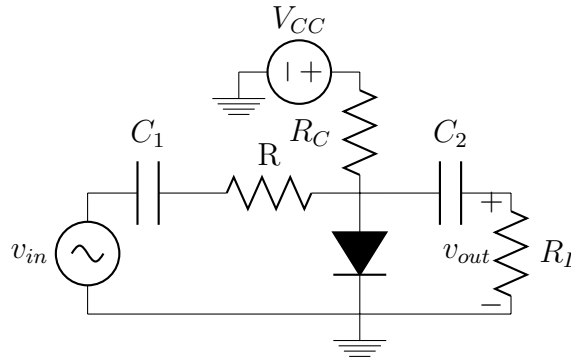
Figure 7.16: Nonlinear Diode Circuit
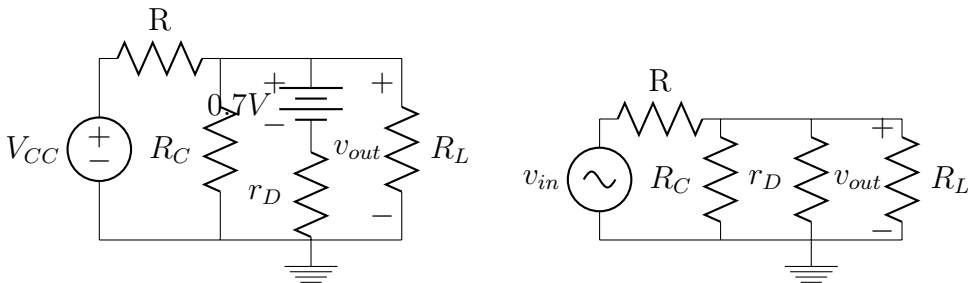
Figure 7.17: (a) DC Bias Circuit and (b) AC Excitation Circuit

where $\frac{1}{R_p} = \frac{1}{R_C} + \frac{1}{r_d} + \frac{1}{R_L}$. Since the gain is less than unity, it is called a voltage attenuator.

Figure 7.17a is known as **large-signal analysis** and Figure 7.17b is known as **small-signal analysis** whose signal magnitude is always smaller than knee voltage $0.7V$ and thus named.

Example 7.6 (Bypassing Capacitor) *Given Figure 7.18 shown below, find the voltage across 2Ω.*
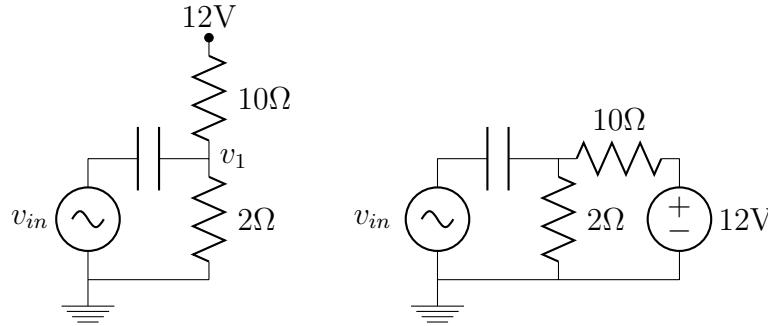
Figure 7.18: Circuit Diagram for Example 7.6

Solution: *Since an equivalent circuit is shown, we can applied superposition technique to solve it. For AC analysis, we have $v_1 = v_1'$. For the DC analysis, the capacitor becomes an open circuit and the voltage across 2Ω is $v_1'' = 2V$. The total voltage across 2Ω is than $v_1 = v_1' + 2V$. The example shows that bias DC source and small signal*
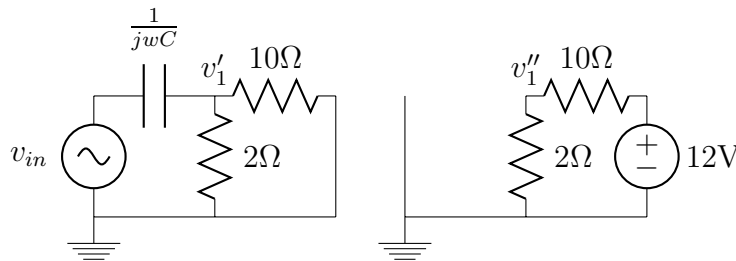
Figure 7.19: Small Signal Circuit and Bias Circuit

AC source using bypassing capacitor enable the circuit to be treated independently as two sources in a linear system that superposition is applied. **This means the DC source is used to find Q-point and AC source is used to find magnification.**

□

Example 7.7 *Given the following diode circuit in Figure 7.20, find (a) voltage of R_L due to bias circuit and the voltage due to small signal. Assume $V_T = 25$, $n = 2$ for silicon and a real diode model is given by knee voltage $V = 0.7$ and $R = 10\Omega$.*
Solution: *For the DC bias analysis to find Q-point, we have*

$$i_D = \frac{9 - 0.7}{10 + 2000} = 4.18mA$$
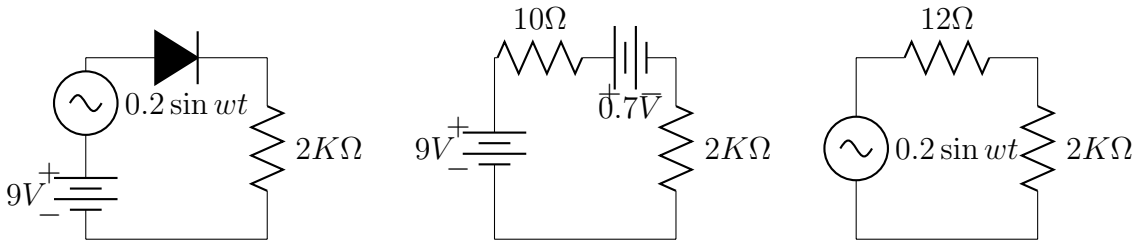
Figure 7.20: (a) A Diode Circuit (b) DC Bias Circuit and (c) AC Excitation Circuit

resulting in $V_{R_L} = 8.358V$. Also by equation (7.4), we obtain

$$r_D = \frac{2 \times 25}{4.18} = 12\Omega$$

For AC analysis, we have

$$v_{R_L} = \frac{0.2 \sin wt \times 2000}{2012} = 0.199 \sin wt$$

Thus, $v_{R_L} = 8.358 + 0.199 \sin wt$.

□

So far, we have picked up knowledge in each section, a solving technique, for a diode circuit. Readers should be familiar with these techniques, because these are the commonly seen approaches to solve a diode circuit.

7.4 Nonlinear Circuit Applications

Diodes can have many applications that are often seen in applications. The basic idea behind all these is based on the binary state of diodes – ON and OFF states.

7.4.1 Rectifier circuits

Consider a rectifier circuit with a capacitor in parallel with an output load. First,
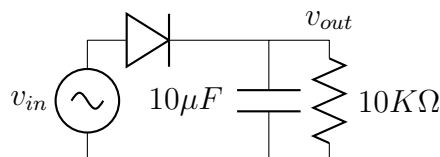
Figure 7.21: Half-Wave Rectifier with Smoothing Capacitor

we will consider the circuit without the capacitor. The diode will conduct every half cycle, resulting in a half-wave rectification as shown in Figure 7.22. Now adding a capacitor, then during the diode OFF state, the RC circuit to the right of diode is discharging and thus the output voltage drops slowly until the diode is ON again. So this is the ideal how an AC voltage is converted into a DC voltage that supplies direct current to home appliances that requires a DC source such as personal computers.

A continue research to the rectifier problem is to study the time constant $\tau = RC$ of the charging and discharging process. Since we have learned that it takes 5 time constant $T = 5\tau$ to charge or discharge fully. For the example shown, it takes $T = 5 \cdot 10K \cdot 10\mu = 500ms$ to discharge and $T = 5 \cdot 5 \cdot 10\mu = 250\mu s$ to charge (here we assume the diode resistance is 5Ω.) Obviously, the computation says that it charges instantly.
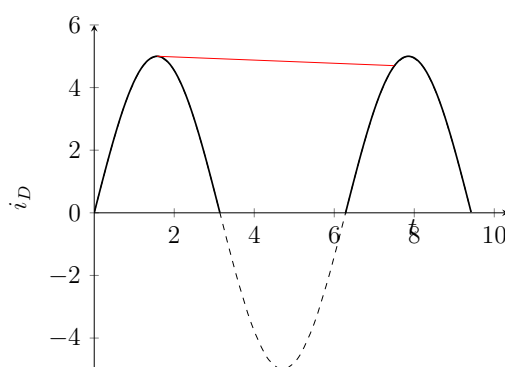
Figure 7.22: Half-Wave Rectifier Waveform

PSpiceLab 7.4 (Full-Wave Rectifier) *Based on Figure 7.21, reverse the input AC source and plot the output voltage to see if any difference is observed when compared with Figure 7.22.*[3] *Now design a full-wave rectifier.*
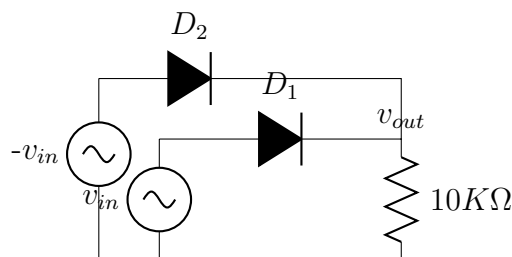
Figure 7.23: Full-Wave Rectifier

Solution:

---

[3]Ans: The entire curve is reversed

Objectives: From half-wave to full wave rectifiers.

PreLab: Study the idea half-wave rectifier and notice that knee voltage is assumed zero.

Lab: Follow the steps to gather ideas. It is noted that the peak value is less than an idea diode case. Why?[4]

PostLab: What will result if a smoothing capacitor is placed at the output terminal?[5]

□

7.4.2 Limiting circuits (diode clippers)

A clipper circuit clips off the some part of the input signals. In this section, we assume the diodes have $0.7V$ threshold/knee voltage.
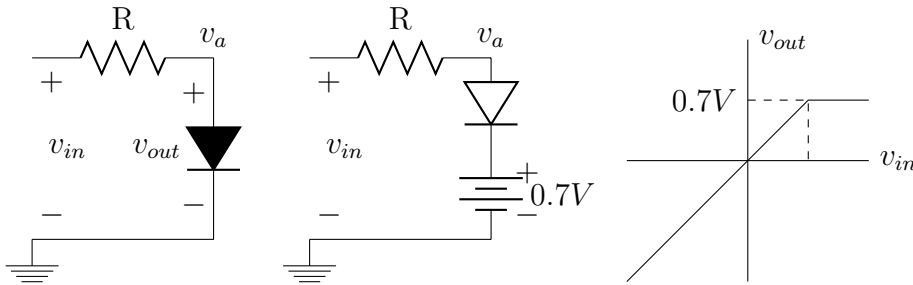
Figure 7.24: Positive Clipper Circuit

Based on the diode assumption, as long as v_a is less than $0.7V$, the diode is open (because it take more than 0.7 to make the diode admit conducting), meaning no voltage drop on the R resistor, therefore, $v_{in} = v_{out}$. When $v_a \geq 0.7V$ then the output will remain at $0.7V$ of the assumed voltage.
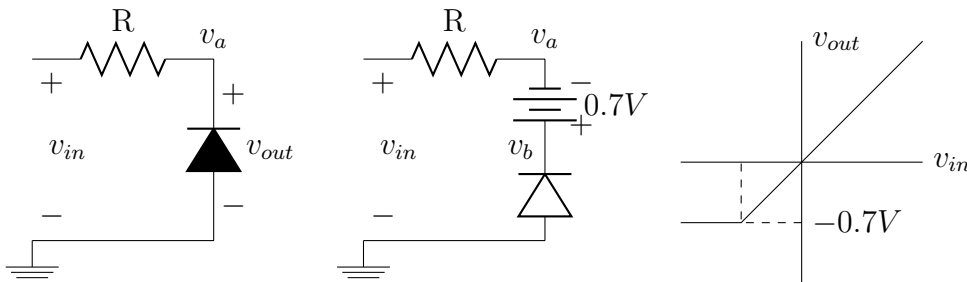
Figure 7.25: Negative Clipper Circuit

---

[4]Ans: This is because a real diode have offset value about $0.7V$.

[5]Ans: Then a similar result as shown in Figure 7.22 will smooth the curve.

Now for Figure 7.25, the direction of the diode is reversed. Whenever v_a is higher than $-0.7V$, the ideal diode remains open (because $0 - v_b < 0$) and no current flows through the branch, resulting $v_{in} = v_{out}$. When $v_a < -0.7$, the diode conducts and a drop of $-0.7V$ appears.
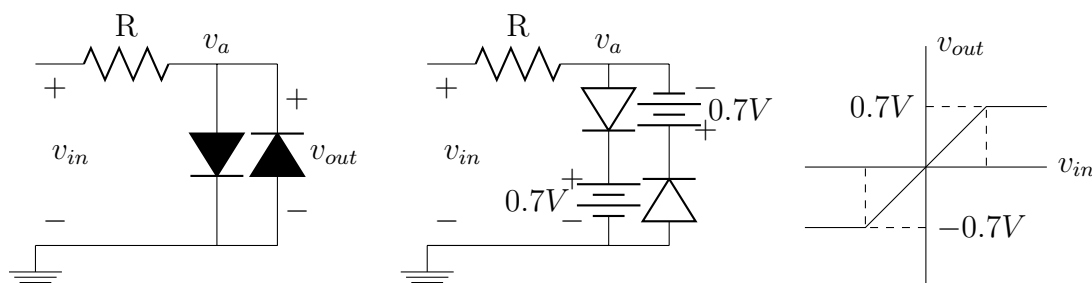
Figure 7.26: Both Sides Clipper Circuit

For Figure 7.26, the reasoning for this clipper circuit is the combined notions of those taught in the previous examples.

PSpiceLab 7.5 (Clipper Circuit) *Given the following clipper circuit where the real diode is modeled by D1N4002 in PSpice, (a) find the clipped waveform v_{out}, given the AC voltage. (b) Plot the transfer function $\frac{v_{out}}{v_{in}}$.*
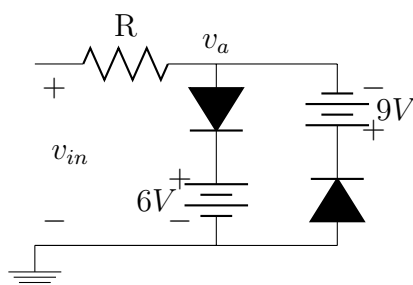
Figure 7.27: Circuit Diagram for PSpiceLab 7.5

Solution:
Objectives: (1) Understand how a clipper circuit works. (2) Understand polarity of knee voltage of real diode can make a difference.
PreLab: Review the analytical skills for clipper circuits.
Lab: Follow the steps to see the result.
PostLab: What happens if the direction of diodes or the direction of DC battery is reversed?[6]

□

---

[6]It will clip the negative peak.

7.4.3   Clamper circuits

For the circuit below, it shifts up or down the input AC signal by adding a DC signal to the input and clamps it at the new position so that the peak of the AC signal takes a specified value. In this example, the output voltage is given by $v_{out} = v_{in} + 6V$. In other words, the output is clipped to $10V$. Notice that the capacitance of the capacitor is so large that its impedance $\frac{1}{jwC}$ is small for the AC signal. To have a
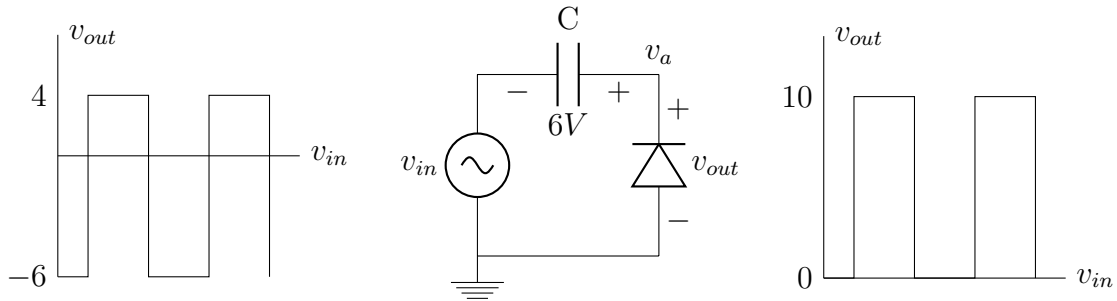
Figure 7.28: Positive Clamper Circuit

negative clamper, just reverse the C polarity and the diodes.

PSpiceLab 7.6 (Clamper Circuit) *Given the following clamp circuit where the real diode is modeled by part D1N4002 in PSpice library, plot the clamped waveform* v_{out}*, given the AC voltage.*
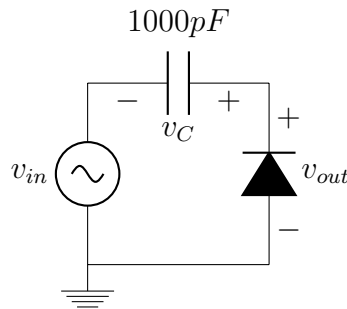
Figure 7.29: Circuit Diagram for PSpiceLab 7.6

Solution:
Objectives: (1) Understand how a clamp circuit works. (2) Understand the difference between Clipper and clamp.
PreLab: Review the analytical skill involved in clamp circuit.
Lab: Follow the steps to find results as expected.
PostLab: What happens if the direction of diodes or the direction of DC battery is

reversed?[7]

□

7.5 Saturation and Clipping

When studying a nonlinear device, we normally want to operate the device at linear regions where linearization is applicable, nonlinear circuits becomes linear circuits and, therefore, circuit theory can be applied. However, we also need to understand some phenomena when the device is operated at extremes. This is better understood by plotting those phenomena. One is **clipping** associated to the property of the device itself and the other is **saturation** associated to the output signals.

Here we assume a Q-point is established and it is located at the origin in Figure 7.30. We also assume that the device saturates when $v_{in} > 3$. Saturation occurs in the region above Q-point whilst clipping occurs in the region below Q-point.
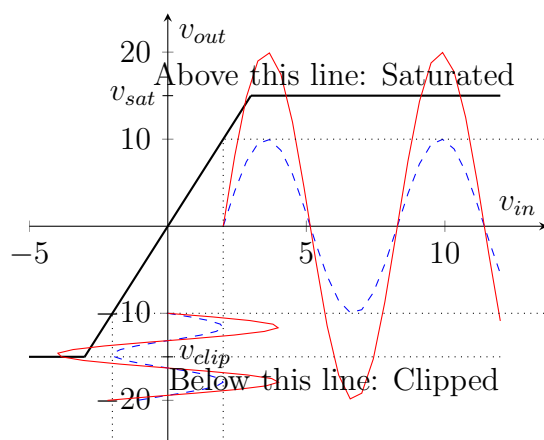
Figure 7.30: Saturation and Clipping

---

[7]It will clamp the negative peak.

7.6   Recap

In this chapter, we have explored
• Nonlinear property of diodes.
• Forward bias and reverse bias are notions of relativity.
• Different model to mimic the behavior of a diode.
• DC bias circuit to establish Q-point. This is known as large-signal analysis.
• Linearization of an exponential function is used to find the small-signal circuit.
• Small-signal AC excitation circuit for amplification, but $A < 1$.
• Transformation from a diode circuit to the corresponding linear resistor circuit and vice versa.
• In a clamper circuit, if the diode pointing away from ground, it is a positive clamper. If the diode pointing toward ground, it is a negative clamper.
• Usage of bypassing capacitors.
• The meaning of saturation and clipping.

7.7 Problems

Problem 7.1 *Find the values of I and V for the circuit of Figure 7.31 assuming that the diodes are ideal.*
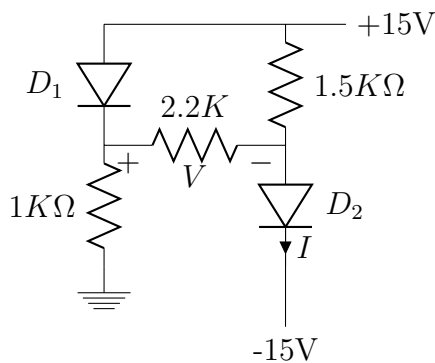
Figure 7.31: Circuit Diagram for Problem 7.1

Answer: $I = 5mA, V = 5V$.

Problem 7.2 *For the circuit of Figure 7.32, assume that D_1 and D_2 are ideal diodes. (a) For what range of values of V_1 is diode D_1 forward-biased? (b) For what range of values of V_1 is diode D_2 forward-biased?*
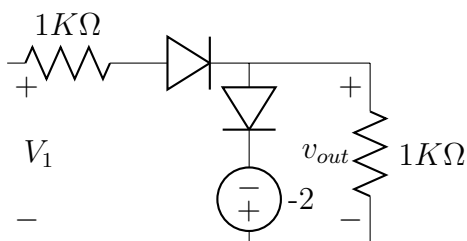
Figure 7.32: Circuit Diagram for Problem 7.2

Answer: *(a) $V_1 \geq 0$, (b) $V_1 \geq 4$.*

Problem 7.3 *Two identical silicon diodes are connected as indicated in Figure 7.33. Assume the diodes have a threshold voltage of 0.5 V. (a) Find and plot the output voltage V_o versus V_{in} for $-6V \leq V_{in} \leq 6V$. (b) What is the maximum current flowing in Figure 7.33? (c) If the 5 Ω resistor is rated at 1 W, what will happen if case (b) occurs?*
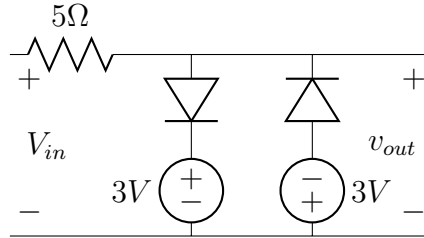
Figure 7.33: Circuit Diagram for Problem 7.3

Answer:*(a) A plot is displayed. (b) $I_{max} = 0.5A$. (c) Burned out.*
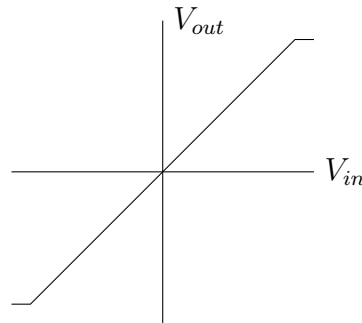
Figure 7.34: Solution for Problem 7.3

Problem 7.4 *For a diode circuit as shown in Figure 7.35 with $v_{in} = 6\cos wt$, (a) find and plot the v_{out} using PSpice. (b) Find and plot the v_{out} using PSpice when R_2 is removed.*

Answer: *(a) Point a is conducting only if $V_a \geq 1$ and $v_{out} = 1$; otherwise, the diode is off and the current goes through R_2. This means v_{out} follows v_{in} with magnitude reduced $\frac{R_2}{R_1+R_2}V_{in}$ when $V_a < 1$. (b) When R_2 is removed, there exists only one path. The output is same as (a) when conducting, but for non-conducting, v_{out} follows v_{in}. Use PSpice to verify the result.*

Problem 7.5 *The circuit below, Figure 7.36, contains two real silicon diodes. (Assume $V_T = 0.7$ V.) (a) For switch S being closed, estimate I_A and I_B for $V_A = -2, -1, 0, 1$, and 2 V. (b) For switch S open, estimate I_A and I_B for $V_A = 1V$.*
Answer: *For S being closed, a table showing the results*
For S being open, $V_P = 1.7$, $I_p = 4mA$, $I_B = 1mA$, $I_A = 3mA$.
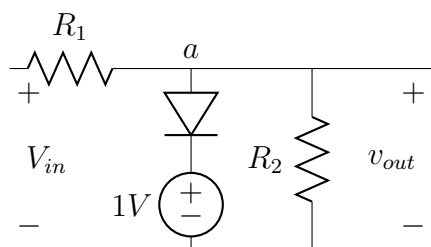
Figure 7.35: Circuit Diagram for Problem 7.4
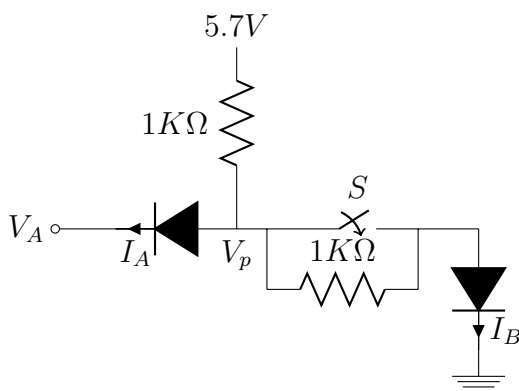
Figure 7.36: Circuit Diagram for Problem 7.5

V_A	I_A	I_B
-2	7mA	0A
-1	6mA	0A
0	2.5mA	2.5mA
1	0 mA	5mA
2	0 mA	5mA

Figure 7.37: Table for Problem 7.5

Problem 7.6 *For the circuit in Figure 7.38, sketch i_D for the following conditions: (a) Use the ideal diode model. (b) Use the ideal model with offset $V_D = 0.7$. (c) Use the piecewise linear approximation with $r_D = 1K\Omega$, $V_D = 0.7V$.*
Answer:(a) $i_D = 10/10K = 1mA$. (b) $i_D = 10 - 0.7/10K = 0.94mA$. (c) $i_D = 10 - 0.7/11K = 1mA$.

Problem 7.7 *Assuming the diodes in the circuit of Figure 7.40 are ideal, answer the following questions: (a) The two cases where both diodes are on and off are impossible, why? (b) Find the label voltages V_{ab}. (c) Find the currents I_1, I_2. (Hint: Voltage at point a and point b.)*
Answer: *(a) That both diodes are ON leads to $2 \neq -1$ and that both diodes are*
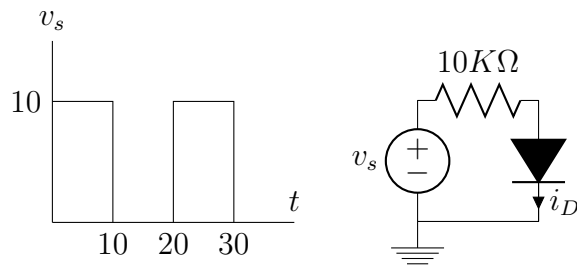
Figure 7.38: Circuit Diagram for Problem 7.6
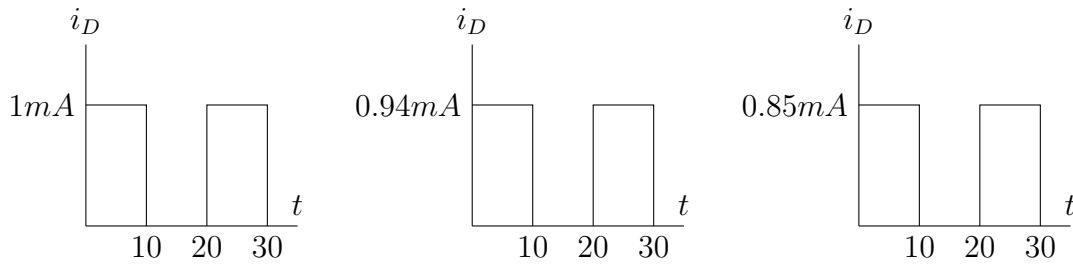
Figure 7.39: Solution for Problem 7.6
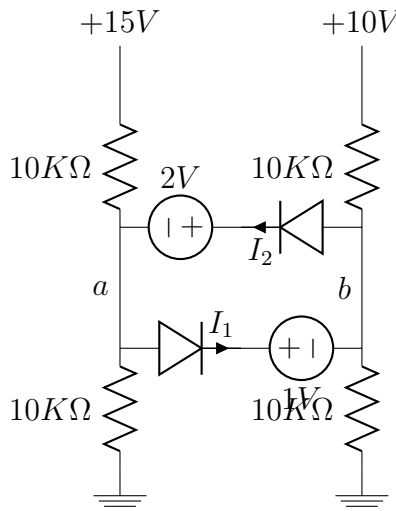
Figure 7.40: Circuit Diagram for Problem 7.7

OFF leads to $V_a = 7.5 > V_b = 5V$. Thus D_1 must be ON and D_2 must be OFF. (b) $V_{ab} = 1V$. (c) $I_1 = 0.15mA$.

Problem 7.8 *Assume that the practical diode in Figure 7.41 has the characteristic of $R_d = 3.66\Omega$, and $V_d = 0.8V$, where $C = \infty$. Please find (a) the circuit for dc bias analysis. (b) The circuit for AC analysis. (c) The voltage drop of 90Ω due to DC voltage. (d) The voltage drop of 90Ω due to AC voltage.*
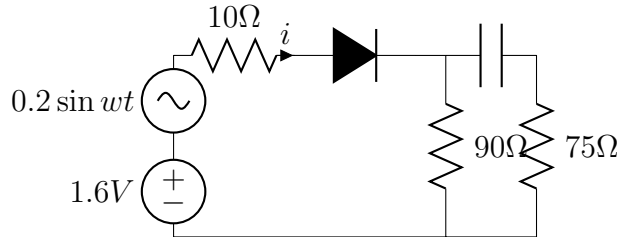
Figure 7.41: Circuit Diagram for Problem 7.8

Answer:
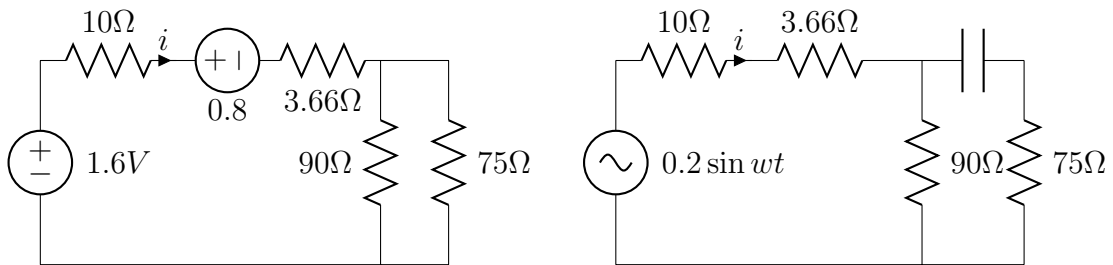
Figure 7.42: Solution for Problem 7.8

(c) $V_{90\Omega} = 0.6946V$. (d) $V_{90\Omega} = 149mV$.

Problem 7.9 *For the circuit of Figure 7.43, find the output voltage V_{out} if the input voltage V_1 and V_2 are as follows: (a) $V_1 = 5V, V_2 = 5V$. (b) $V_1 = 5V, V_2 = 0V$ (c) $V_1 = 0V, V_2 = 5V$. (b) $V_1 = 0V, V_2 = 0V$. (e) What type of logic gate is it? We assume ideal diodes in this example.*
Answer: (a) $V_{out} = 4.76V$. (b) $V_{out} = 4.545V$. (c) $V_{out} = 4.545V$. (d) $V_{out} = 0V$. (e) OR gate.

Problem 7.10 *Determine whether the ideal diode in Figure 7.44 assuming that the diodes are ideal.*
Answer: Yes, it is ON.

Problem 7.11 *Assuming the diode in the circuit of Figure 7.45 is ideal, plot the v_{R_2} voltages for the following cases. (a) $R_1 = R_2$. (b) $R_1 = R_2/2$. (c) $R_1/2 = R_2$. (d) R_2 is removed. (e) What is the ratio of R_1/R_2 so that the diode will critically conduct?*
Answer: (a) and (c) are conducting but with 2.5 and 1.67 magnitudes. (b) and (d) are clipped at $+3V$. (e) $R_1/R_2 = 2/3$.
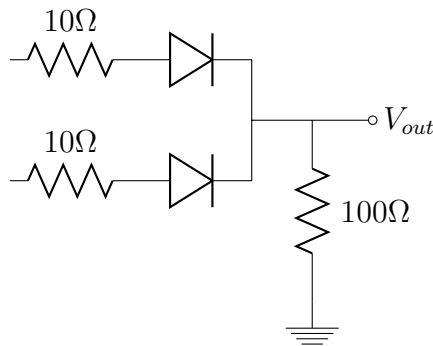
Figure 7.43: Circuit Diagram for Problem 7.9
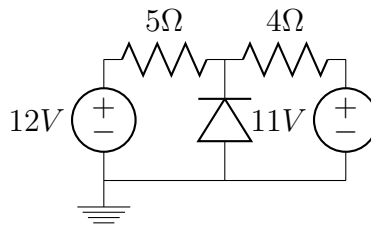
Figure 7.44: Circuit Diagram for Problem 7.10
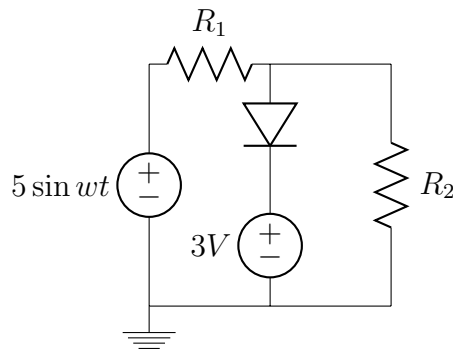
Figure 7.45: Circuit Diagram for Problem 7.11

Problem 7.12 *Assuming the diode in the circuit of Figure 7.46 is ideal, find the range for v_1 such that (a) diode D_1 is forward-biased. (b) Find the range for v_1 such that diode D_2 is forward-biased.*
Answer: *(a) $V_1 \geq 0V$. (v) $v_1 \geq 4V$.*

Problem 7.13 *Given a pn junction with n-type material connected to ground, a _____ (positive, negative) voltage applying to the p-type material will result in (a) forward bias and (b) reverse bias, respectively.*
Expand your argument to the case where p-type material is connected to ground.
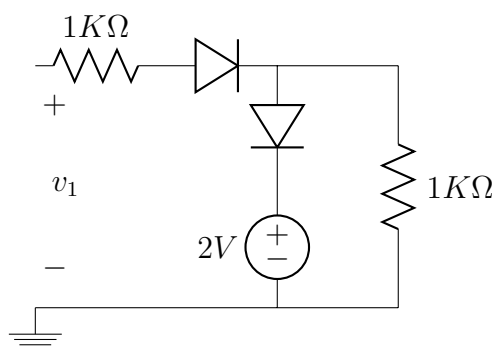
Figure 7.46: Circuit Diagram for Problem 7.12

Solution: *(a) +V (b) −V.*

Problem 7.14 *Given the following circuits with sinusoidal inputs Figure7.47, plot the corresponding outputs.*
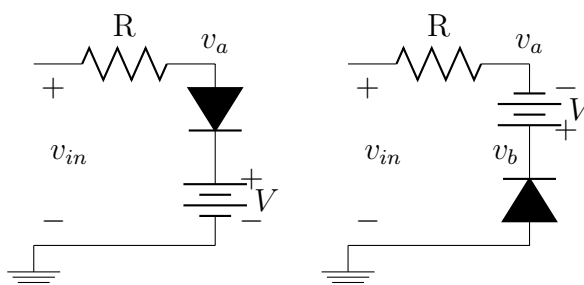
Figure 7.47: (a) Positive-Biased Clipper (b) Negative-Biased Clipper

Answer: *(a) Clips the input signal at $V + 0.7V$. (b) Clips the input signal at $-V - 0.7V$.*

Problem 7.15 *Given the following circuits with sinusoidal inputs Figure 7.48, plot the corresponding outputs.*
Answer: *(a) Shift the input signal down by $V + 0.7V$. (b) Shift the input signal up $V + 0.7V$.*

Problem 7.16 *To forward bias a diode, the anode should be made more _____ (positive, negative) than the cathode. When a diode is forward biased, how many volts are there across its terminals?*
Answer: *(a) Positive (b) $0.7V$.*

Problem 7.17 *Assume a circuit element has the following $v-i$ characteristics shown in Figure 7.49. Find (a) the equivalent resistors for a and b segments respectively. (b)*
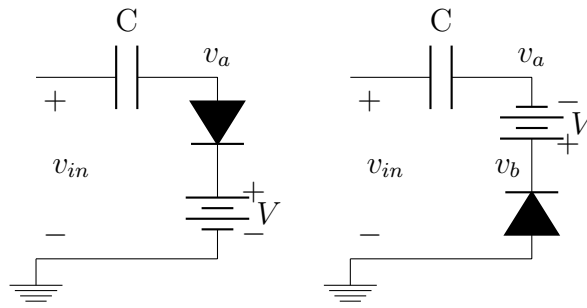
Figure 7.48: (a) Negative-Biased Clamper (b) Positive-Biased Clamper
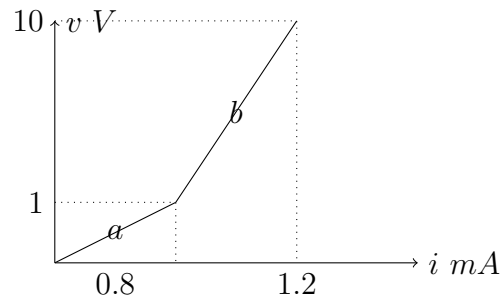
Figure 7.49: Diagram for Problem 7.17

Find the general solving technique from part (a).

Answer: *(a) Since $i = gv + c$, substituting two points from a to find $g = 0.0013$ (i.e., $r = 800$) and $c = 0$. By the same techniques, we have $r = 44.44\Omega$ and $c = -0.7356$. (b) $i = gv + c = \frac{v}{r} + c$ thus $v = ri - rc$.*

Problem 7.18 *Assume the nonlinear element in Figure 7.50 has the following $V_x - I_x$ property listed below. Find the V_c and I_x.*

Answer: *Find the Thevenin circuit seen from the nonlinear element. $V_T = 0.5\,V$ and $R_T = 250\Omega$. $I_x = 1.15mA$ and $V_c = 0.29\,V$.*

$I_x(mA)$	0.4	1.15	1.65
$V_x(V)$	0.1	0.21	0.33
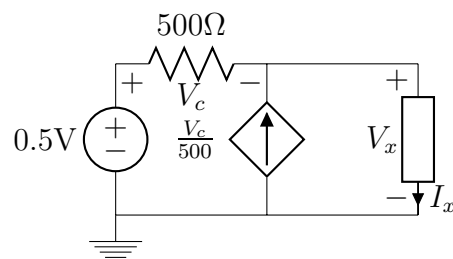
Figure 7.50: Circuit Diagram for Problem 7.18

Chapter 8

Operational Amplifiers

An operational amplifier (op-amp) is a DC-coupled, high-gain electronic voltage amplifier with a differential input and a single-ended output. Depending on its application, there is a total of 4 amplifier models characterized by their input impedances, output impedances and parameter gains. An op-amp produces an output voltage that is, at least, 10^6 times larger than the voltage difference between its input terminals. **The gain of amplification is largely determined by the external components, not by variations in the op-amp itself** and this is precisely the reason gaining its popularity. Operational amplifiers are important building block in an electronic device.

8.1 Fundamentals

Amplifiers can be represented by four different models: voltage amplifier, current amplifier, transconductance amplifier and transresistance amplifier.

8.1.1 Voltage amplifier

Let's consider the following circuit that involves a voltage-controlled voltage source (part E in PSpice).

where v_s and R_s represent a Thevenin equivalent circuit, R_i is input resistance, R_o is output resistance of the amplifier and R_L is the load resistance. A_v is called the open-circuit voltage gain of the amplifier. To continue, we define the open-circuit voltage gain to be

$$A_v = \frac{v_o}{v_i}, \quad \text{when} \quad R_L = \infty$$

and the current gain

$$A_i = \frac{i_o}{i_i} = \frac{\frac{v_o}{R_L}}{\frac{v_i}{R_i}} = A_v \frac{R_i}{R_L}$$
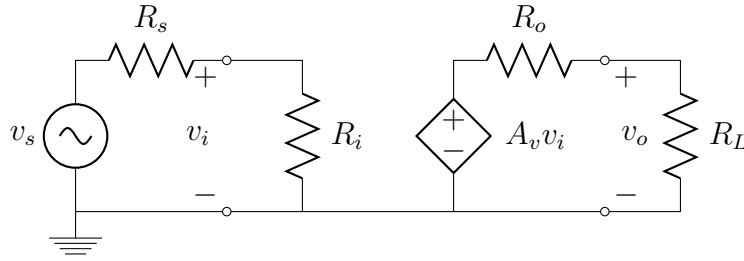
Figure 8.1: A Voltage Amplifier

But in a real application, due to loading effect, we have

$$A_{v,real} = \frac{v_o}{v_i} = \frac{A_v \frac{v_s R_i}{R_s+R_i} \frac{R_L}{R_o+R_L}}{v_s \frac{R_i}{R_s+R_i}} = A_v (\frac{R_L}{R_o + R_L}) \tag{8.1}$$

$$A_{i,real} = \frac{i_o}{i_i} = \frac{A_v \frac{v_s R_i}{R_s+R_i} \frac{1}{R_o+R_L}}{v_s \frac{1}{R_s+R_i}} = A_v (\frac{R_i}{R_o + R_L}) \tag{8.2}$$

Observing (8.1), it is readily seen that $A_{v,real} < A_v$ because the resistance ratio is less than one. However, an ideal op-amp has very high input impedance (for derivational purpose, it is often assumed to be infinite) and low output impedance (which is assumed to be zero). To see this, if we assume $R_i = \infty$ and $R_o = 0$ then $A_{v,real} = A_v$. With that in mind, we formally state that for an ideal amplifier we assume
• A negative feedback is used. (An op-amp almost always uses this structure.)
• $R_i = \infty$ ie., open when compared to R_s.
• $R_o = 0$ ie., shorted when compared to R_L.
It is readily seen that under the assumption on the amplifier's input and output resistances, the ideal voltage amplifier takes the source voltage v_s directly across the input terminals, multiplies it by A and reflects it across the output terminals so that it is independent of load resistance R_L. We, therefore from the gain equation (8.1), have $A_{v,real} = A_v$.

Furthermore, these two assumptions lead to the **differential input current is zero and the differential input voltage is zero too**, which is called the **summing-point constraint**, also known as virtual short circuit or equally known as virtual open circuit. Thus, we have the following ideal voltage amplifier model shown in Figure 8.2.

It is readily seen from Figure 8.2b that the output voltage is determined by the differential input voltage $v_+ - v_-$, meaning the output voltage is positive if v_+ is higher than v_-; otherwise the output voltage is negative (i.e., 180° phase shift). Another interpretation to this is if the input voltage polarities, with respect to each other, confirm with the labeled signs in the symbol, the output voltage is positive; otherwise it is negative. In short, if actual signals comparison and labeled polarities comparison
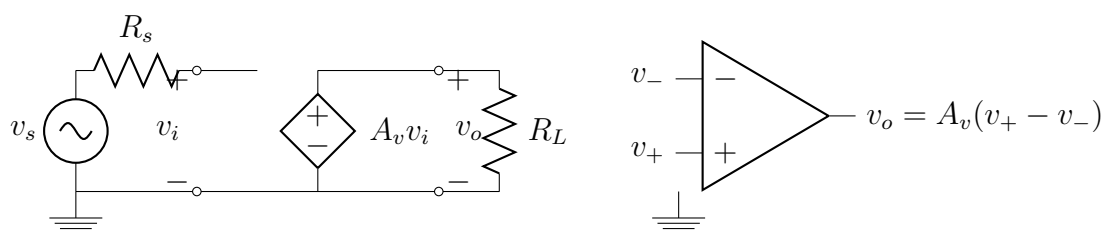
Figure 8.2: (a) An Ideal Voltage Amplifier (b) Symbol

are
consistence $\rightarrow$ positive output
inconsistence $\rightarrow$ negative output
The following example demonstrates the idea.

Example 8.1 (Input/Output Polarity Relationship) *Given the following Figure 8.3, determine the output waveform.*
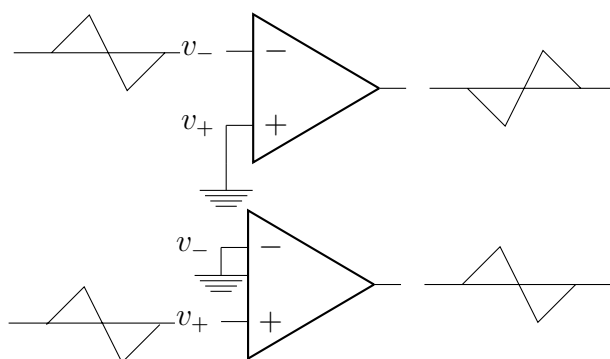
Figure 8.3: (a) Inverting Amplifier and (b) Non-Inverting Amplifier

Solution: *(a) Observing the first half-cycle, the input voltage polarity is inconsistent with the labeled sign. Therefore the output voltage is negative. However, over the second half-cycle, the input voltage polarity confirms with the labeled sign and thus the output voltage is positive. (b) Using the same reasoning, case (b) is easily verified. Another method is by calculation. For example for case (b), on the first half-cycle, say 1-0=1, so the output is positive. On the second half-cycle, say -1-0=-1, so the output is negative.*

Since the PSpice student version has limitations (2) on number of op-amps being used in the free version, we may, instead, use the voltage-controlled voltage source (i.e., part E in PSpice) to overcome the limitations. In such case, we set the gain of part E to $1E10$, when using voltage-controlled voltage source to substitute the op-amps. Note that in PSpice student version only UA741 is available.

8.1.2   Current amplifier

The second model involves a current-controlled current source (part F in PSpice).
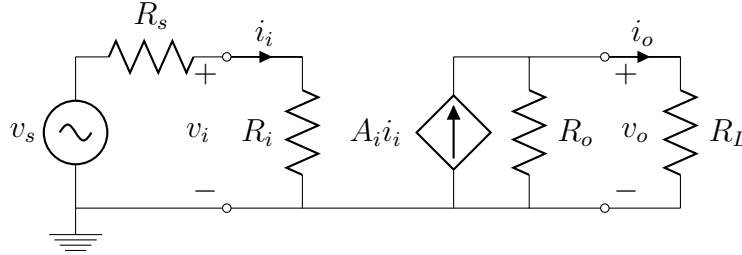
Figure 8.4: A Current Amplifier

where A_i is called the short-circuit current gain and the external circuits are same as those in Figure 8.1. The real current gain for this current amplifier is

$$A_{i,real} = \frac{i_o}{i_i} = \frac{A_i i_i \frac{R_o}{R_o + R_L}}{i_i} = A_i \frac{R_o}{R_o + R_L}$$

and the real voltage gain is

$$A_{v,real} = \frac{v_o}{v_i} = \frac{A_i i_i \frac{R_o R_L}{R_o + R_L}}{i_i R_i} = A_i \frac{R_L}{R_i} \frac{R_o}{R_o + R_L}$$

Obviously, if $R_o = \infty$, the real current gain is identical to A_i. This indicates that the ideal current amplifier is achieved by assuming $R_o = \infty$ and $R_i = 0$ because $R_i = \infty$ would render A_i undefined due to $i_i = 0$. Therefore an ideal current op-amp is depicted in Figure 8.5.
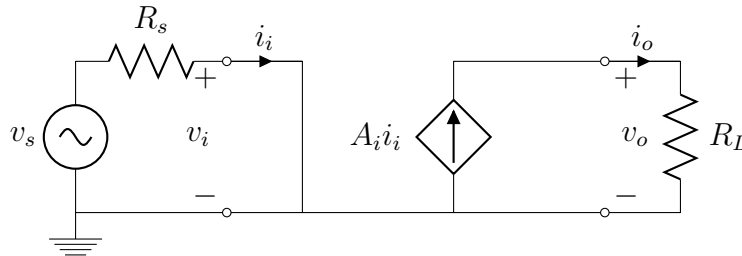
Figure 8.5: An Ideal Current Amplifier

To establish equivalence between Figure 8.1 and Figure 8.4, we apply Thevenin theorem, to find

$$A_v v_i = v_o = A_i i_i R_o$$

$$\frac{A_v v_i}{R_o} = I_{sc} = A_i i_i$$

where $v_i = i_i R_i$. Therefore,

$$A_v R_i = A_i R_o \tag{8.3}$$

provides a conversion between voltage amplifiers and current amplifiers.

8.1.3   Transconductance amplifier

The third model involves a voltage-controlled current source (part G in PSpice).
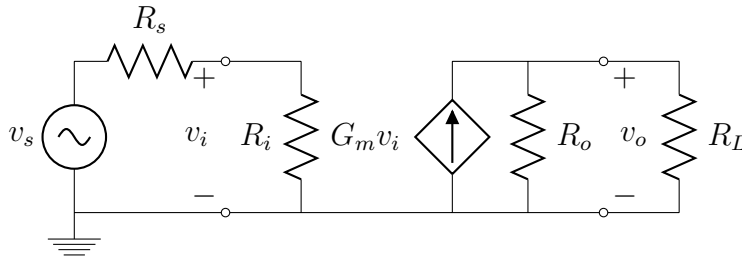
Figure 8.6: A Transconductance Amplifier

where $G_m = \frac{i_o}{v_i}, v_i \neq 0$ is called the short-circuit transconductance gain and the external circuits are same as those in Figure 8.1. In a real application where an output circuit is connected, we have

$$G_{m,real} = \frac{i_o}{v_i} = \frac{G_m v_i \frac{R_o}{R_o + R_L}}{v_i} = G_m \frac{R_o}{R_o + R_L}$$

Obviously, if $R_o = \infty$, we have $G_{m,real} = G_m$ for an ideal transconductance amplifier. This shows that an ideal transconductance amplifier can be approximated by assuming $R_o = \infty$ and $R_i = \infty$. Notice that if $R_i = 0$, we have $v_i = 0$ and G_m becomes undefined/meaningless. An ideal transconductance amplifier is shown in Figure 8.7.
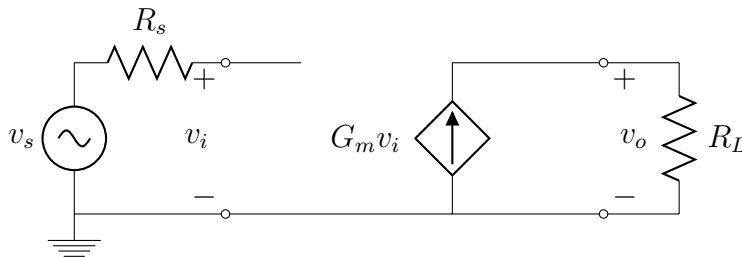
Figure 8.7: An Ideal Transconductance Amplifier

To establish equivalence between Figure 8.1 and Figure 8.6, we apply Thevenin theorem, to find

$$A_v v_i = v_o = G_m v_i R_o$$

$$\frac{A_v v_i}{R_o} = I_{sc} = G_m v_i$$

Therefore,

$$A_v = G_m R_o \tag{8.4}$$

establishes the connection between voltage amplifiers and transconductance amplifiers.

8.1.4   Tranresistance amplifier

The fourth model involves a current-controlled voltage source (part H in PSpice).
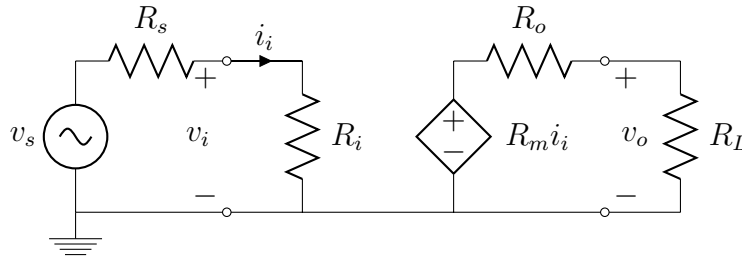
Figure 8.8: A Transresistance Amplifier

where $R_m = \frac{v_o}{i_i}, i_i \neq 0$ is called the open-circuit transresistance gain and the external circuits are same as those in Figure 8.1. In a real appication where an output circuit is connected, we have

$$R_{m,real} = \frac{v_o}{i_i} = \frac{R_m i_i \frac{R_L}{R_o + R_L}}{i_i} = R_m \frac{R_L}{R_o + R_L}$$

Obviously, if $R_o = 0$, we have $R_{m,real} = R_m$ for an ideal transresistance amplifier. This shows that an ideal transresistance amplifier can be obtained by assuming $R_o = 0$ and $R_i = 0$. Notice that if $R_i = \infty$, we have $i_i = 0$ and R_m becomes undefined/meaningless. An ideal transresistance amplifier is shown in Figure 8.9.

To establish the equivalence between Figure 8.1 and Figure 8.4, we apply Thevenin theorem, to find

$$A_v v_i = v_o = R_m i_i$$

$$\frac{A_v v_i}{R_o} = I_{sc} = \frac{R_m i_i}{R_o}$$
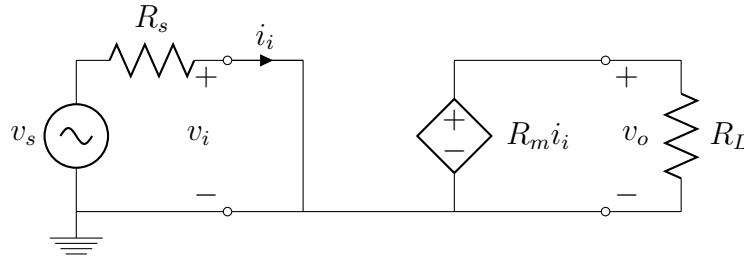
Figure 8.9: An Ideal Transresistance Amplifier

where $v_i = i_i R_i$. Therefore,

$$A_v R_i = R_m \tag{8.5}$$

displays the connection between voltage amplifiers and transresistance amplifiers. Actually, other connections among these four models can be easily established by inspecting respective circuit models and utilizing the open-circuit and short-circuit techniques as shown aforementioned, to establish the equivalent conversion. We will stop short on the derivations further, to keep the Reader brief. Yet an example is shown below.

Example 8.2 (Conversion among Various Amplifiers) *Given the voltage controlled voltage source shown in Figure 8.1, where $A_v = 100$, $R_i = 1K\Omega$, and $R_o = 100\Omega$, find the remaining equivalent dependent sources of Figures 8.4, 8.6, and 8.8.*
Solution: *This is a source transformation between Thevenin and Norton. Applying identities (8.3)-(8.5), respectively, we have*

$$A_i = \frac{A_v R_i}{R_o} = 10^3, \quad G_m = \frac{A_v}{R_o} = 1, \quad R_m = A_v R_i = 10^5.$$

□

8.1.5   Choices among various amplifiers

To find applications to various amplifiers, it all depends on what the applications are. Intended to be brief, some principles are itemized below.
From output view points:
• If an application would like to have the output voltage at the amplifier nearly independent of the load (constant voltage), then use low output impedance amplifiers so that the voltage drop would appear mainly at the load.
• If an application would like to have the output current at the amplifier flowing into the load (constant current), then use high output impedance amplifiers so that the current would enter mainly into the load.
From input view points:
• If an application prefers its unaltered source voltage v_s appearing at the amplifier

Table 8.1: Summary of Ideal Amplfiers

Models	R_i	R_o	Gain
Voltage	∞	0	A_v
Current	0	∞	A_i
Transconductance	∞	∞	G_m
Transresistance	0	0	R_m

(constant voltage), then use high input impedance amplifiers so that the voltage would drop mainly at the input terminal.

• If an application prefers its unaltered source current i_s entering the amplifier (constant current), then use low input impedance amplifiers so that the current would enter mainly into the amplifier.

Lastly, we summarize the analysis aforementioned in Table 8.1.

8.2   Amplifier Circuits

An interesting property of the ideal amplifier above is that the output voltage is only a function of the **difference** of the two input terminals. As such, there are some useful amplifier circuits, known as operational amplifier (op-amp), based on the ideal amplifier model.

8.2.1   Inverting amplifier

As shown in Figure 8.10, it is verifiable that $v_{out} = A(v_+ - v_-) = -Av_-$ and A is a
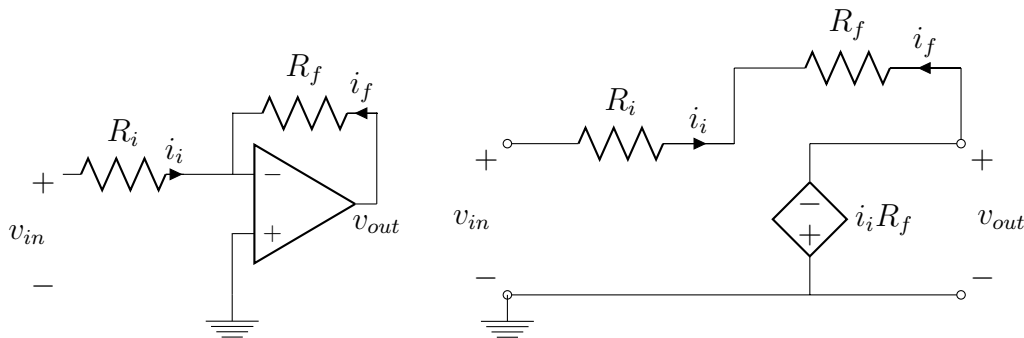
Figure 8.10: Inverting Amplifier

high amplifier gain lead to $v_- = \frac{v_{out}}{A} \approx 0$. Furthermore, due to high input impedance R_i, the current flowing into the amplifier is zero. Applying KCL at node v_- yields

$$0 = i_1 + i_f = \frac{v_{in}}{R_1} + \frac{v_{out}}{R_f}$$

Thus the amplifier gain for this inverting amplifier is

$$v_{out} = -\frac{R_f}{R_1}v_i = -A_f v_{in}$$

The negative sign in the expression simply says that the output voltage is 180° out of phase with the input voltage. Also, based on the sign convention, there is a minus sign in from of ohm's law. Note that the gain A_f is independent of A and that the output voltage is independent of the load R_L.[1] This means that the Thevenin resistance seen by R_L is zero. Hence, we have an ideal voltage source at the output terminals. This also renders itself an equivalent current-controlled voltage source.

Example 8.3 *[2, Page 197] For the circuit of Figure 8.11, find the maximum output voltage and maximum output current coming out from the op-amp.*
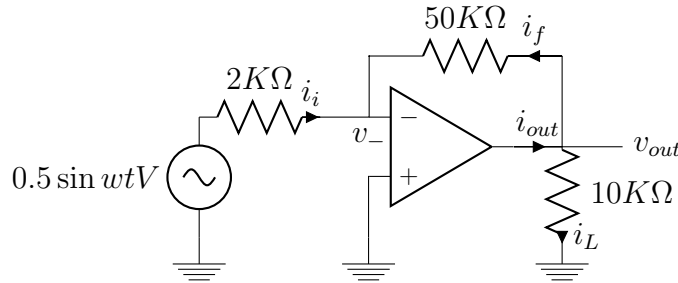
Figure 8.11: Circuit Diagram for Example 8.3

Solution: *It is readily obtained*

$$\frac{0.5 - v_-}{2K} = \frac{v_{out}}{50K}, \quad v_{out} = -\frac{50K}{2K}v_{in} = 12.5\sin wtV$$

To find output current

$$i_{out} = i_f + i_L = 0.25mA + \frac{12.5}{10K} = 1.5mA$$

Note that we must insure that this i_{out} does not exceed the saturation current of the op-amp. Otherwise, the output voltage is clipped.

□

PSpiceLab 8.1 *Re-do Example 8.3 using circuit structures in Figure 8.10 (i.e, ideal op-amp and Voltage-Controlled Voltage Source, respectively) to understand the equivalent relationship.*

---

[1]Prove this point by inserting different R_L and calculate its v_{out}, please.

Solution:

PreLab: (1) Understand an ideal op-amp is equivalent to a VCVS. (2) Verify them by PSpice.

Lab: Follow the step to run the PSPice.

PostLab: As shown in the PSpice simulations, the results are consistent with hand computations shown in Example 8.3. This means that it is fair to use VCVS to break the limitations on op-amp usage imposed by the student version.

□

8.2.2   Summing amplifier

As shown in Figure 8.12, it is readily seen that the output at the summing amplifier
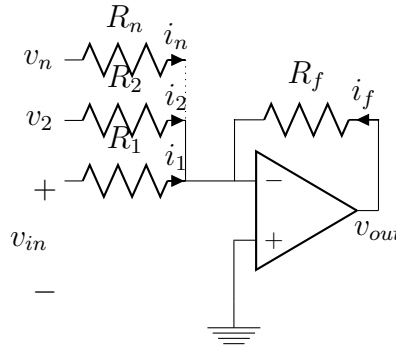
Figure 8.12: A Summing Amplifier

is

$$v_{out} = -(\frac{R_f}{R_1}v_1 + \frac{R_f}{R_2}v_2 + \cdots + \frac{R_f}{R_n}v_n)$$

A special variation of summing amplifies is called a averaging amplifier where $R_1 = R_2 = \cdots = R_n$ and the ratio $R_f/R_i = n, \forall i$ (the number of inputs.)

8.2.3   Non-inverting amplifier

As shown in Figure 8.13, and applying summing point constraint, we have

$$\frac{v_{out} - v_{in}}{R_f} = \frac{v_{in} - 0}{R}$$

yielding

$$v_{out} = \frac{R + R_f}{R}v_{in}$$

Again, the output voltage is independent of the load resistance, hence an ideal voltage source.
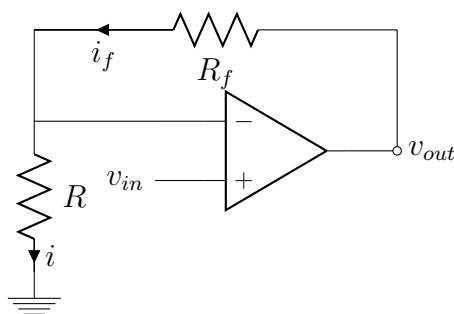
Figure 8.13: A Non-Inverting Amplifier

Example 8.4 *Analyze the ideal op-amp circuit shown in Figure 8.14 to find an expression for v_{out} in terms of v_A and v_B.*
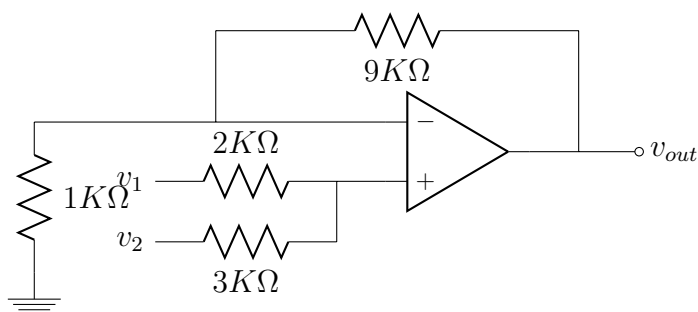
Figure 8.14: Circuit Diagram for Example 8.4

Solution: *Apply superposition for multi-input case. Grounding v_1 to find*

$$v'_+ = \frac{2}{5}v'_2 \ \ and \ \frac{v'_{out} - v'_+}{9} = \frac{v'_+ - 0}{1}$$

which yields

$$v'_{out} = 4v_2$$

Likewise, grounding v_2 to find

$$v''_+ = \frac{3}{5}v'_2 \ \ and \ \frac{v''_{out} - v''_+}{9} = \frac{v''_+ - 0}{1}$$

which yields

$$v''_{out} = 6v_1$$

Thus, $v_{out} = 6v_1 + 4v_2$. The trick in this example is to use superposition technique for multi-inputs.

□

8.2.4   Difference amplifier

For the Figure 8.15, the analysis for difference amplifier is pretty straightforward by
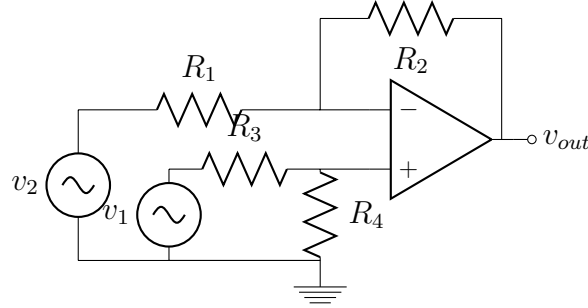
Figure 8.15: A Difference Amplifier

observing the fact that this is sum of inverting and non-inverting amplifier. To show this, we have
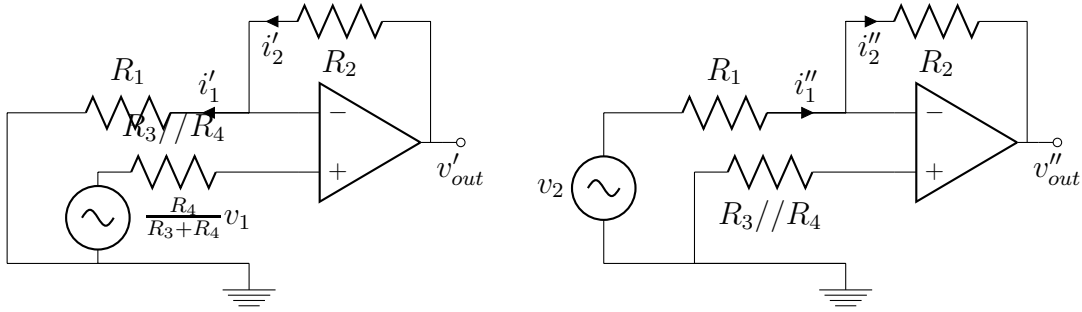
Figure 8.16: (a) Non-inverting and (b) Inverting Amplifier

For the non-inverting amplifier, we have

$$\frac{v'_{out} - \frac{R_4}{R_3+R_4}v_1}{R_2} = \frac{\frac{R_2 R_3}{R_3+R_4}v_1}{R_1}$$

yielding

$$v'_{out} = \frac{R_4}{R_3 + R_4}\frac{R_1 + R_2}{R_1}v_1$$

For the inverting amplifier, we have

$$\frac{v_2 - 0}{R_1} = \frac{0 - v''_{out}}{R_2}$$

yielding

$$v''_{out} = -\frac{R_2}{R_1}v_2$$

Thus the total output is

$$v_{out} = v'_{out} + v''_{out} = \frac{R_4}{R_3 + R_4}\frac{R_1 + R_2}{R_1}v_1 - \frac{R_2}{R_1}v_2$$

Example 8.5 (Strain Gauge Circuit) *[2] A strain gauge is a variable resistor that measures the strain (elongation) of a structure when subject to an applied force. To see the reason behind a strain gauge, we have 4 resistors connected to a Wheatstone bridge as shown below. Recall Example 3.25 on page 62 and understand that for the balance condition $v_a = v_b$. If two strain gauges $R + \Delta R$ are placed on the top of a beam and the remaining two strain gauges $R - \Delta R$ are placed on the bottom. If no force is exerted on the beam, the balance condition is reached.*
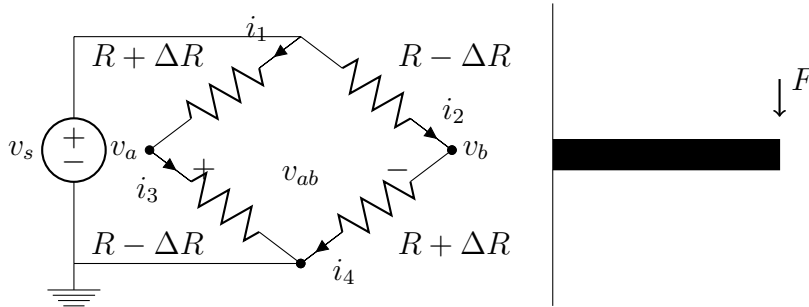
Figure 8.17: (a) Wheatstone Bridge and (b) a Beam

However, if a force is applied to the beam from top, causing deflection, the two $R + \Delta R$ on the top increase their resistance while $R - \Delta R$ decrease resistance.

$$v_a = \frac{R + \Delta R}{2R}, \quad v_b = \frac{R - \Delta R}{2R}$$

The difference voltage is

$$v_a - v_b = \frac{\Delta R}{R}v_s$$

A difference amplifier can be used to amplify the difference signal.

□

8.2.5   Voltage follower amplifier

As explained in Figure 1.8 on page 11, when a load is attached to a voltage source, the voltage across the load decreases due to internal resistance of the source, known as loading effect. To remove such loading effect, a voltage follower amplifier is inserted as shown in Figure 8.18.   The analysis is again straightforward. By virtual short circuit constraint, we have $v_+ = v_- = v_{in}$ and the direction feedback connection says that $v_{out} = v_{in}$.
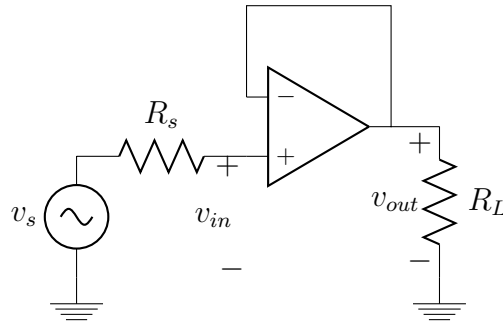
Figure 8.18: Voltage Follower Amplifier

8.2.6   Comparator amplifier

All previously amplifier circuits are assumed to be operated in the linear region. That is, the saturation region is avoided. But for the comparator shown in Figure 8.19a, it
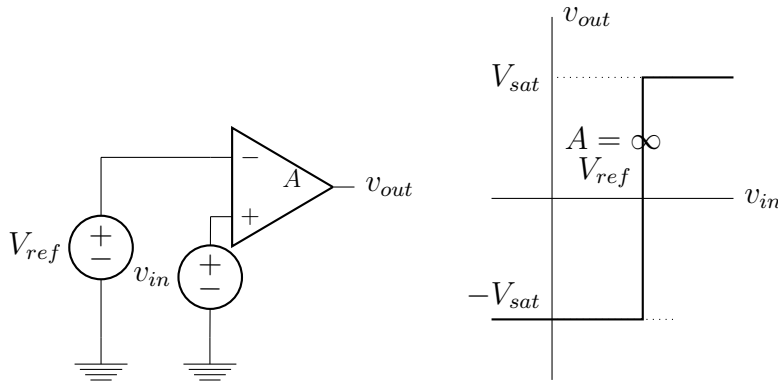
Figure 8.19: (a) Comparator Amplifier and (b) Its Characteristic

is operated in the saturation region, resulting in a positive feedback structure, driving the device to saturation. This is an ideal amplifier without any feedback connection, whose output function is

$$v_{out} = A(v_+ - v_-) = A(v_{in} - V_{ref})$$

If $v_{in} > V_{ref}$, $v_{out} = V_{sat}$; $v_{out} = -V_{sat}$, otherwise. The property is also shown in Figure 8.19b.

8.2.7   Active lowpass Butterworth filter

Given the following Butterworth filter using Sallen-Key topology, we derive the trans-
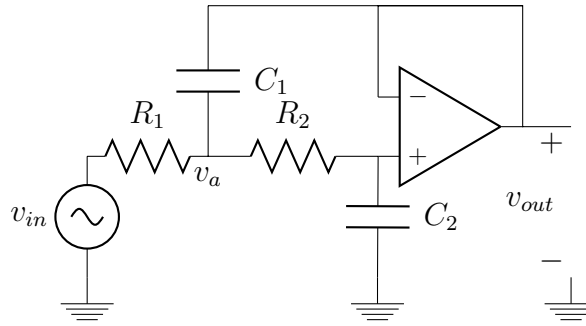
Figure 8.20: Butterworth Amplifier

fer function of the Butterworth filter. Applying summing-point constraint yields

$$C_1 \frac{d(v_{out} - v_a)}{dt} + \frac{v_{in} - v_a}{R_1} = \frac{v_a - v_{out}}{R_2}$$

and

$$\frac{v_a - v_{out}}{R_2} = C_2 \frac{dv_{out}}{dt}$$

To ease the derivation, we take the Laplace transform of the aforementioned two equations and a straightforward substitution generates

$$
\begin{aligned}
H(s) &= \frac{V_{out}(s)}{V_{in}(s)} = \frac{1}{R_1 R_2 C_1 C_2 s^2 + (R_1 + R_2)C_2 s + 1} \\
&= \frac{w_n^2}{s^2 + 2\xi w_n s + w_n^2}
\end{aligned}
$$

where $w_n = \frac{1}{R_1 R_2 C_1 C_2}$ and $\xi = \frac{(R_1 + R_2)C_2}{2(R_1 R_2 C_1 C_2)}$, which is a second-order low-pass filter. Notice that if cascading two second-order low-pass filer together, we have a fourth-order Butterworth low-pass filter, so on and so forth. To find the frequency response, we obtain (assuming $R_1 = R_2 = R$ and $C_1 = C_2 = C$)

$$|H(jw)|_{db} = 20 \log |\frac{1}{(1 - \frac{w^2}{w_{co}^2})^2 + (\frac{2w}{w_{co}})^2}|$$

where $w_{co} = \frac{1}{RC}$.

PSpiceLab 8.2 (Butterworth Low-Pass Filter) *Construct a fourth-order Butterworth filter with $R_1 = R_2 = 15.8K$ and $C_1 = C_2 = 0.1\mu F$ (so that the $f_{co} = 100KHz$) and (1) plot the frequency response for the second-order and fourth-order Butterworth active filter via PSpice UA471. (2) Plot the transient responses using VPULSE with period= 0.1.*

Solution:

PreLab: Review the analytical skill in this subsection.
Lab: Follow the step to see the results.
PostLab: How to construct an nth-order Butterworth filter.[2]

Actually, there are four basic types of active amplifiers: low-pass filters, high-pass filters, band-pass filter and notch filters, each has its own circuit configurations. The definition for such filters are also seen in Chapter 6 where passive filters are often referred to, in order to distinguish them with those active filters just mentioned. Since these are heart of many communications systems, we only bring up the Butterworth filter to illustrate the basic ideas.

---

[2]Ans: Cascade $n/2$ circuits together to obtain an nth-order Butterworth filter.

8.3 Recap

In this chapter, we have learned the followings.

• The output polarity of an op-amp is determined by the relative polarity relationship between the inputs. Not by their polarities with respect to ground.

• For an ideal op-amp, summing-point constraint is instrumental in solving the ideal op-amp problem.

• An Ideal voltage op-amp can be replaced by a voltage-controlled voltage source.

• Actually, there are 4 types of op-amps, characterized by R_i, R_o and parameter gains.

• All in all, constant voltage or constant current at the input and output of an amplifier are the key concerns to select an appropriate amplifier.

• Although input currents of an ideal op-amp are assumed zero, the output current does exist.

• Be aware that the op-amp output current should be less than the saturation output current.

• Understand the analytical techniques for typical amplifiers.

• Know the differences between positive feedback and negative feedback.

8.4 Problems

Problem 8.1 *Analyze the ideal op-amp circuit shown in Figure 8.21 to find an expression for v_{out} in terms of v_A and v_B.*
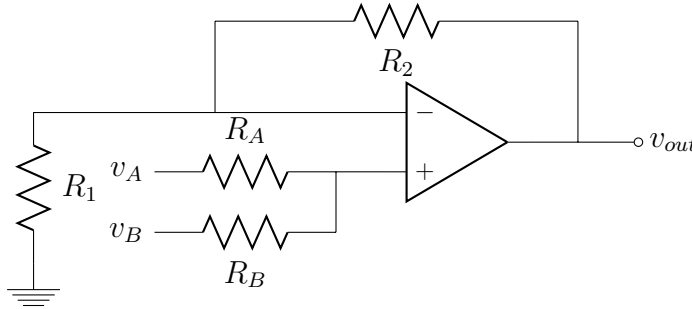
Figure 8.21: Circuit Diagram for Problem 8.1

Answer: $v_{out} = \left(\frac{R_1+R_2}{R_1}\right)\left(\frac{v_A R_B + v_B R_A}{R_A + R_B}\right)$.

Problem 8.2 *The circuit shown in Figure 8.22 employs a negative feedback. Derive expression for the voltage gain $A_1 = v_{o1}/v_{in}$ and $A_2 = v_{o2}/v_{in}$.*
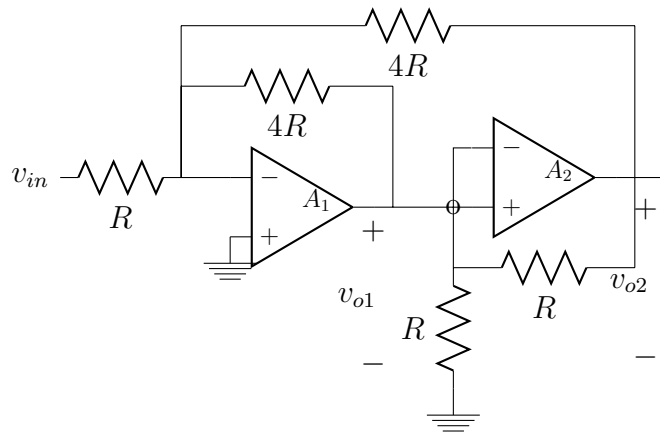
Figure 8.22: Circuit Diagram for Problem 8.2

Answer (a) $A_1 = \frac{4}{3}$. (b) $A_2 = \frac{8}{3}$.

Problem 8.3 *For Figure 8.23, (a) derive v_{out} in terms of v_s, R_F and C_s. (b) What happens if we reverse the capacitor and resistor?*
Answer: *(a) A differentiator since $v_{out} = -C_s R_F \frac{dv_s}{dt}$. (b) An Integrator. The main function of differentiators and integrators is wave conversion.*

Problem 8.4 *For Figure 8.24, derive v_{out} in terms of v_s, R_F and C_s.*
Answer: $v_2 = 4.7V$ *and* $v_1 = -4.7V$ $v_{out} = v_2 - v_1 = 9.4$.
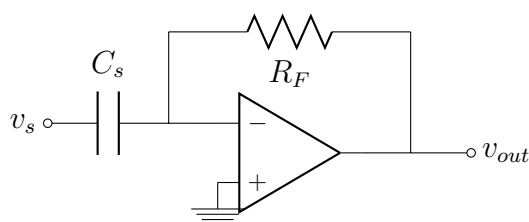
Figure 8.23: Circuit Diagram for Problem 8.3
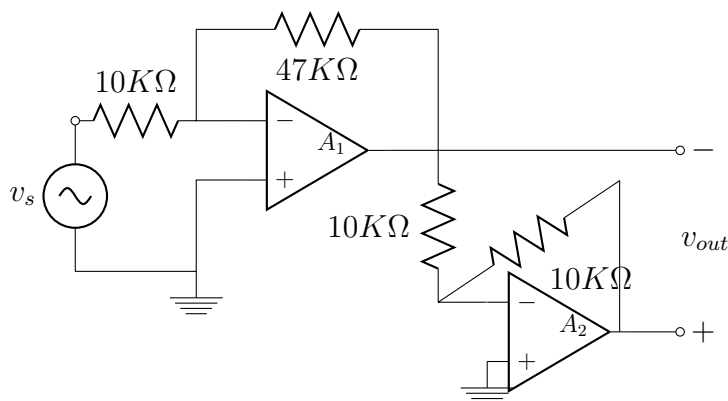
Figure 8.24: Circuit Diagram for Problem 8.4

Problem 8.5 *The operational amplifier in the following circuit, Figure 8.25, is ideal.*
(b) Calculate v_{out} if $v_a = 1V$ and $v_b = 2V$. (a) Calculate v_{out} if $v_a = 4V$ and $v_b = 0V$.
(c) If $v_b = 1.6V$ specify the range of v_a such that $-15 < v_{out} < 15$.
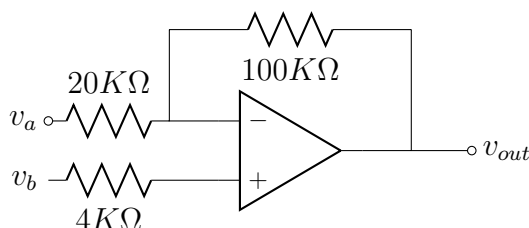
Figure 8.25: Circuit Diagram for Problem 8.5

Answer: *(a) $v_{out} = -20$. (b) $v_{out} = 7$. (c) $-1.08 < v_{out} < 4.92$.*

Problem 8.6 *Determine the output of the differential amplifier shown in 8.26*
Answer: $v_{out} = \frac{R_2}{R_1}(v_1 - v_2)$.

Problem 8.7 *The operational amplifier in the following circuit, Figure 8.27, is ideal.*
(a) Determine v_{out} in terms of V_1. (b) What kind of op-amp is it?
Answer: *(a) $v_{out} = 51v_1$. (b) Non-inverting.*
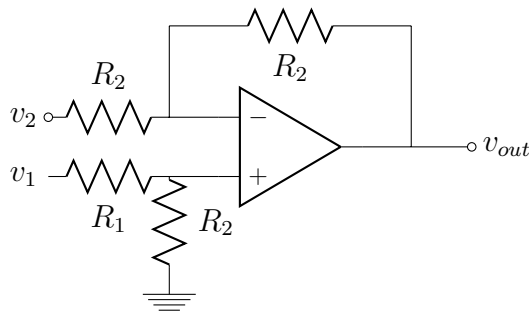
Figure 8.26: Circuit Diagram for Problem 8.6
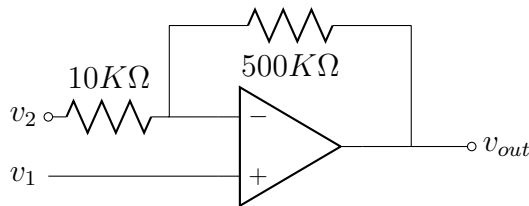
Figure 8.27: Circuit Diagram for Problem 8.7

Problem 8.8 *The operational amplifier in the following circuit, Figure 8.28, is ideal. Determine v_{out} in terms of v_1 and v_2.*
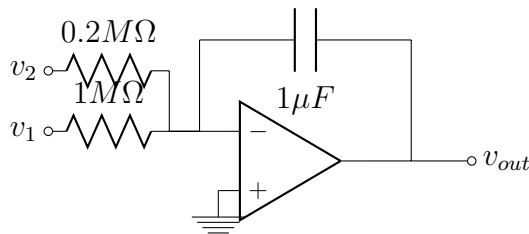
Figure 8.28: Circuit Diagram for Problem 8.8

Answer: *(a) $v_{out} = -\int(v_1 + 5v_2)dt$.*

Problem 8.9 *The operational amplifier in the following circuit, Figure 8.29, is ideal. Determine v_{out}.*
Answer: $v_{out} = -\frac{R_1 R_3 + R_3 R_4}{R_2 R_4} v_s$.

Problem 8.10 *For Figure 8.30 where $v_1 = 5 + 10^{-3}\sin wt$, use the principle of superposition to find the ratio of R_s/R_f such that no DC voltage appears at the output v_{out}.*
Answer: $\frac{20-5}{R_s} = \frac{5-0}{R_f}$, *so $R_s/R_f = 3$.*
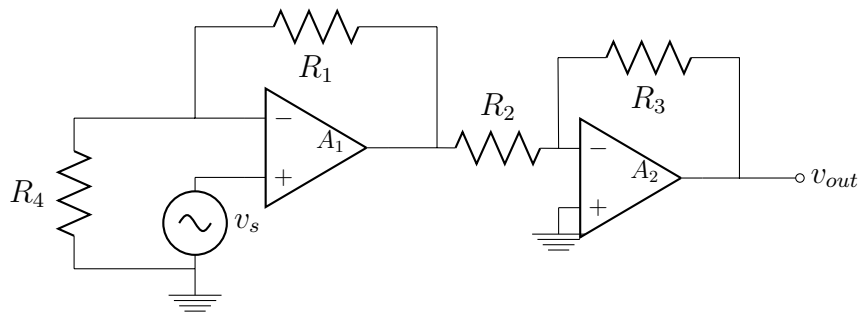
Figure 8.29: Circuit Diagram for Problem 8.9
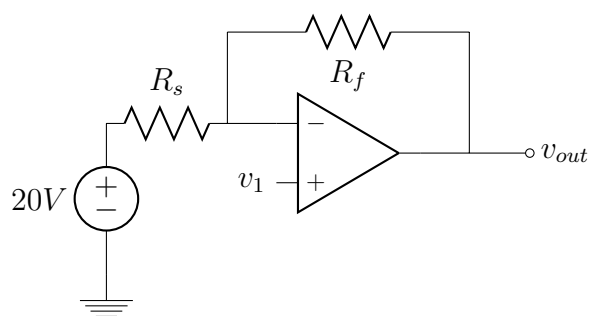
Figure 8.30: Circuit Diagram for Problem 8.10

Problem 8.11 *For Figure 8.31, (a) if $v_1 - v_2 = \cos 1000 t V$, find v_{out} at the output, (b) and the phase shift of v_{out}.*
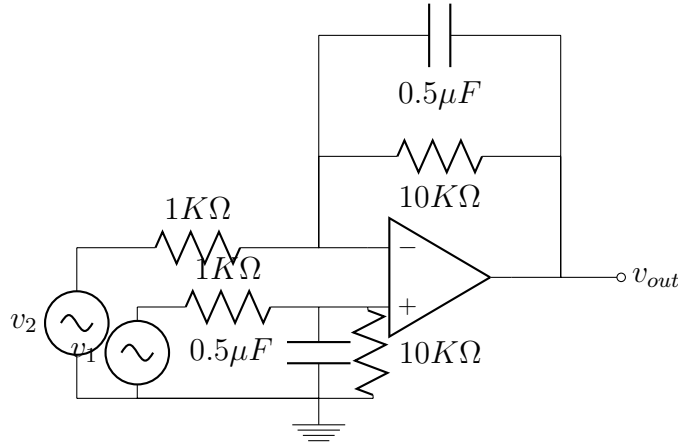
Figure 8.31: Circuit Diagram for Problem 8.11

Answer: *(a) $\bar{V}_{out} = \frac{\bar{Z}}{10^3}(\bar{V}_1 - \bar{V}_2)$, where $\bar{Z} = 10^4/1 + j5$. (b) $-78.7°$.*

Problem 8.12 *For Figure 8.32, (a) find v_{out} at the output, (b) and the current i.*
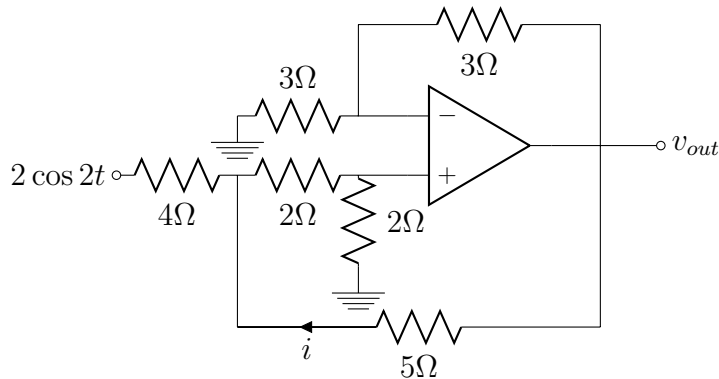
Figure 8.32: Circuit Diagram for Problem 8.12

Answer: *(a) $v = \cos 2t V$, (b) $i = 0$.*

Problem 8.13 *For Figure 8.33, find the current I.*
Answer: *$I = -3A$.*

Problem 8.14 *For Figure 8.34, (a) find the transfer function $H(w) = \frac{V_{out}}{V_{in}}$. (b) Draw its Bode magnitude plot and (c) its cutoff frequency.*
Answer: *(a) $H(w) = \frac{-10}{1 - j\frac{w_{co}}{w}}$. (b) High-pass filter $|H(w)|_{db} = 20 \log \frac{10}{\sqrt{1+(\frac{w_{co}}{w})^2}}$. (c) $w_{co} = \frac{1}{2\pi RC}$.*
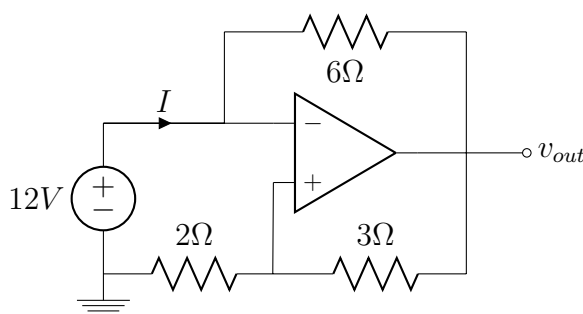
Figure 8.33: Circuit Diagram for Problem 8.13
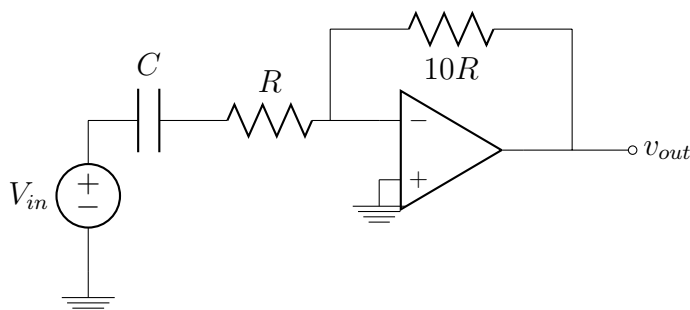
Figure 8.34: Circuit Diagram for Problem 8.14

Problem 8.15 *For Op-amp in Figure 8.35, (a) find i_o.*
Answer: *Hint: There are two loops involved. Loop 1: $v_{in} = Ri_{in} + 0 + Ri_{in}$. Loop 2:*
$0 = Ri_{in} + R_f i_o + Ri_{in}$. *(a)* $i_o = -\frac{v_{in}}{R_f}$.

Problem 8.16 *For Figure 8.36, (a) derive the transfer function $H(f)$ (b) Plot its Bode magnitude plot and (3) its cutoff frequency.*
Answer: *(a)* $\frac{V_{out}}{V_{in}} = -\frac{1}{1+j\frac{f}{f_{co}}}$. *(b) A low-pass filter. (c)* $\frac{1}{2\pi RC}$.

Problem 8.17 *(a) What is the most common function of a electronic device? (b) What are the input and output impedance of an ideal current amplifier? (c) The realized amplification gain of an amplifier is lower than its ideal internal gain is due to what effect? (d) What purpose does a capacitor serve in an electronic circuit diagram?*
Solution: *(a) Amplification. (b)* 0 *and* ∞ *respectively. (c) Due to loading effect. (d) It becomes an open-circuit for dc sources and short-circuit for ac sources.*
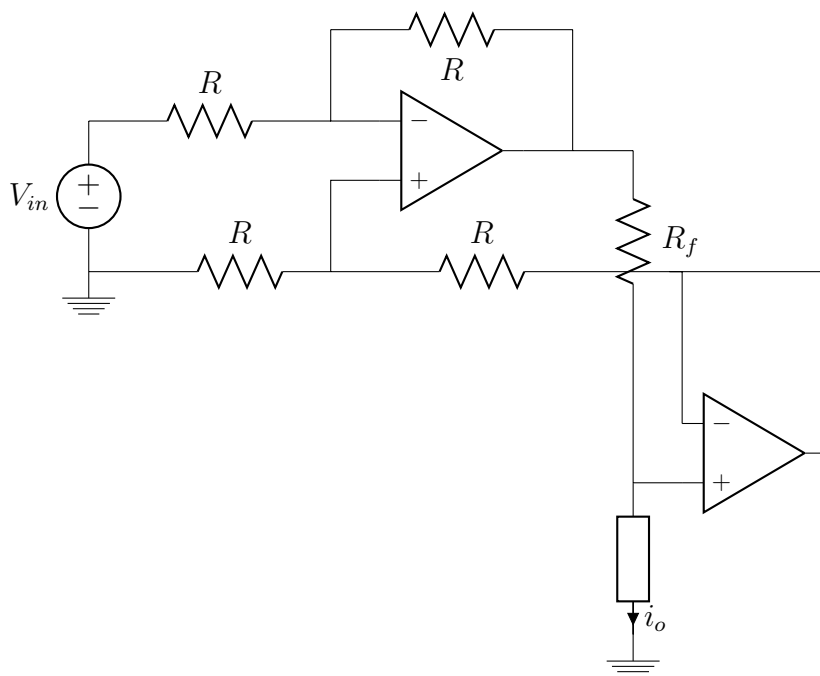
Figure 8.35: Circuit Diagram for Problem 8.15
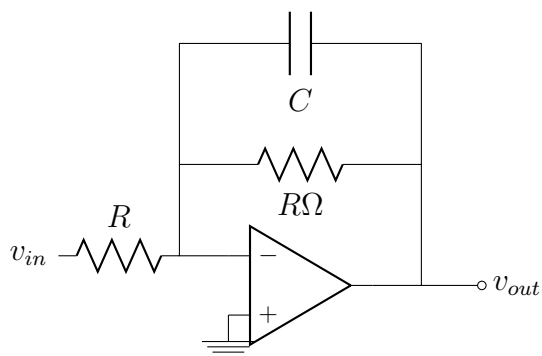
Figure 8.36: Circuit Diagram for Problem 8.16

Chapter 9

Bipolar Junction Transistors

The name transistor comes from the phrase "TRANsferring an electrical signal across a reSISTER." The Bipolar Junction Transistor (BJT) is an active device / element. This means the device has the ability to electrically control electron flow. An interesting way to put it is "electricity controlling electricity".[1] In simple terms, it is a current-controlled valve. The base current (i_B) controls the collector current (i_C). There are two BJTs – *npn* BJT and *pnp* BJT.

9.1 Relationships between Current and Voltage

BJT is a nonlinear circuit element, we need to understand the $v - i$ characteristic property and linearize it if necessary in order to apply linear circuit theory. We will assume that the collector-base junction is reverse biased ($v_{BC} < 0$) while the base-emitter junction is forward biased ($v_{BE} > 0$).
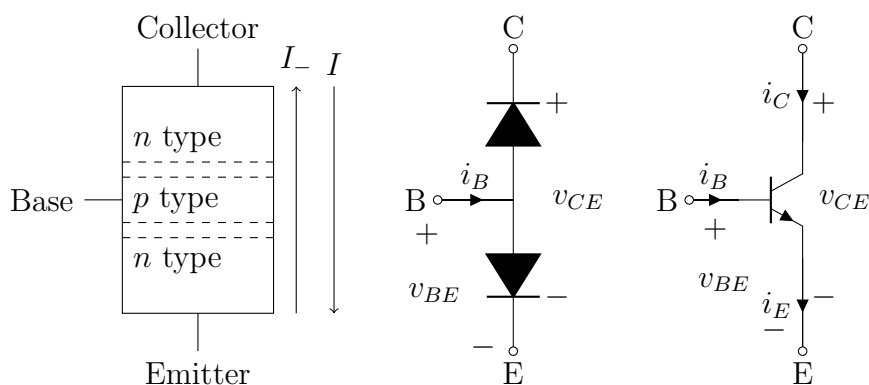
Figure 9.1: (a) An *npn* BJT Transistor (b) Symbol

---

[1] Devices without this property is called a passive device.

Since the base-emitter terminal is a *pn* junction, the Schockley equation yields the emitter current i_E in terms of the v_{BE}

$$i_E = I_s(e^{v_{BE}/V_T} - 1) \tag{9.1}$$

where I_s is the saturation current ranging from 10^{-12} to 0^{-16}A, V_T is the thermal voltage about $0.026mV$ at temperature $300K$. Based on the BJT circuit, we know

$$i_E = i_C + i_B$$

To derive a formula, we define the ratio of collector current to emitter current and to base current, respectively, as

$$\alpha = \frac{i_C}{i_E} < 1, \quad \beta = \frac{i_C}{i_B}$$

where $0.960 < \alpha < 0.997$. Therefore

$$i_E = \alpha i_E + i_B$$

leads to

$$i_B = (1 - \alpha)i_E$$

and

$$\frac{i_C}{i_B} = \beta = \frac{\alpha}{1 - \alpha} >> 1$$

where $24 < \beta < 330$. A common value is $\beta = 100$. This means collector current is magnified by a factor of β when a small i_B current is flowing into base terminal and this i_C constitutes the major current flowing out emitter terminal. Evidentally, this is a current-controlled current device.

Example 9.1 *A transistor has $\beta = 50$, $I_s = 10^{-14}A$, $v_{CE} = 5V$, and $i_E = 10mA$. Assume $V_T = 0.026V$. Find v_{BE}, v_{BC}, i_B, i_C, and α.*
Solution: *Utilizing equation (9.1), we have*

$$10 \times 10^{-3} = 10^{-14}(e^{\frac{v_{BE}}{0.026}} - 1)$$

which yields $v_{BE} = 0.718$. Thus $v_{BC} = v_{BE} - v_{CE} = 0.718 - 5 = -4.282V$. To find the remaining quantities.

$$i_B = \frac{10mA}{51} = 0.196mA, \quad i_C = 9.8mA, \quad \alpha = \frac{50}{51} = 0.980.$$

$\square$

9.2   Large-Signal Circuit Models

Since BJT is a nonlinear device, we need to establish its operating point so that circuit analysis can start from the operating point. The purpose of bias circuits is to establish an initial operating point of BJT where I_B, I_C and V_{CE} is determined and denoted by I_{BQ}, I_{CQ} and V_{CEQ} for this particular Q-point.

9.2.1   Determination of operating regions

A BJT can operate in **active region**, in **saturation region**, or in **cutoff region**. This is because of the ON-OFF states of diode property shown in Figure 9.1. These
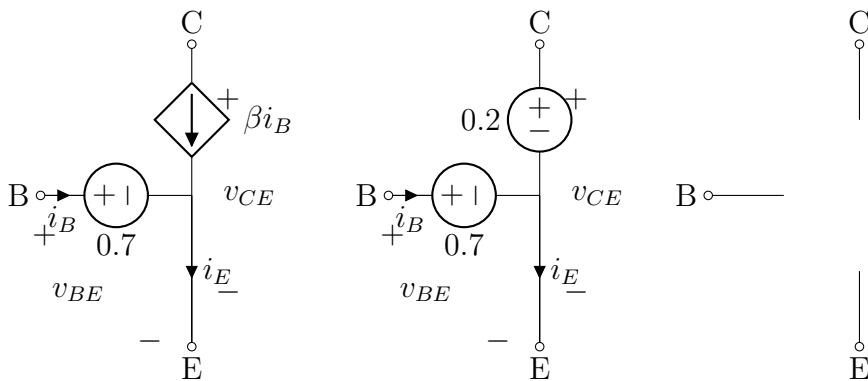
Figure 9.2: Circuit Models for Active, Saturation and Cutoff Regions

circuits are known as BJT bias circuits or DC analysis circuits.

• In the active region, the BE junction is forward biased and the BC junction is reversed biased.

The transistor is on. The collector current is proportional to and controlled by the base current ($i_C = \beta i_B$) and **relatively insensitive** to v_{CE}. In this region the transistor can be an amplifier.

• In the saturation region, both junctions are forward biased: $i_B >> 0$, $I_C < \beta i_B$.

The transistor is on. The collector current varies very little with a change in the base current in the saturation region. The v_{CE} is small, a few tenths of volt. The collector current is **strongly dependent** on v_{CE} unlike in the active region. It is desirable to operate transistor switches in or near the saturation region when in their ON state.

• In the cutoff region, both junctions are reversed biased: $i_C = 0$.

The transistor is off. There is no conduction between the collector and the emitter. ($i_B = 0$ therefore $I_C = 0$)

In sum, BJT transistors are current-activated devices. NO i_B means cutoff (OFF) state since $i_C = 0$. Excessive i_B results in saturations ON state since i_C is small. Mild i_B makes BJT in the active region and works like an Amplifier $i_C = \beta i_B$.

9.2.2   Base bias

The structure shows a common-emitter circuit where the source between base and emitter supplies a positive voltage v_{BE} over the base-emitter junction, resulting in a forward bias. The voltage across the base and collector junction is determined by

$$v_{BC} = v_B - v_C = v_{BE} - v_{CE}$$

if $v_{CE} > v_{BE}$ then the base-collector is reverse biased, $v_{BC} < 0$.
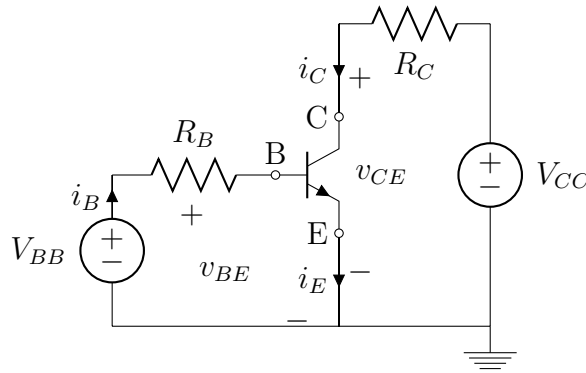
Figure 9.3: A Fixed Base Bias Circuit
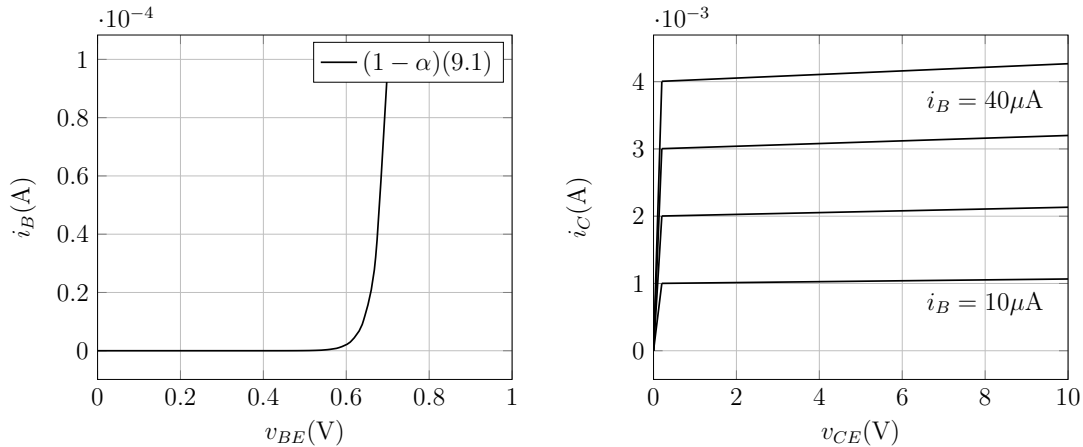
Figure 9.4: CE Characteristics (a) Input $v - i$ Curve (b) Output $v - i$ Curve, $\beta = 100$

The output characteristic curve in Figure 9.4b shows that i_C depends on i_B. i.e. For each value of i_B, there exists a corresponding $i_C - v_{CE}$ curve.

PSpiceLab 9.1 (Input and Output Characteristics) *Given Figure 9.5, use the primary and secondary DC dual sweep to verify the input and output characteristics of BJT Q2N3904.*
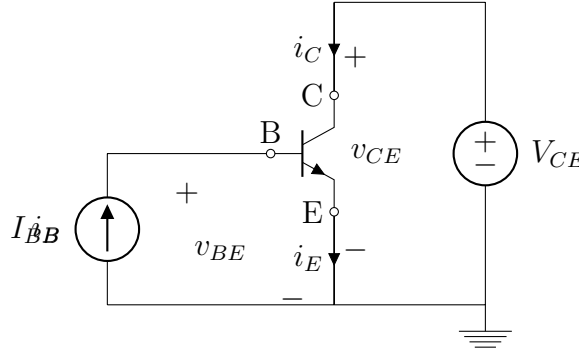
Figure 9.5: Another Fixed Base Bias Circuit

Solution:
Objectives: (1) Understand BJT input output characteristics.
PreLab: Review the analytical skills for clipper circuits.
Lab: Follow the steps to see the result. By dual sweep, we mean primary and secondary sweep on I_B and V_{CE} respectively and thus obtain the I/O characteristics.
PostLab: How does this related to diodes?

9.2.3 Load-line analysis

To find an operating point in active region, we need to analyze the input circuit and output circuit respectively and this can be done using Kirchhoff's circuit laws.

$$V_{BB} = i_B R_B + v_{BE}$$

which will intersect x- and y-axis of the input characteristic curve at

$$x = v_{BE} = V_{BB}, \text{ when } I_B = 0 \quad (cutoff)$$

$$y = i_B = \frac{V_{BB}}{R_B}, \text{ when } v_{BE} = 0 \quad (cutoff)$$

Similarly, for the output circuit, we have

$$V_{CE} = V_{CC} - I_C R_C$$

$$x = v_{CE,off} = V_{CC}, \text{ when } I_C = 0 \quad (\text{cutoff, open circuit})$$

$$y = i_{C,sat} = \frac{V_{CC}}{R_C}, \text{ when } v_{CE} = 0 \quad (\text{saturation, short circuit})$$
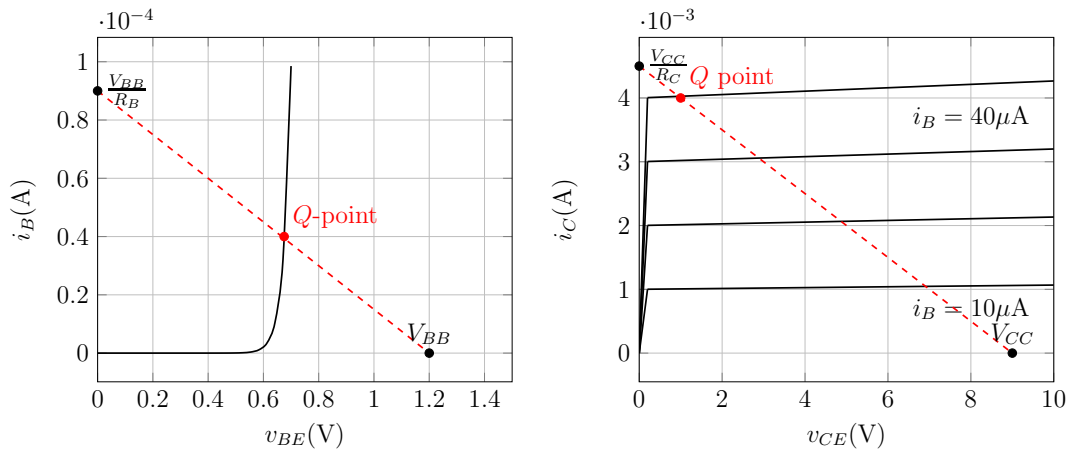
Figure 9.6: CE Load Line (a) Input $v-i$ Curve (b) Output $v-i$ Curve, $\beta = 100$

With this information, we have Figure 9.6 shown, where the Q-point is known as DC operating point. It is emphasized that with different V_{BB} or V_{CC} the load line can vary up and down. By the same token, different R_B or R_C cause the slope of the load line vary too. In sum, the dc power-supply voltages V_{BB} and V_{CC} **bias** the BJT at an operating point for a fixed R_B and R_C.

By appropriate choice of V_B, R_B, R_C, V_{CC}, the desired Q-point may be selected. Once the operating point is established, the BJT can serve as a linear amplifier. To see this, we substitute the dc source V_{BB} in the common emitter circuit of Figure 9.3 with $V_{BB} + v_{in}$. As shown in Figure 9.7, a small variation (say, a tiny triangular signal) at base terminal due to v_{in} will introduce a magnified effect because $i_C = \beta i_B$. This also paves the way that a linearized model at Q-point can be used for a nonlinear BJT element. However, it should be noted that a linearized model is valid in the neighborhood of 40μA. As seen from Figure 9.7, the BJT is driven to saturation region for $i_B = 50\mu$A and 60μA, since the Q-point is below the knee of the output characteristic curve. This observation verifies that for amplification, the Q-point must be in the active region, otherwise, as well as being amplified and inverted,[2] the output waveform is clipped.

In general, we want to establish a Q-point near the middle of the load line so the output signal can vary in both directions without clipping.

Example 9.2 (Base Bias) *The simplest biasing circuit is base-biased shown in Figure 9.8, (a) determine the Q-point by hand and find i_C, V_{CE}, and V_{CB}. Assume $\beta = 165$, and $V_{BE} = 0.72$. (b) Use DC bias point analysis to find Q-point and V_{CB}.*
Solution: *To find the Q-point, we have the following analysis, requiring 3 steps.*

---

[2]Why the signal is inverted? Hint: Q-point is equivalent to $v_{in} = 0$.
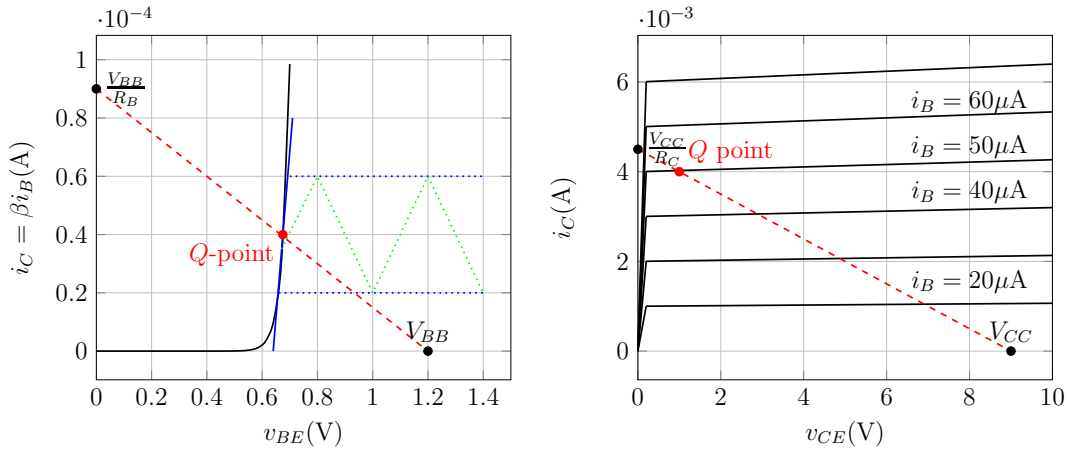
Figure 9.7: Common Emitter BJT as an Amplifier
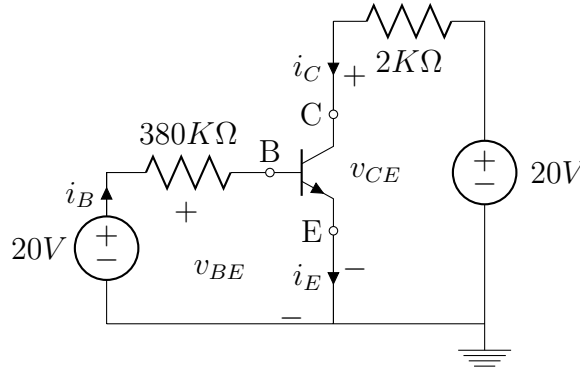
Figure 9.8: A Simple Base-Biased Circuit

First, find the value of I_B using KVL.

$$20 = 380KI_B + v_{BE} = 380KI_B + 0.72$$

which yields $I_B = 50.7\mu A$.
Second, once the I_B is obtained, I_C is determined by formula thus $I_C = 165I_B = 8.37mA$.
Third, Knowing I_C, V_{CE} can be determined again using KVL.

$$V_{CE} = 20 - I_C 2K = 20 - 8.37m \times 2K = 3.26V$$

and

$$V_{BC} = V_{BE} - V_{CE} = 0.72 - 3.26 = -2.54V$$

The operation is in the active region.

□

PSpiceLab 9.2 (NOT Gate, Saturation and Cutoff) *Verify what regions is a BJT in. This is a case for switching operations for a BJT.*
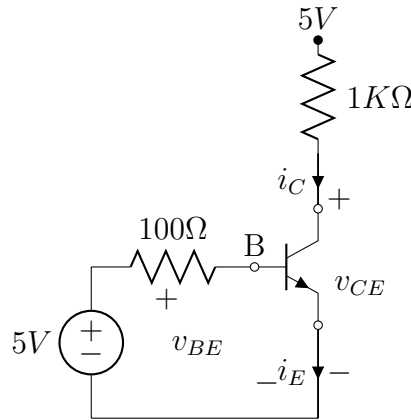
Figure 9.9: BJT NOT Gate

Solution:

Objectives: (1) Understand BJT switching characteristics.

PreLab: This lab shows that a transistor can be a switch. Knowing that a BJC is a current-activated device. A voltage input with HIGH and LOW corresponds to saturated ON state and cutoff OFF state, respectively.

Lab: Follow the step to observe whether the result is as expected.

PostLab: (1) Draw an equivalent circuit for the transistor is ON. (2) How to implement NOR and NAND gates.[3]

□
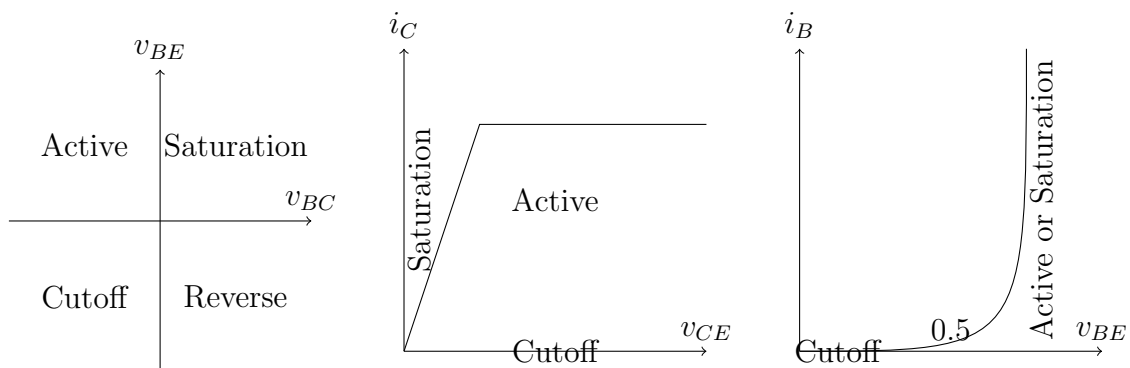
Figure 9.10: Operating Regions Based on Input/Output Characteristic

---

[3]NOR=OR+NOT=$\overline{OR}$ and NAND=AND+NOT=$\overline{AND}$.

Summarizing again, the analysis above is known as large-signal model analysis.

- Cutoff region; BE terminal is reversed-biased, $I_B = 0, I_C = 0$.
- Active region; BE terminal is forward-biased, $I_B > 0, I_C = \beta I_B$.
- Saturation region; BE terminal is forward-biased, $I_B >> 0, I_C < \beta I_B$.

9.2.4 Voltage-divider bias (self-bias circuit)

For a fixed base bias circuit (see Figure 9.3) the base current I_B is fixed to $\frac{V_{CC}}{R_B}$ and does not change for different values of β. The load line analysis shows that for different Q-point (meaning different β values), the I_B must change. To get rid of such dependency disadvantage, a circuit that is independent of β is desired. To this end, we
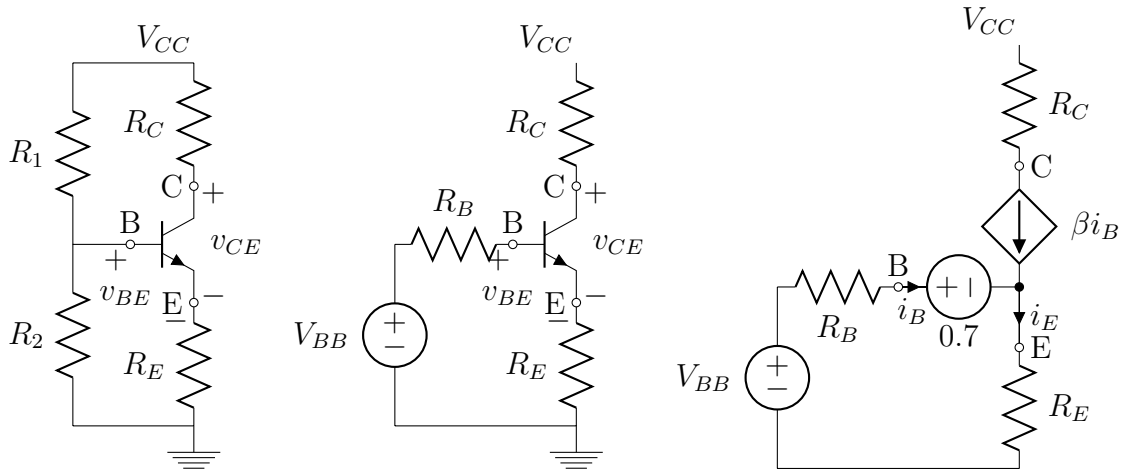
Figure 9.11: Voltage-Divider BJT Bias Circuit

have the following circuit for DC analysis to determine Q-point and relevant electrical quantities. To analyze the four-resistor bias circuit, we use Thevenin theorem to find the equivalent voltage seen from the terminals B and ground.

$$V_{BB} = \frac{R_2}{R_1 + R_2} V_{CC}$$

and the equivalent resistance is

$$R_B = R_1//R_2 = \frac{R_1 R_2}{R_1 + R_2}$$

Around the base-emitter circuit, BE loop

$$
\begin{aligned}
V_{BB} &= I_B R_B + V_{BE} + I_E R_E = [R_B + (\beta + 1)R_E]I_B + V_{BE} \\
I_E &= I_C + I_B = \beta I_B + I_B
\end{aligned}
$$

Around the collector-emitter circuit, CE loop

$$V_{CC} = I_C R_C + V_{CE} + I_E R_E = I_C[R_C + \frac{\beta+1}{\beta}R_E] + V_{CE}$$

$$I_E = I_C + I_B = I_C + \frac{1}{\beta}I_C$$

Solving, these two equations yield

$$I_B = \frac{V_{BB} - V_{BE}}{R_B + (\beta+1)R_E} \qquad (9.2)$$

$$V_{CE} = V_{CC} - I_C(R_C + \frac{\beta+1}{\beta}R_E) \approx V_{CC} - I_C R_C - I_E R_E \qquad (9.3)$$

Example 9.3 (BJT as a Switch) *The most popular biasing is the voltage-divider biasing shown in Figure 9.12, (a) determine the Q-point by hand and find I_C, V_{CE} and V_{CB}. Assume $\beta = 165$, and $V_{BE} = 0.68$. (b) Use DC bias point analysis to find Q-point and V_{CB}.*
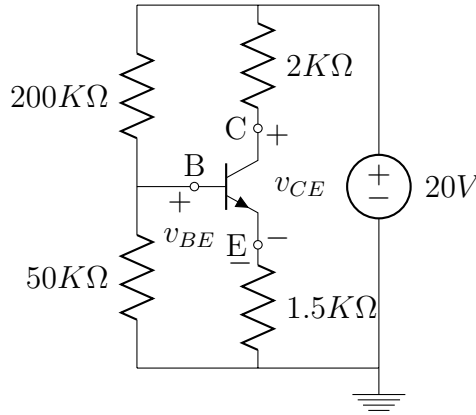
Figure 9.12: A Self-Bias Circuit

Solution: *First, the Thevenin equivalent seen from terminals B and ground is $V_{oc} = 4V$ and $R_t = 40K$. To find the Q-point, we have the following analysis*

$$4 = 40K I_B + v_{BE} + I_E R_E = (40K + 166 \times 1.5K)I_B + 0.68$$

which yields $I_B = 11.48\mu A$, thus $I_C = 165 \times I_B = 1.89mA$. Also

$$V_{CE} = 20 - I_C(2K + \frac{166}{165}1.5K) = 20 - 6.63 = 13.37V$$

and

$$V_{BC} = V_{BE} - V_{CE} = 0.68 - 13.37 = -12.69V$$

The solving procedure for a self-bias circuit is (1) finding V_B via Thevnin, (2) solving for I_B using loop-current method around loop BE, (3) solving for V_{CE} using loop-current method again around loop CE.

□

Example 9.4 (Independent of β, Voltage Divider Bias) *Given the four resistors circuit, Figure 9.11, where $R_1 = 10K\Omega$, $R_2 = 5K\Omega$, $R_C = 1K\Omega$, $R_E = 5K\Omega$, and $V_{CC} = 15\,V$, find the values of I_C and V_{CE} for $\beta = 100$ and $\beta = 300$.*
Solution: *The Thevenin equivalent seen from terminal BE is determined to be $V_{BB} = 5V$ and $R_B = 3.33K\Omega$. Once this is found, the remaining relevant quantities are determined based on the formulae derived and they are listed in the Table below:*

Table 9.1: Comparison Study for Different β

β	I_B	I_C	I_E	V_{CE}
100	41.2μ A	4.12mA	4.16mA	6.72V
300	14.1μ A	4.24mA	4.25mA	6.51V

The example shows the advantage of a self-bias BJT circuit which can have a Q-point that is almost independent of β.

□

9.2.5   Feedback bias

By feedback, we mean voltage/current information at the output is fed back to the input. Two feedback structure are introduced. Note that Neither of these bias circuit can drive the devices into saturation because the I_B and β are inversely situated for such design. This will be clearer after the formulae are derived.

Collector-feedback bias

This means that the collector current is fed back to the base. As mentioned earlier, the analysis to determine the Q-point is to find I_B first using KVL.

$$V_{CC} = V_{R_C} + V_{R_B} + V_{BE} = I_C R_C + I_B R_B + V_{BE} = I_B(\beta R_C + R_B) + V_{BE}$$

due to $I_C = \beta I_B$. Thus

$$I_B = \frac{V_{CC} - V_{BE}}{R_B + \beta R_C}$$
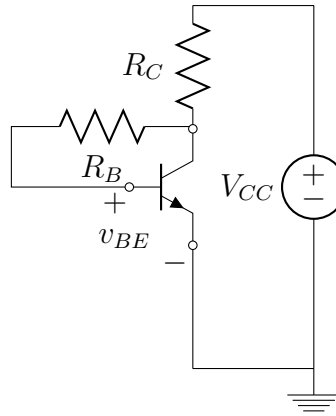
Figure 9.13: Collector-Feedback Bias Circuit

Once the value of I_B is found, $I_C = \beta I_B$ and

$$V_{CE} = V_{CC} - I_C R_C$$

It is worth noting that the base current I_B is controlled by βR_C and V_{CC}, meaning information from collector does feed back to base.

Example 9.5 *Given Figure 9.13 with $V_{CC} = 15$, $R_C = 2K\Omega$, $R_B = 240K\Omega$, $\beta = 100$.*
Solution: $I_B = \frac{15-0.7}{240K+100\times 2K} = 0.0325mA$. *Thus $I_C = 3.25mA$.*

$\square$

Emitter-feedback bias

This means that the emitter current is fed back to the base.
As mentioned earlier, the analysis to determine the Q-point is to find I_B first using KVL.

$$V_{CC} = V_{R_E} + V_{BE} + V_{R_B} = I_E R_E + V_{BE} + I_B R_B = I_B((\beta + 1)R_E + R_B) + V_{BE}$$

due to $I_E = (\beta + 1)I_B$. Thus

$$I_B = \frac{V_{CC} - V_{BE}}{R_B + (\beta + 1)R_E}$$

Once the value of I_B is found, $I_C = \beta I_B$ and

$$V_{CE} = V_{CC} - I_C(R_C + R_E)$$

Notice that the result is the same equation that we derived for self-bias circuit using voltage-divider technique (9.2)-(9.3).
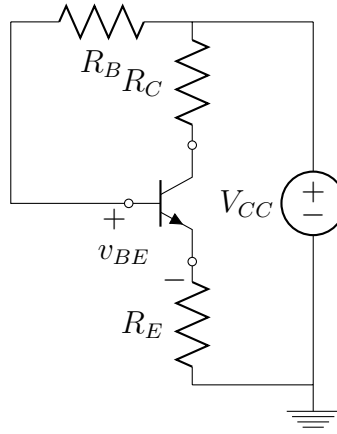
Figure 9.14: Emitter-Feedback Bias Circuit

Example 9.6 *Given Figure 9.14 with $V_{CC} = 15$, $R_C = 2K\Omega$, $R_B = 240K\Omega$, $R_E = 2K\Omega$, $\beta = 100$.*
Solution: $I_B = \frac{15-0.7}{240K+101\times 2K} = 0.0323mA$. *Thus $I_C = 3.23mA$.*

□

Once the bias DC analysis technique is mastered, we can choose one of the BJT operating region and use the circuit model introduced in Figure 9.10 to analyze the circuit and determine I_C, I_B, V_{BE} and V_{CE}. Lastly, check whether the obtained electrical quantities comply with the region chosen. If yes, the analysis is completed. If not, redo the procedure.

9.3 Small-Signal Circuit Models

Note that the small-signal model assumes that the Q point (DC-bias point) of the transistor has been established and a linearized model due to biasing is found. To embark an analysis leading to a small-signal model, we use notation below, assuming a signal can be represented as a small AC excitation superimposed on the dc quantities

$$
\begin{aligned}
v_{BE} &= V_{BEQ} + v_{be} \\
v_{CE} &= V_{CEQ} + v_{ce} \\
i_C &= I_{CQ} + i_c = I_{CQ} + g_m v_{be} \\
i_B &= I_{BQ} + i_b = I_{BQ} + \frac{v_{be}}{r_\pi} \\
i_E &= I_{EQ} + i_e = I_{EQ} + \frac{v_{be}}{r_e} \\
v_C &= V_{CQ} + v_c
\end{aligned}
$$

where at a Q-point the following identities hold

$$
\begin{aligned}
V_{CQ} &= V_{CEQ} = V_{CC} - I_{CQ}R_C \\
I_{CQ} &= I_S e^{\frac{V_{BEQ}}{V_T}} \\
I_{EQ} &= \frac{i_{CQ}}{\alpha} = \frac{I_S}{\alpha}e^{\frac{V_{BEQ}}{V_T}} \\
I_{BQ} &= \frac{i_{CQ}}{\beta} = \frac{I_S}{\beta}e^{\frac{V_{BEQ}}{V_T}}
\end{aligned}
$$

where V_T is the thermal voltage. To operate as an amplifier, **a transistor must be biased in the active region** to establish a constant dc current in the emitter (or collector) and therefore, a linearized model due to biasing can be found.

• The transconductance

$$
g_m = \frac{\partial i_C}{\partial v_{BE}}\Big|_{v_{BE}=V_{BEQ}} = \frac{1}{V_T}(I_S e^{\frac{v_{BE}}{V_T}})\Big|_{v_{BE}=V_{BEQ}} = \frac{I_{CQ}}{V_T}
$$

• The base resistance

$$
\frac{1}{r_\pi} = \frac{\partial i_B}{\partial v_{BE}}\Big|_{v_{BE}=V_{BEQ}} = \frac{1}{\beta V_T}(I_S e^{\frac{v_{BE}}{V_T}})\Big|_{v_{BE}=V_{BEQ}} = \frac{g_m}{\beta} = \frac{I_{CQ}}{\beta V_T} = \frac{I_{BQ}}{V_T}
$$

• The emitter resistance

$$
\frac{1}{r_e} = \frac{\partial i_E}{\partial v_{BE}}\Big|_{v_{BE}=V_{BEQ}} = \frac{1}{\alpha V_T}(I_S e^{\frac{v_{BE}}{V_T}})\Big|_{v_{BE}=V_{BEQ}} = \frac{g_m}{\alpha} = \frac{I_{EQ}}{V_T} \approx \frac{I_{CQ}}{V_T} = g_m
$$

The linearization analysis shows that both DC and AC components exist, establishing the small-signal model after a DC bias circuit analysis is done. With that, we have

$$
v_{be} = r_\pi i_b = r_e i_e, \quad r_\pi = (\frac{i_e}{i_b})r_e = (\beta+1)r_e
$$

and

$$
i_e = i_b + i_c = \underbrace{\frac{v_{be}}{r_\pi}}_{VCCS} + \underbrace{g_m v_{be} = \frac{v_{be}}{r_\pi}(1+\beta)}_{CCCS} = \frac{v_{be}}{\frac{r_\pi}{1+\beta}} = \frac{v_{be}}{r_e} \tag{9.4}
$$

The equation (9.4) suggests two most widely used model for the BJT (small-signal circuit model) which are shown in Figure 9.15. Furthermore, to account for the early effect, the dependence of i_c on v_{CE}, a finite output resistance $r_o = \frac{V_A}{I_C}$ can be assigned in parallel to the controlled-current source.

Once the small-signal models, Figure 9.15, are established, we, in what follows, will investigate the small-signal circuit for the most commonly seen amplifiers based on BJT.
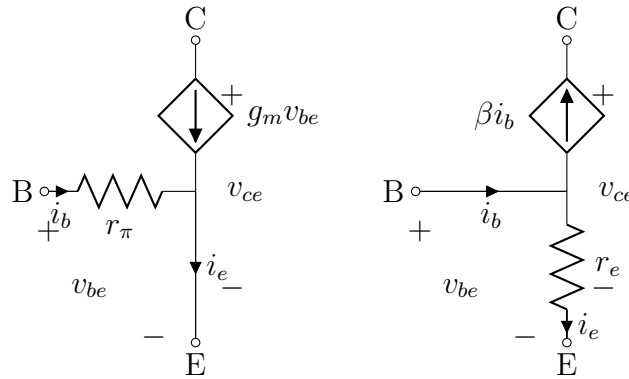
Figure 9.15: Voltage-Controlled and Current-Controlled Current Source

9.4   Basic BJT amplifier configuration (CE,CB,CC)

All three configurations will be designed from a universal amplifier configuration in which capacitors C_1, C_2 and C_3 are assumed very large (ideally ∞), that is, acting as a perfect short circuit ($Z = 1/jwC = 0$) at signal frequency, but capacitors block dc ($Z = 1/j0C = \infty$), providing separate paths for DC and AC current. Such connections do not affect biasing of BJT. In particular, the capacitor C_2 is also known as a bypass capacitor since it provides a short-circuit path for i_E to ground.
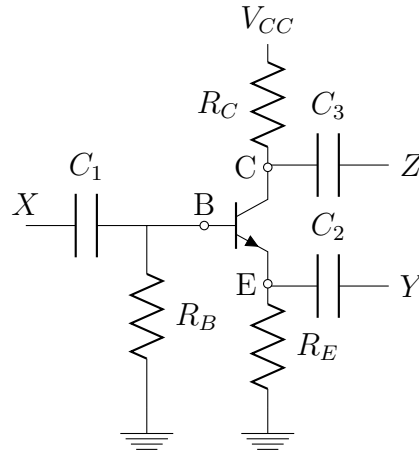
Figure 9.16: Universal Amplifier Configuration

For an AC analysis, in order to let the capacitor become short circuit, we need to choose

$$|\frac{1}{jwC_2}| << R_E$$

leading to

$$\frac{1}{wC_2} << R_E$$

The following example demonstrates the fact that when a coupling/bypassing capacitor is incorporated into a circuit with AC and DC sources, an independent effect (no mutual interaction) is introduced into the circuit analysis.

Example 9.7 (Bypassing Capacitor) *Given Figure shown below, find the voltage across* 2Ω.
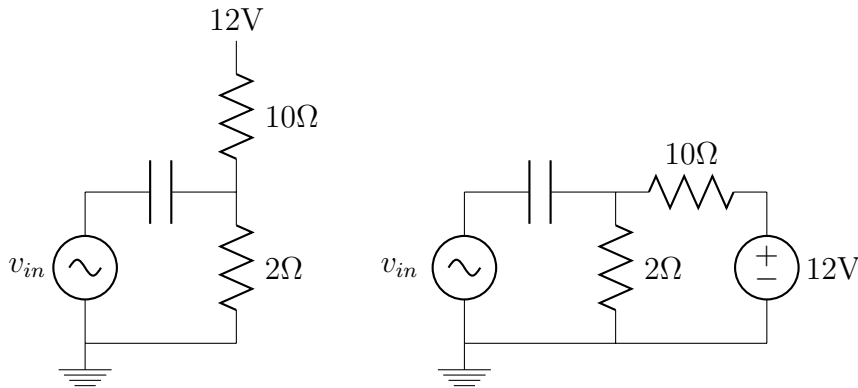
Figure 9.17: Circuit Diagram for Example 9.7

Solution: *Since an equivalent circuit is shown, we can applied superposition technique to solve it. For AC analysis, we have* $v_1 = v_1'$. *For the DC analysis, the capacitor becomes an open circuit and the voltage across* 2Ω *is* $v_1'' = 2V$. *The total voltage across* 2Ω *is than* $v_1 = v_1' + 2V$. *The example shows that bias DC source and small signal AC*
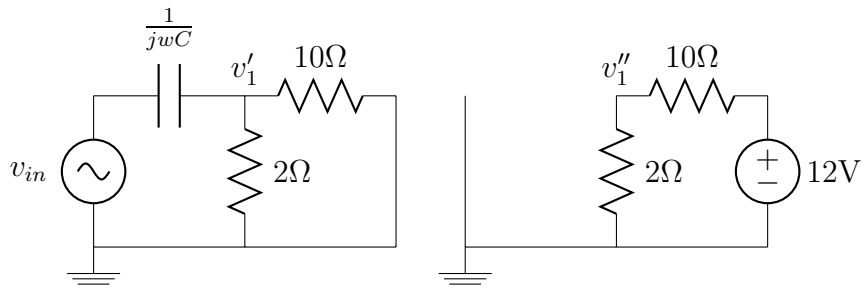
Figure 9.18: Small Signal Circuit and Bias Circuit

source using bypassing capacitor enable the circuit to be treated independently as two sources in a linear system that superposition is applied. This means the DC source is used to find Q-point and AC source is used to find small signal magnification.

□

From the example we just shown, **it is imperative that when conducting an AC analysis, we (1) short-circuit all capacitors and (2) replace all DC sources with a ground.**

9.4.1   Common-emitter amplifier (CE)

For a common-emitter amplifier of Figure 9.19, the input is applied to the base while the output is taken from the collector. This is amplifier BOTH provides voltage gain and current gain, but the output voltage is out of phase with input voltage. Based on
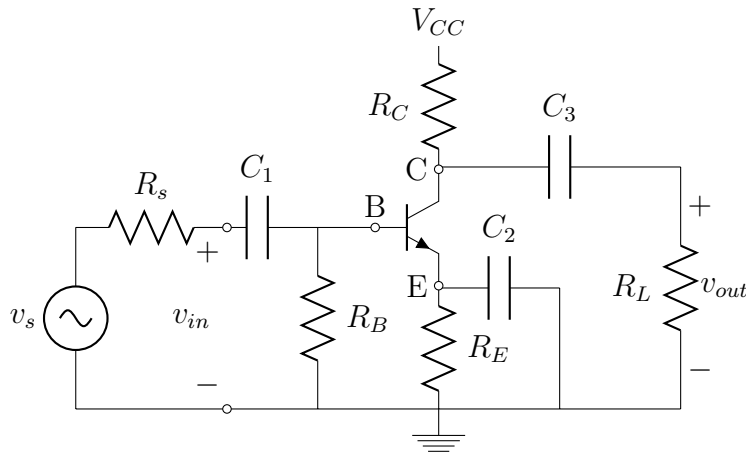
Figure 9.19: Common-Emitter Configuration

the small-signal just obtained, Figure 9.19 is equivalent to the following small-signal AC circuit Figure 9.20 and the circuit analysis techniques can be applied.
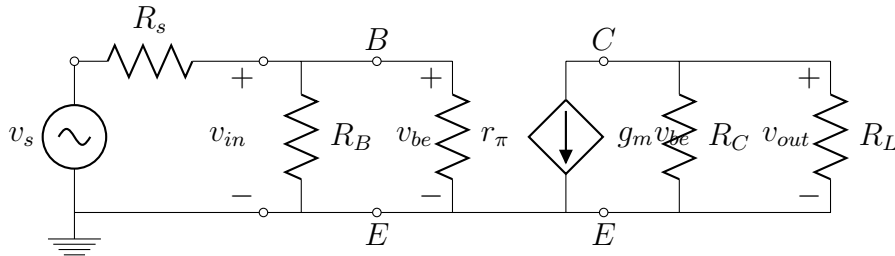
Figure 9.20: Equivalent Small Signal AC Circuit

- Voltage gain

$$A_v = \frac{v_{out}}{v_{in}} = \frac{0 - g_m v_{be} R'_L}{v_{be}} = -g_m R'_L = -\frac{\beta}{r_\pi} R'_L, \quad \text{out of phase} \tag{9.5}$$

where $R'_L = R_L // R_C$ and the minus sign means a phase reversed.

- Open-circuit voltage gain

$$A_{vo} = \frac{v_{out}}{v_{in}}|_{R_L=\infty} = \frac{-g_m v_{be} R_C}{v_{be}} = -g_m R_C = -\frac{\beta}{r_\pi} R_C, \quad \text{out of phase} \qquad (9.6)$$

- Input impedance seen looking into the input terminals

$$Z_{in} = \frac{v_{in}}{i_{in}} = \frac{v_{be}}{i_{in}} = R_B // r_\pi = \frac{1}{1/R_B + 1/r_\pi} \qquad (9.7)$$

- Current Gain

$$A_i = \frac{i_{out}}{i_{in}} = \frac{\frac{v_{out}}{R_L}}{\frac{v_{in}}{Z_{in}}} = A_v \frac{Z_{in}}{R_L}, \quad \text{in phase} \qquad (9.8)$$

- Output impedance seen looking back from the output terminals with input source zeroed

$$Z_{out} = R_C \qquad (9.9)$$

This is because $i_b = 0$ and $v_{be} = 0$ due to source being shorted. Therefore, the voltage-controlled current source $g_m v_{be} = 0$ is open.

- Power gain

$$A_p = A_v A_i$$

Example 9.8 *[1, Page 591] Given an amplifier circuit in Figure 9.21 where $\beta = 100$, $V_{BE} = 0.7$, find A_v, A_{vo}, Z_{in}, A_i, A_p and Z_{out}.*
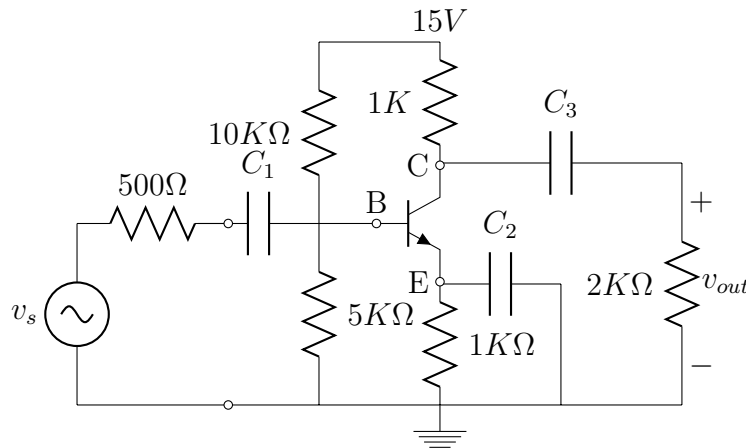
Figure 9.21: Common-Emitter Circuit

Solution: *First, to find the DC bias Q point, we need to find the Thevenin equivalent seen by terminals BE. And it is*

$$R_T = 3.33K\Omega \ and \ V_T = 5V$$

Traveling round the BE loop, we have

$$I_B = \frac{5 - 0.7}{3.33K + 101K} = 41.2\mu A, \quad I_{CQ} = 100 I_B = 4.12mA$$

and

$$V_{CEQ} = V_{CC} - I_C R_C - I_E R_E = 15 - 4.12m(1K + \frac{101}{100}1K) = 6.72V$$

Thus

$$r_\pi = \frac{\beta V_T}{I_{CQ}} = \frac{100 \times 0.026}{4.12m} = 631\Omega$$

Once the large-signal DC analysis is completed, we follow equations (9.5)-(9.9) to find answers.

$$A_v = -106, A_{vo} = -158, Z_{in} = 513\Omega, A_i = -28.1, A_p = 2980$$

Let the input signal be $v_s = 1 \sin wt \ mA$, the corresponding output is amplified and shown in Figure 9.22.
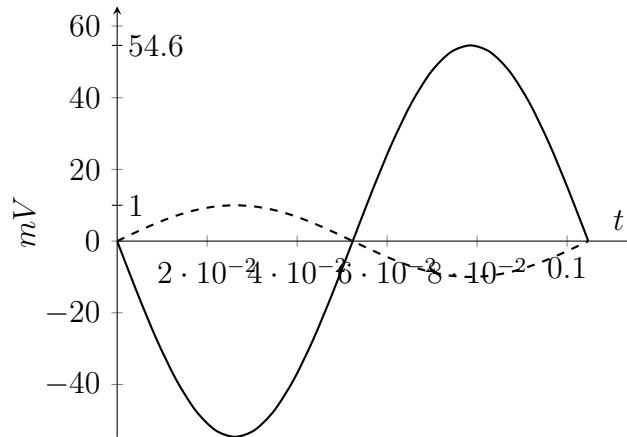
Figure 9.22: Inverted and Magnified AC Signal

□
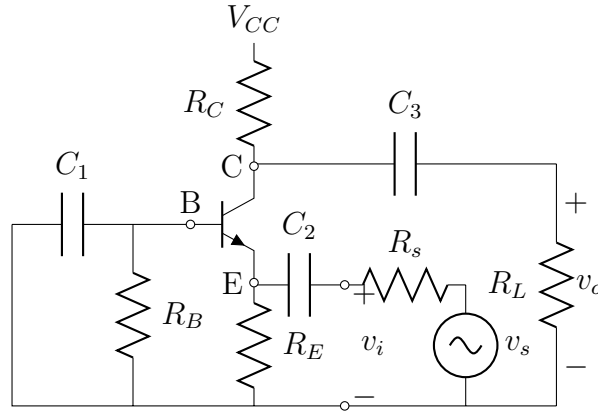
Figure 9.23: Common-Base Configuration
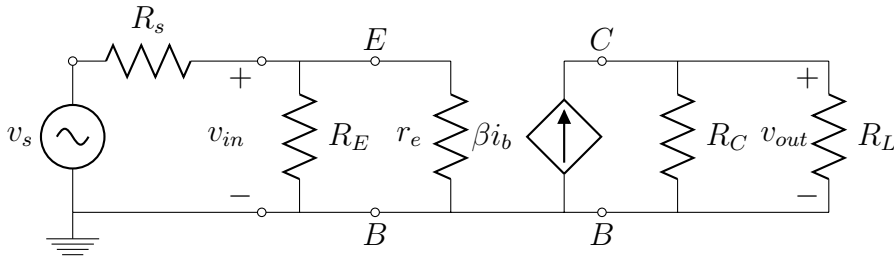
Figure 9.24: Equivalent Small Signal AC Circuit for CB Configuration

9.4.2   Common-base amplifier(CB)

As shown in Figure 9.23, the input is applied to emitter while the output is taken from the collector. This is a voltage amplifier having no current gain (by that, we mean $A_i < 1$.) whose AC equivalent circuit is displayed in Figure 9.24, which will be used to reveal its AC characteristics

• Voltage gain

$$A_v = \frac{v_{out}}{v_{in}}|_{R_L = \infty} = \frac{\beta i_b R'_L}{i_e r_e} = \frac{i_c}{i_e}(R'_L // r_e)$$

since $i_c \approx i_e$.

• Short-circuit current gain

$$A_i = \frac{i_{out}}{i_{in}}|_{R_L = 0} = \frac{\beta I_b}{\frac{v_{in}}{R_E // r_e}} = \frac{i_c}{i_e} = \alpha < 1$$

since $R_E >> r_e$ and $i_c < i_e$.

• Input impedance seen looking into the input terminals

$$Z_{in} = \frac{v_{in}}{i_{in}} = \frac{v_{be}}{i_{in}} = R_E // r_e = \frac{1}{1/R_E + 1/r_e} \tag{9.10}$$

• Output impedance seen looking back from the output terminals with source zeroed

$$Z_{out} = R_C \tag{9.11}$$

9.4.3 Common-collector amplifier(CC)

As shown in Figure 9.25, the input is applied to base while the output is taken from the emitter. This is a current amplifier having no voltage gain (by that, we mean $A_v < 1$.) Since the output signal follows the input signal (in phase for both voltage and current), this common-collector amplifier is also known as emitter follower. Moreover, there is no collector resistor but with a bypassing capacitor at the emitter so that it is directly connected to load for AC signals.
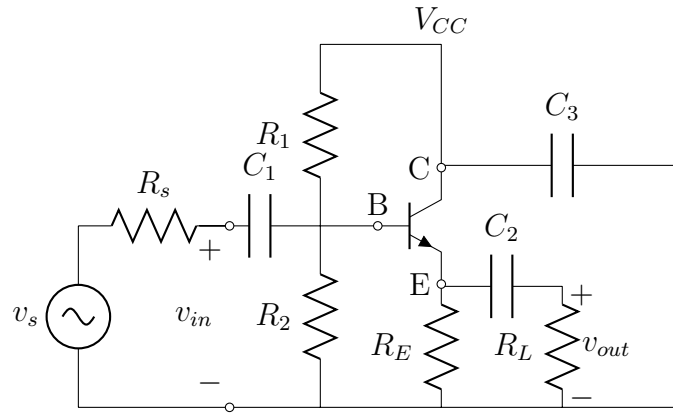
Figure 9.25: Common-Collector Configuration (Emitter Follower)

whose equivalent AC circuit is shown in Figure 9.26 where $R_B = R_1//R_2$.
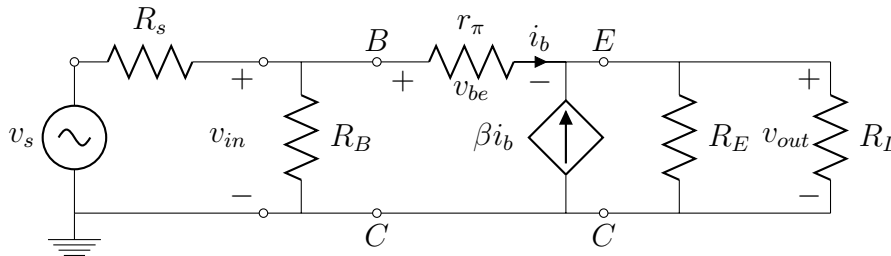
Figure 9.26: Equivalent Small Signal AC Circuit for CC Configuration

• Voltage gain

$$A_v = \frac{v_{out}}{v_{in}} = \frac{(1+\beta)i_b R_L'}{i_b(r_\pi + (1+\beta)R_L')} = \frac{(1+\beta)R_L'}{r_\pi + (1+\beta)R_L'} < 1$$

- Short-circuit current gain

$$A_i = \frac{i_{out}}{i_{in}}|_{R_L=0} = \frac{(1+\beta)i_b}{\frac{v_{in}}{R_B} + i_b} >> 1$$

where $R'_L = R_L//R_E$.

- Input impedance seen looking into the input terminals

$$Z_{in} = \frac{v_{in}}{i_{in}} = R_B//(r_\pi + (1+\beta)R'_L) \tag{9.12}$$

- Output impedance seen looking back from the output terminals with source zeroed. Attach a one ampere test current source to the output terminal and find the resulting voltage which is the output impedance seen from the output terminal.

$$Z_{out} = \frac{1}{\frac{1+\beta}{(R'_s+r_\pi)} + 1/R_E} \tag{9.13}$$

The emitter follower is used when applications requiring high input impedance or low output impedance.

9.4.4   Amplifier classifications

Three basic types of amplifiers are known: Class A, Class B, and Class C. These classifications are based on the percentage of time they are operating in the linear region.

- Class A: Conducting 100% of the input cycle; i.e., conducting the full 360° of the input cycle. The efficiency is 50% or less because it is operating all the time, thus consuming dc power.
- Class B: Conducting 50% of the input cycle; i.e., conducting only 180° of the input cycle. The efficiency is 78.5% since it is tuned off about one half of input cycle and there less dc power consumption.
- Class C: Conducting less than 50% of the input cycle. i.e., conducting much less than class B. Usually in the cutoff region. The efficiency is 99% because it is off during most of the operating time. Consequently, it is more efficient than class B due to less dc power consumption.

Amplifier efficiency is defined as

$$\eta = \frac{ac\ output\ power}{dc\ input\ power} \times 100\%$$

where dc input power is the power consumed by the circuit component, which is directly related to Q-point.
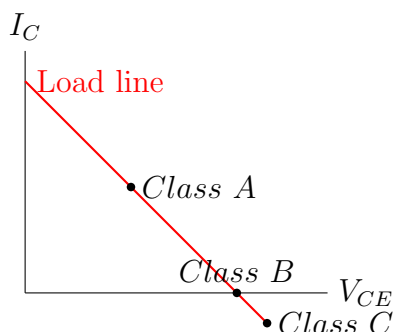
Figure 9.27: Q-point Location for its Classifications

9.5   *pnp* **Bipolar Junction Transistors**

Having investigated *npn* BJT, we turn our attention to *pnp* BJT where the base is constructed with n-type material that is situated between p-type material.
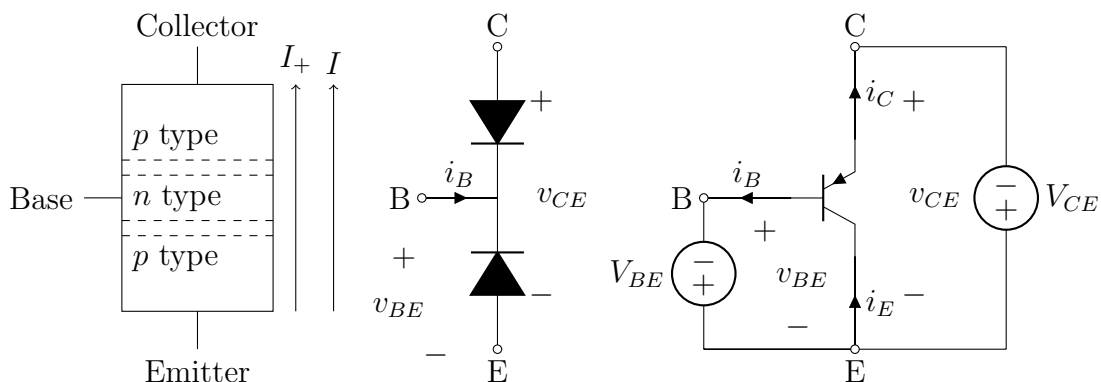
Figure 9.28: (a) A *pnp* BJT Transistor (b) Symbol

Inspecting Figure 9.28b with Figure 9.1b, we observe that except for the voltage polarity and current direction being reversed, the *pnp* BJT is almost identical to the *npn* BJT. Also, all BJT arrows point to n-type material for a fact and this makes *pnp* and *npn* easily identified.

9.6   Recap

After this chapter, the following knowledge is gained
• BJT is a nonlinear circuit element, requiring input and output characteristic curves.
• There are many bias techniques for BJT: fixed-bias, self-bias and feedback bias. Although circuit structures are different, the analysis on determination of Q-point requires same 3 steps.
• Load line analysis is crucial for a DC operating point. This is known as large-signal analysis.
• If there is a R_E in the emitter branch, the computation is more involved.
• Must be aware what operating region the element is in and the corresponding circuit models.
• A transistor can serve as a switch or amplifier.
• BJT is a current-controlled current source.
• All BJT arrows point to n-type material.

9.7   Problems

Problem 9.1 *For the elementary amplifier circuit in Figure 9.29, the collector-battery voltage $V_{CC} = 10V$. The Quiescent point Q is at $i_B = I_B = 0.1mA$ and $v_{CE} = V_{CE} = 5V$. $\beta = 40$. (a) Find the collect current I_C. (b) Specify R_L. (c) Predict the current gain A_i. (d) The output voltage v_{R_L} for an input current $i_B = 0.05 \sin t\, mA$.*
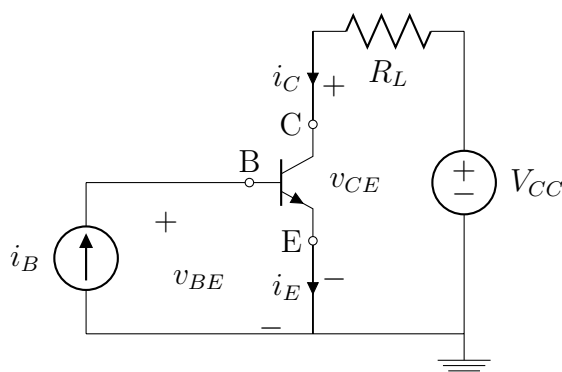
Figure 9.29: Circuit Diagram for Problem 9.1

Answer: *(a) $I_C = \beta I_B = 0.004A$. (b) $R_L = 1250\Omega$. (c) $A_i = \beta = 40$. (d) $v_L = i_C R_L = \beta i_B R_L = 2.5 \sin wt$.*

Problem 9.2 *For the circuit shown in Figure 9.30, determine the base voltage V_{BB} required to saturate the transistor. Here we assume $V_{CEsat} = 0.1V$, $V_{BEsat} = 0.6V$ and $\beta = 50$.*
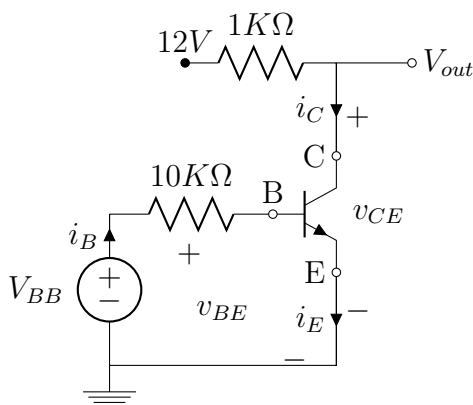
Figure 9.30: Circuit Diagram for Problem 9.2

Answer: $V_{BB} = 2.98V$.

Problem 9.3 *For the circuit of Figure 9.31, $\beta = 85$, $R_C = 2K$, answer the following questions: (a) when $R_B = 200K\Omega$ and $R_E = 0$, what mode is the BJT in? (b) when $R_B = 0$ and $R_E = 2K\Omega$, what mode is the BJT in? (c) when $R_B = 200K\Omega$ and $R_E = 2K\Omega$, find V_B, V_C, what mode is the BJT in?*
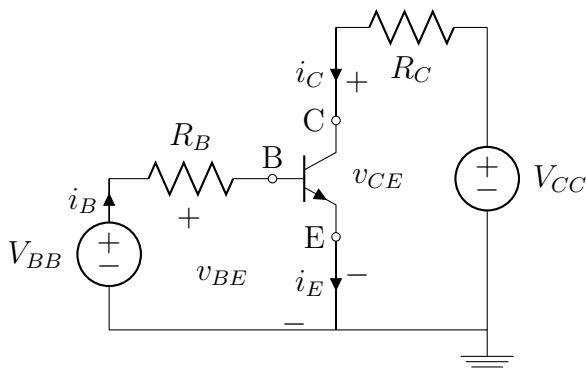
Figure 9.31: Circuit Diagram for Problem 9.3

Answer: *(a) $V_C = 6V > 0.7 = V_E$: Active mode. (b) $V_C = 5.08 < 7.7 = V_B$, $V_{CE} = -1.92V$: Saturation mode.*

Problem 9.4 *For the circuit in Figure 9.32 where $V_{CC} = 20V$, $R_C = 5K\Omega$, and $R_E = 1K\Omega$, determine the region of operation of the transistor if (a) $I_C = 1mA$, $I_B = 20\mu A$, $V_{BE} = 0.7V$. (b) $I_C = 3mA$, $I_B = 1.5\mu A$, $V_{BE} = 0.85V$.*
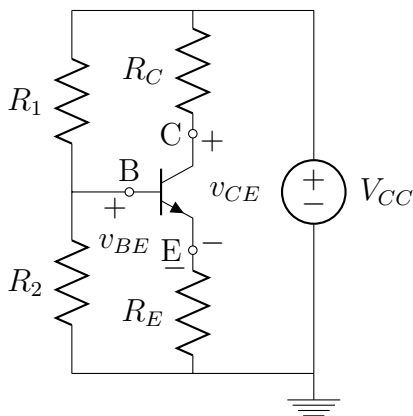
Figure 9.32: Circuit Diagram for Problem 9.4

Answer: *(a) $V_{CE} = 13.98V$. $V_{CB} = 13.28V$ Active region for CB junction is reverse-biased. (b) $V_C = 5V$, $V_{CE} = 0.5V$ and $V_{CB} = -0.35V$. Saturation region for CB junction is forward-biased.*
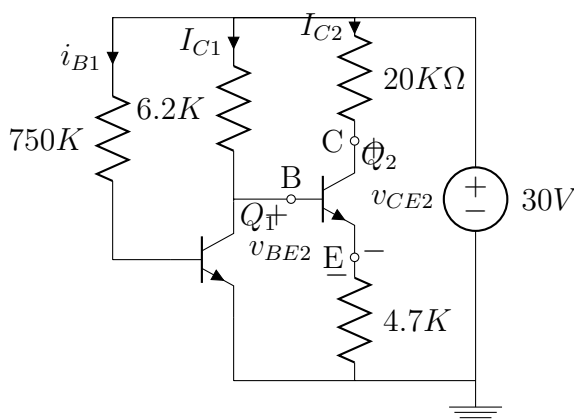
Figure 9.33: Circuit Diagram for Problem 9.5

Problem 9.5 *For the circuit of Figure 9.33, where $\beta = 100$ and $V_T = 0.7V$, find (a) I_{C1}, V_{C1}, V_{CE1} and (2) I_{C2}, V_{C2}, V_{CE2}.*
Answer: *(a) $I_{B1} = 39.07\mu A$, $I_{C1} = 3.907mA$, $V_{C1} = 5.77V$, $V_{CE1} = V_{C1}$. (b) $I_{E2} = 1.08mA$, $I_{C2} = 1.07mA$, $V_{CE2} = 3.58V$, $V_{C2} = 8.6V$.*

Problem 9.6 *For the circuits shown in Figure 9.34 where $\beta = 100$ and $V_{BE} = 0.6V$, find (a) the Q-point and (b) the maximum voltage gain.*
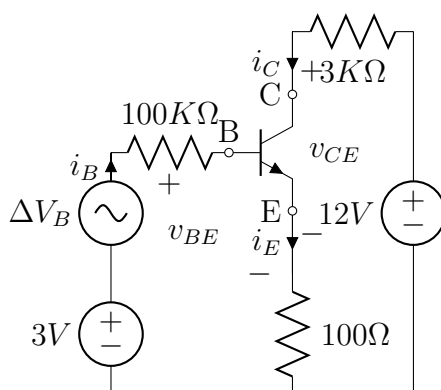
Figure 9.34: Circuit Diagram for Problem 9.6

Answer: *$I_B = 0.0218mA$. $I_C = 2.18mA$. $V_{CE} = 5.24V$. $A_v = -30/11$.*

Problem 9.7 (A Transistor as a Switch) *(a) When a transistor is turned on, its collector-emitter becomes a _____(open, short) circuit.*
(b) When a npn transistor is ON, a _____ (positive, negative) voltage is applied to the base. (Expand your thinking to OFF and pnp case.)
Answer: *(a) Short, (b) Positive.*

Problem 9.8 *Assuming* $v_{BE} = 0.7V$ *and* $\beta = 100$, *please find* I_{CQ} *and* V_{CEQ} *at cutoff, active and saturation regions respectively. (b) What is the actually region that it is in?*
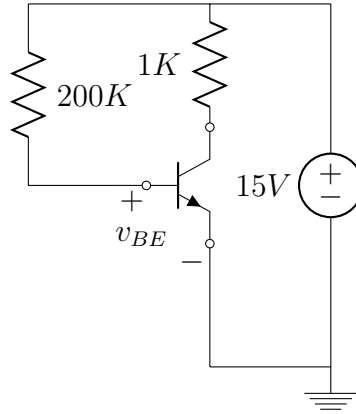
Figure 9.35: Circuit Diagram for Problem 9.8

Answer: *(a) Assume cutoff region: since* $I_B = 0$ *thus,* $V_{BE} = 15V > 0.5$. *A contradiction. Assume active region:* $I_B = \frac{15-0.7}{200K} = 0.0715mA$. $I_{CQ} = \beta I_B = 7.15mA$ *and* $V_{CEQ} = V_{CC} - I_{CQ} - 1K = 7.85V$. *This means* $V_{CE} > 0.2$ *and* $I_B > 0$ *are satisfied. Assume saturation region:* $I_{CQ} = \frac{15-0.2}{1K} = 14.8mA$. $V_{CEQ} = 0.2$, $I_B = \frac{15-0.7}{200K} = 71.5\mu A$, *but* $\beta I_B > I_C$ *is violated. A contradiction. (b) In active region.*

Problem 9.9 *Knowing that for a BJT, the base current* i_B *and base-to-emitter voltage* v_{BE} *at Q-point has the following identities*

$$i_B = I_{BQ} + i_b, \quad v_{BE}(t) = V_{BEQ} + v_{be}(t), \quad i_B = (1-\alpha)I_{ES}(e^{\frac{v_{BE}}{V_t}} - 1)$$

(a) Find the trans-resistance $\pi_m = \frac{v_{be}}{i_b}$. *(b) Plot the small signal equivalent circuit. (a) Such amplification is equivalent to what kind of dependent source?*

Answer:

$$\frac{di_B}{dv_{BE}}|_Q = (1-\alpha)I_{ES}e^{\frac{v_{BEQ}}{V_t}}\frac{1}{V_t} = \frac{I_{BQ}}{V_t}.$$

(c) Current-controlled current source.

Problem 9.10 *Assume* $\beta = 200$, *and* $V_{BE} = 0.7$. *(a) Use DC bias point analysis to find* I_{CQ} *and* V_{CEQ}. *(b) What mode is the BJT in?*

Answer:

Viewing the transistor as a supernode and labeling it as V_E, *we have*

$$\frac{V_E}{10K} + \frac{V_E + 0.2 - 15}{10K} + \frac{V_E + 0.7 - 15}{100K} + \frac{V_E + 0.7}{200K} = 0$$

Solving yields $V_E = 7.533$, $V_{CEQ} = 0.2V$. *Thus* $I_{CQ} = \frac{15-7.533-0.2}{10K} = 0.7267mA$ *and* $I_B = I_E - I_C = 0.0266mA$. *Since* $\beta I_B > I_C$, *it is in saturation mode.*
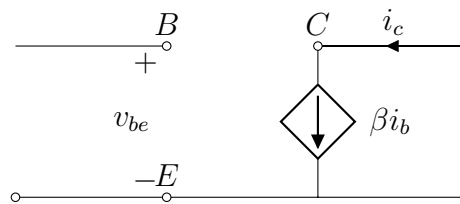
Figure 9.36: Solution of Problem 9.9
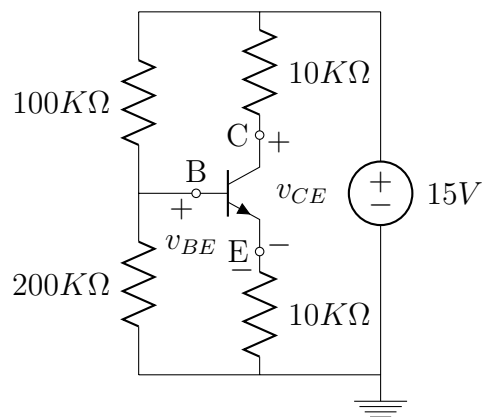
Figure 9.37: Circuit Diagram for Problem 9.10
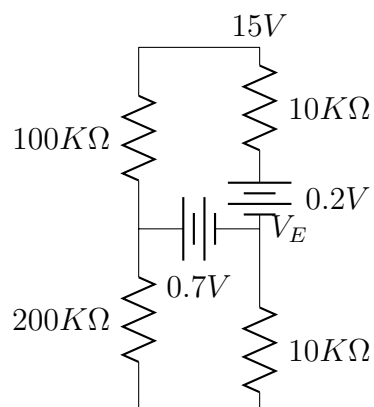
Figure 9.38: Equivalent Circuit for Problem 9.10

Chapter 10

Unipolar Transistors

Unipolar means only a single type of charge carrier is necessary for device operation whilst, in contrast, bipolar then means two different types of charge carriers are required for a device to operate. Unipolar transistors are also known as Field-Effect Transistors (FETs). They are two types of FETs:

(1) Junction Field-Effect Transistor (JFET) and

(2) Metal-Oxide-Semiconductor Field-Effect Transistor (MOSFET[1]).

Since only one type of charge carrier is needed for the device to work, all types of FETs are sub-categoried as

- n-type JFET and p-type JFET
- n-enhanced MOSFET and p-enhanced MOSFET.

JFET and MOSFET have different structures, but bear the same $i-v$ characteristics. In addition to the difference in mobile carriers, unipolar transistors have another major difference when compared with bipolar transistors. Bipolar transistors require input current $i_B \neq 0$, but unipolar transistors almost have no input current $i_G \approx 0$, resulting in high input resistance for unipolar transistor.

10.1 Junction Field-Effect Transistor

A n-channel JFET is shown in Figure 10.1. With the JFET symbol drawn, an arrow pointing in represents an n channel-JFET while an arrow pointing out stands for a p-channel JFET.

In almost all applications, the pn junction is always reverse biased, meaning the potential voltage at gate terminal is more negative than the source terminal (i.e., $v_{GS} < 0$) and resulting in the current flowing into the gate is zero ($i_G = 0$).

To begin, we define a **depletion region** is a region contains no mobile carriers and does not mean mobile carriers can not pass this region. A depletion region reduces the

---

[1]Also known as IGFET. Insulated-Gate FET due to SiO_2.
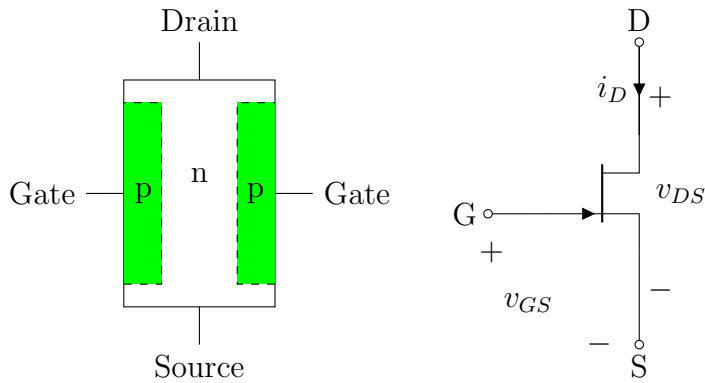
Figure 10.1: (a) A n-Channel JFET Transistor, (b) Symbol
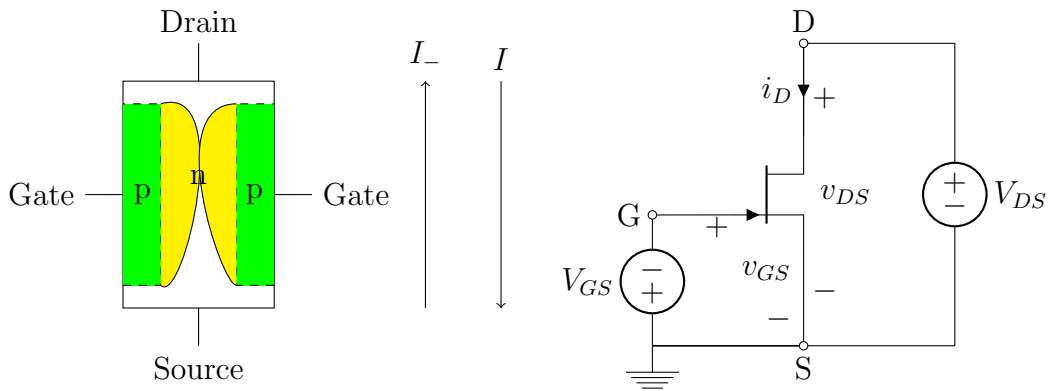
Figure 10.2: (a) Depletion Area for n-Channel, (b) Reverse Biased at Gate-Source, $v_{GS} < 0$, $V_p < 0$

width of the conducting n channel when a reverse bias v_{GS} is applied to gate-source terminal. The depletion region increases (and hence resistance increases too) as the gate is more negative than the source. However, when the negative voltage reaches a critical negative value $V_p < 0$, the n channel is pinched off. Therefore, we define the pinch-off voltage (V_p) as the voltage of $v_{GS} < 0$ that will make the conducting channel almost disappears (because resistance becomes infinity) while the v_{DS} is held fixed.

Notice that for JFETs operations, $v_{GS} < 0$ must hold for all time because the pn junction will be forward biased when $v_{GS} > 0$ and the drain-source current will become uncontrollable. This is the main drawback to JFET operation, which requires the reverse bias of the gate to deplete the channel of free carriers and thus controlling the resistance (known as voltage-controlled resistor). This type of operation is called depletion-mode operation.

As shown in Figure 10.2, under normal condition current will flow from drain to
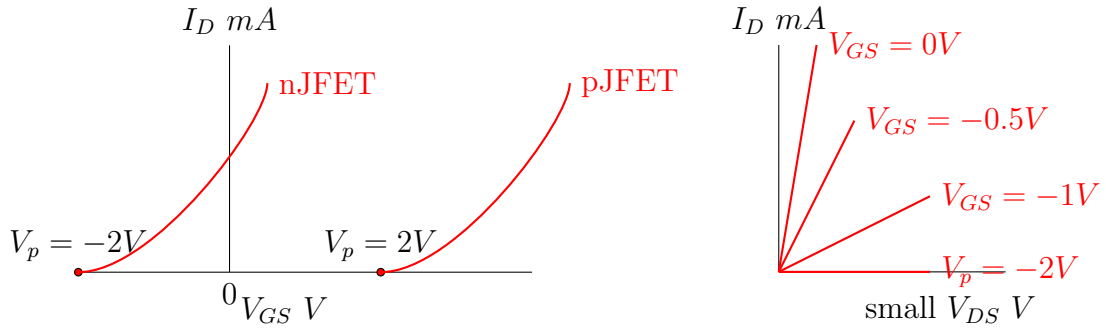
Figure 10.3: (a) i_D vs. v_{GS}, (b) i_D vs. v_{DS}

source if there is a voltage difference $v_{DS} > 0$ between them. (Notice that both pn junctions are reverse biased **at all time** while operating.)

1. When $0 < v_{DS} < 0.5$ is small, we have $v_{GD} = v_{GS} - v_{DS} < 0$ (still reverse biased on drain side pn junctions). The width of n-channel remains constant/uniform, like a resistor, and a linear relationship holds $i_D = \frac{v_{DS}}{r_{DS}}$, known as linear region (Figure 10.4)

2. When $0.5 < v_{DS}$ becomes larger, the reverse bias at the drain side $v_{GD} = v_{GS} - v_{DS} \leq V_p$ makes the n channel thinner and thinner, reaching pinch-off when $v_{GD} = v_{GS} - v_{DS} = V_p < 0$ or equivalently, $v_{DS} = v_{GS} - V_p > 0$.

3. When $v_{DS} \geq v_{GS} - V_p > 0 (= V_{DSS})$. The n channel becomes independent of further increases of v_{DS} because pinch-off is reached and no further depletion occurs. So the I_D current remains constant and it is called saturation region.
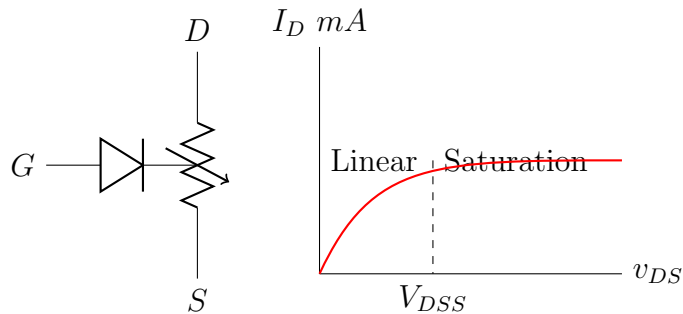
Figure 10.4: (a) Voltage-Controlled Resistor, $0 > V_{GS} > V_p$, (b) Linear and Saturation Region

Also notice that the negative electron flow goes from source to drain and the current is defined as flow of positive charges, we, therefore, have current flowing from drain to source for the n-channel JFETs, resulting in potential voltage at drain is higher than the potential voltage at source ($v_{DS} = v_D - v_S > 0$). We have explained
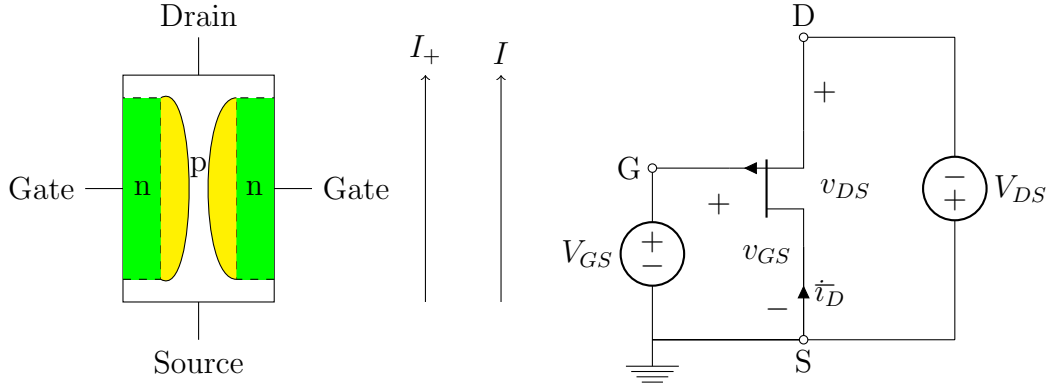
Figure 10.5: (a) Depletion Area for p-Channel, (b) Reverse Biased at Gate-Source, $v_{GS} > 0$, $V_p > 0$

the internal behaviors, resulting in three operating regions:

• Cutoff Region: For $v_{GS} < V_p$, the pn junction between GS is reversed biased and $i_G = 0$.

• Triode Region (linear region): $v_{GD} \leq v_{GS} - V_p$ and $v_{GS} \geq V_p$. The drain current is given by

$$i_D = K[2(v_{GS} - V_p)v_{DS} - v_{DS}^2]$$

where V_p is the threshold voltage for JFET, device constant

$$K = \frac{W}{L}\frac{KP}{2}$$

and W and L is the width and length of the NMOS channel while $KP = 50\mu A$. It is noted that equation (10.1) is a function of v_{GS} and v_{DS}. As readily seen in Figure 10.8, in the triode region the NMOS behaves as a voltage-controlled resistor whose i_D current is controlled by v_{DS}, but the resistor decreases as v_{GS} increases.

• Saturation Region: $v_{GD} > v_{GS} - V_p$ and $v_{GS} \geq V_p$ where i_D becomes constant in the sense that it is a function of v_{DS}, unknown but fixed at Q-point.

$$i_D = K(v_{GS} - V_p)^2$$

It will become clear that these equations aforementioned are identical to MOSFETs. In summary, we have the following observations:

1. For n-type FETs, the charge carrier is free electrons and $V_p < 0$, while the charge carrier is holes for p-type FETs and $V_p > 0$.

2. Compared with Figures 10.2b and 10.5b, the working principles are the same except the direction of drain current and polarity of bias voltage are reversed.

3. The Field Effect Transistor (FET) is an active device. In simple terms, it is a voltage-controlled valve. The gate-source voltage (V_{GS}) controls the drain current (i_D).

4. A device which is normally-on at $v_{GS} = 0$ is termed a depletion-mode device.

We have explained the internal behaviors of JFETs from the physics properties of pn junctions. Another important unipolar devices to learn, known as MOSFETs, have the same internal behaviors as JFETs do. Thus, in what follows, we will focus on study of the external electrical behavior of MOSFET when bias voltage is applied. In other words, we will skip the circuit analysis for MOSFET which is identical to JFETs.

10.2 Metal-Oxide-Semiconductor Field-Effect Transistor

Abbreviated as MOSFET and shown in Figure 10.7, when a **positive voltage** is applied to the gate relative to the source, negative electrons are induced under the gate area because the oxide serves as a capacitor and in the beginning these electrons neutralize with p-type holes (resulting in depletion first), but as a threshold voltage (V_{th}) is reached, the depletion area becomes an n-enhanced channel MOSFET (NMOS) and becomes conducting. Such operation is known as enhancement-type MOSFET, whose operation is restricted to enhancement mode, although it starts with depletion first. A device which is normally-off at zero gate-source voltage ($v_{GS} = 0$) is called an enhancement-mode device, as shown in Figure 10.6.

Drain current is controlled by the voltage to the gate. The characteristics of an NMOS transistor is plotted below.

Since the internal behaviors are same as JFETs and were discussed previously, we will simply lay out three operating regions:

• Cutoff Region: For $v_{GS} < V_{th}$, the pn junction between DS is reversed biased and $i_D = 0$.

• Triode Region (linear region): $v_{DS} \leq v_{GS} - V_{th}$ and $v_{GS} \geq V_{th}$. The drain current is given by

$$i_D = K[2(v_{GS} - V_{th})v_{DS} - v_{DS}^2] \tag{10.1}$$
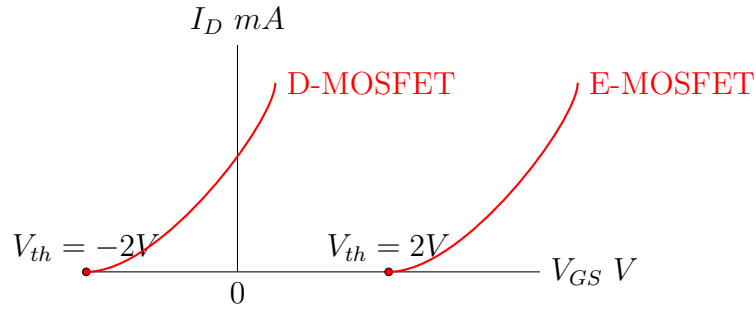
Figure 10.6: Depletion-MOSFET and Enhancement-MOSFET Transconductance Curves
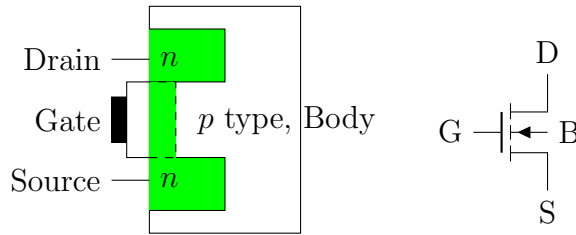
Figure 10.7: (a) NMOS/n Enhanced MOSFET Transistor, (b) Symbols
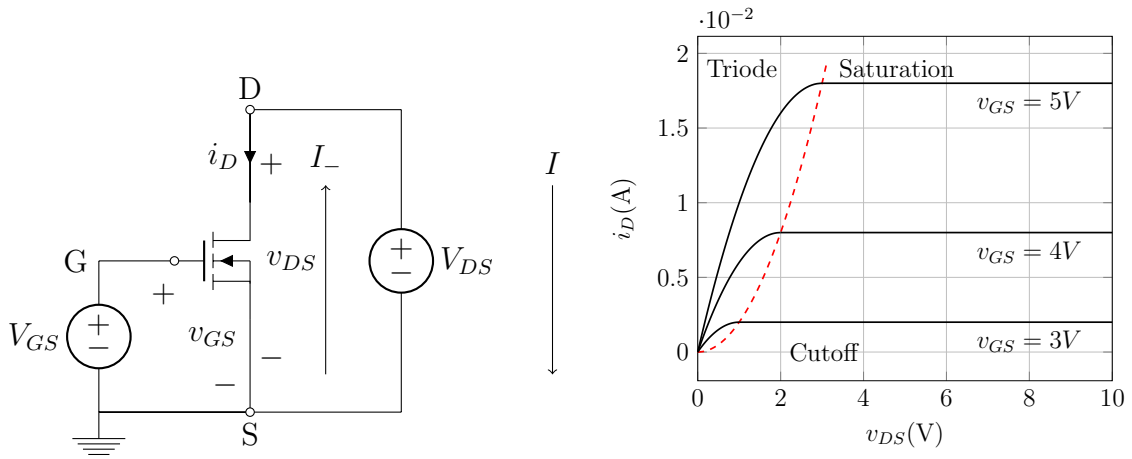
Figure 10.8: (a) Bias Circuit, (b) Drain Characteristic Curves for an NMOS

where V_{th} is the threshold voltage, device constant

$$K = \frac{W}{L} \frac{KP}{2}$$

and W and L is the width and length of the NMOS channel while $KP = 50\mu A$. It is noted that equation (10.1) is a function of v_{GS} and v_{DS} As readily seen in Figure

10.8, in the triode region the NMOS behaves as a voltage-controlled resistor whose i_D current is controlled by v_{DS}, but the resistor decreases as v_{GS} increases.

• Saturation Region: $v_{DS} > v_{GS} - V_{th}$ and $v_{GS} \geq V_{th}$ where i_D becomes constant in the sense that it is a function of v_{GS}, unknown but fixed at Q-point.

$$i_D = K(v_{GS} - V_{th})^2 \tag{10.2}$$

• The boundary region occurs at $v_{DS} = v_{GS} - V_{th}$. Substituting $V_{th} = v_{GS} - v_{DS}$ into equation (10.1) yields

$$i_D = Kv_{DS}^2 \tag{10.3}$$

characterizing the boundary in the $i_D - v_{DS}$ characteristic curve for NMOS transistors.

Note that the curve is derived under the assumption of $v_{GS} \geq V_{th}$ and thus does not extend to $0 < v_{GS} < V_{th}$, because a forward bias on the junction would cause current to flow in the gate. Therefore $i_G = 0$ is a good approximation.

Example 10.1 *Assume an E-MOSFET has values of $I_D = 14mA$ at $V_{GS} = 10V$ and $V_{GS,th} = 1.5V$. Determine the value of I_D at $V_{GS} = 5V$.*
Solution: *Utilizing equation (10.2), we have $K = 10m/(10 - 1.5)^2 = 136\mu$ and $i_D = 138\mu(5 - 1.5)^2 = 1.69mA$.*

10.3 Large-Signal Circuit Models

10.3.1 Gate bias

Consider the following circuit, Figure 10.9, that could have been reduced from a self-biased four resistor structure. (See Figure 9.11 on page 291 for inspiration.) To find
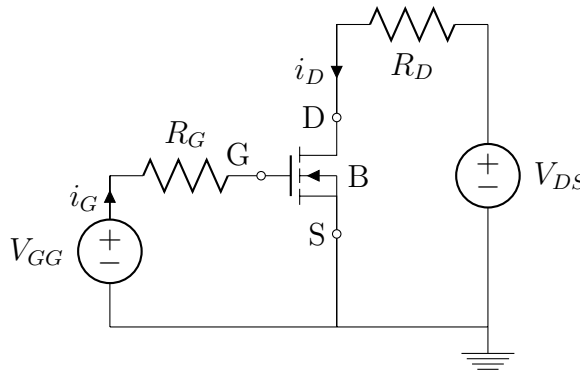
Figure 10.9: A Fixed Base Bias Circuit

an operating point in saturation region ($v_{DS} > v_{GS} - V_{th}$), we need to analyze the

input circuit and output circuit respectively and this can be done using Kirchhoff's circuit laws.

$$V_{GG} = i_G R_G + v_{GS} + i_D R_D$$

which will intersect the x- and y-axis of the input characteristic curve at

$$x = v_{GS} = V_{GG}, \quad y = i_D = \frac{V_{BB}}{R_B}$$

and

$$i_D = K(v_{GS} - v_{th})^2$$

Similarly, for the output circuit, we have

$$V_{DD} = v_{DS} + i_D R_D$$

$$x = v_{DS} = V_{DD}, \quad y = i_D = \frac{V_{DD}}{R_D}$$
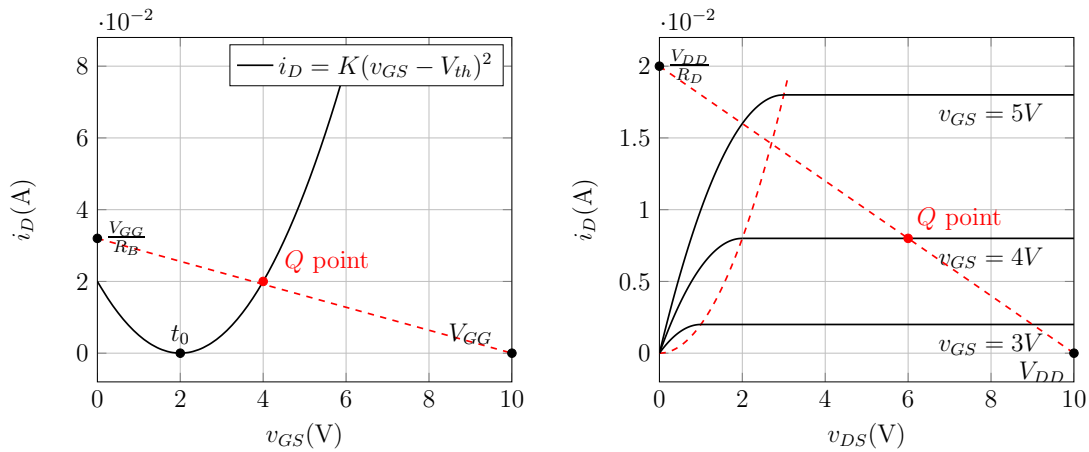
Figure 10.10: NMOS Load Line (a) Input $i - v$ Curve, (b) Output $i - v$ Curve

Example 10.2 (Gate Bias) *Given the circuit shown in 10.11, find the Q-point and v_{out}. The transistor has $KP = 50\mu A/V^2$, $V_{th} = 2V$, $L = 10\mu m$ and $W = 400\mu m$.*
Solution:
For input loop, to find Q-point, we should solve the following simultaneous equations first

$$5 = v_{GSQ} + i_{DQ}2.7K \quad I_{DQ} = K(V_{GSQ} - 2)^2$$

where $K = \frac{W}{L}\frac{KP}{2} = 1mA/V^2$. After solving a quadratic equation, we find $V_{GSQ} = 2.87V$ and 0.74 (infeasible) and $I_{DQ} = 0.78mA$. And from the output circuit, we obtain

$$V_{out} = 20 - 0.78m \times 4.7K = 16.33V.$$
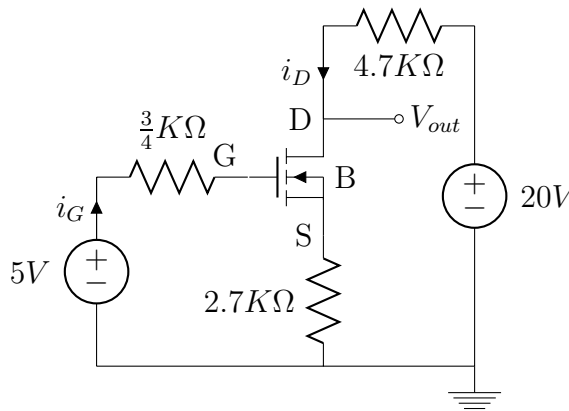
Figure 10.11: Circuit Diagram for Example 10.2

□

PSpiceLab 10.1 (Find Q-Point) *Verify the circuits in Figure 10.11 and draw the load line via PSpice.*
Solution:
Objectives: (1) Understand the $i - v$ characteristics of input and output behaviors of NMOS. (2) Learn dual DC sweep techniques.
PreLab: Study the analytical aspects detailed in 10.3.
Lab: Follow the steps to find the result as expected.
PostLab: Why is that R_G is missing?[2]

□

10.3.2   Drain-feedback bias

This means that the drain current is fed back to the gate. This is equivalent to the collector-feedback biasing method that we learned in the BJT Chapter. However, the remaining self-feedback structures in BJT can not be used with E-MOSFET due to the fact that V_{GS} must be positive. It is noted that with the high impedance R_G, no current will flow into R_G, resulting a short-circuit. Thus $V_{GS} = V_{DS}$.

$$V_{DS} = V_{DD} - R_D I_D$$

Example 10.3 *[5] (Drain-Feedback Bias) Let $V_{DD} = 20V$, $R_D = 1K\Omega$, $R_G = 5M\Omega$ and $I_D = 10mA$, find V_{DS}.*
Solution: *It is fairly easy to find $V_{DS} = 20 - 10m \times 1K = 10V$.*

---

[2]Ans: $I_G = 0$ for reverse bias sake and the voltage drop on R_G would be zero.
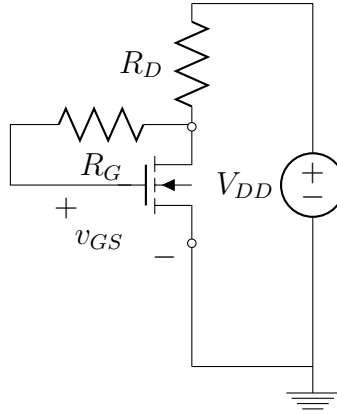
Figure 10.12: Drain-Feedback Bias Circuit with high impedance R_G

10.4   Small-Signal Circuit Models

The load line analysis is pretty straightforward and is known as the large-signal analysis because the bias DC values are much larger than AC excitations. Usually, for amplification, we need to apply circuit analysis instead of graphical analysis. To this end, we need an equivalent small-signal circuit in order that circuit theorem can be used. We have mentioned that for NMOS the drain current is a function of v_{DS} and v_{GS}, which is repeated here for convenience.

$$
\begin{aligned}
i_D &= K[2(v_{GS} - V_{th})v_{DS} - v_{DS}^2] \quad \text{for linear region} \\
i_D &= K(v_{GS} - V_{th})^2 \quad \text{for saturation region}
\end{aligned}
$$

We use notation below, assuming a Q-point is established and a signal can be represented as a small AC excitation superimposed on the dc quantities

$$
\begin{aligned}
v_{GS} &= V_{GSQ} + v_{gs} \\
v_{DS} &= V_{DSQ} + v_{ds} \\
i_D &= I_{DQ} + i_d = I_{DQ} + \frac{v_{ds}}{r_d} \\
i_D &= I_{GQ} + i_d = I_{GQ} + g_m v_{gs}
\end{aligned}
$$

It is readily seen that transconductance between i_d and v_{gs} and drain resistance r_d

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{1}{r_d} &= \frac{i_d}{v_{ds}} = \frac{\partial i_D}{\partial v_{DS}}\Big|_{V_{DSQ}} \\
&= 2K[(V_{GSQ} - V_{th}) - V_{DSQ}] > 0 \text{ for linear region} & (10.4) \\
g_m &= \frac{i_d}{v_{gs}} = \frac{\partial i_D}{\partial v_{GS}}\Big|_{V_{GSQ}} = 2K(V_{GSQ} - V_{th}) \text{ for saturation region} & (10.5) \\
&= 2\sqrt{K I_{DQ}} = \sqrt{2KP}\sqrt{W/L}\sqrt{I_{DQ}} & (10.6)
\end{aligned}
$$

In particular, equation (10.6) says the values of g_m depend on Q-point and device parameters. Thus increasing ratio of W/L or I_{DQ} obtains a higher value of g_m.
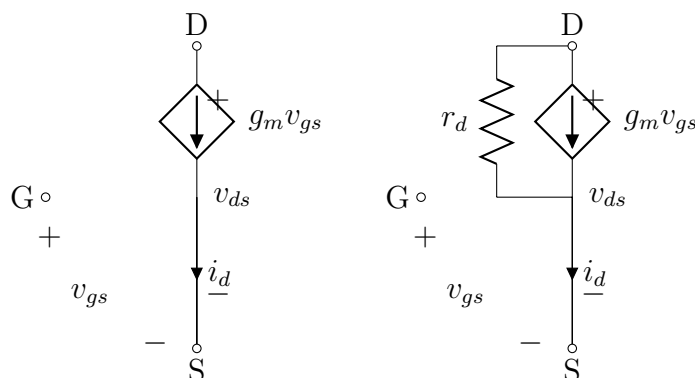
Figure 10.13:   Voltage-Controlled Current Source

10.5   Basic NMOS Amplifier Configurations

Once the small-signal models, Figure 10.4, are established, we, in what follows, will investigate the small-signal circuit for the most commonly seen amplifiers based on NMOS.

10.5.1   Common-source amplifier (CS)

Consider the following actual circuit for a common-source amplifier. Based on the
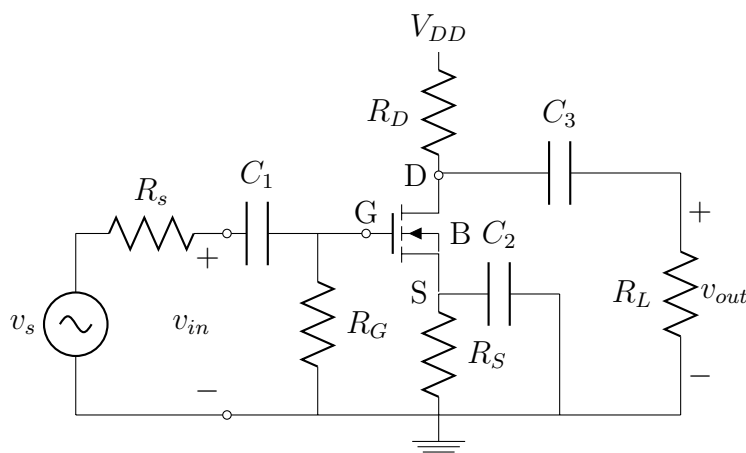
Figure 10.14:   Common Source Configuration

small-signal just obtained, Figure 10.14 is equivalent to the following small-signal AC circuit and the circuit analysis techniques can be applied.
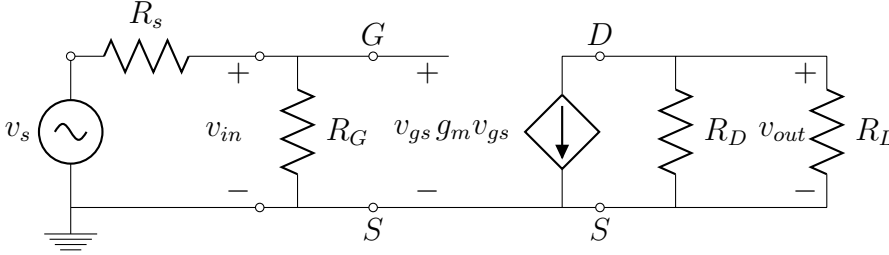
Figure 10.15:   Small Signal AC Circuit for Common-Source Configuration

- Voltage gain

$$A_v = \frac{v_{out}}{v_{in}} = \frac{0 - g_m v_{gs} R'_L}{v_{gs}} = -g_m R'_L \tag{10.7}$$

where $R'_L = R_L // R_D$ and the minus sign means a phase reversed.

- Open-circuit voltage gain

$$A_{vo} = \frac{v_{out}}{v_{in}}|_{R_L=\infty} = \frac{-g_m v_{be} R_C}{v_{be}} = -g_m R_C = -\frac{\beta}{r_\pi} R_C \tag{10.8}$$

- Input impedance seen looking into the input terminals

$$Z_{in} = \frac{v_{in}}{i_{in}} = \frac{v_{be}}{i_{in}} = R_G \tag{10.9}$$

- Current Gain

$$A_i = \frac{i_{out}}{i_{in}} = \frac{\frac{v_{out}}{R_L}}{\frac{v_{in}}{Z_{in}}} = A_v \frac{Z_{in}}{R_L} \tag{10.10}$$

- Output impedance seen looking back from the output terminals with source zeroed

$$Z_{out} = R_D \tag{10.11}$$

This is because $v_{gs} = 0$ due to source is shorted. Therefore, the voltage-controlled current source is open.

- Power gain

$$A_p = A_v A_i$$
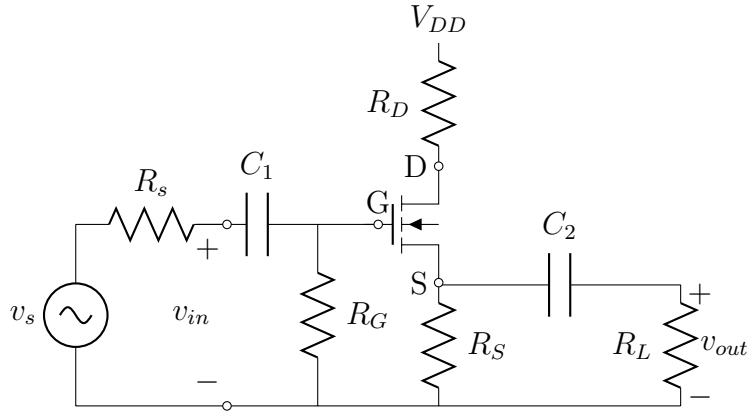
Figure 10.16:   Source Follower Configuration
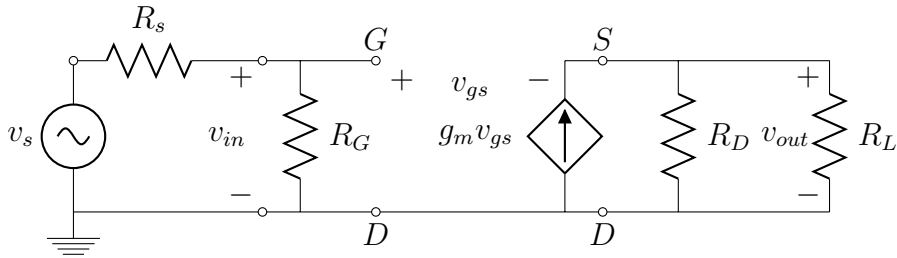
Figure 10.17:   Small Signal AC Circuit for Source Follower Configuration

10.5.2   Source follower

whose equivalent small-signal circuit is
   • Voltage gain
Obviously, the output voltage is given below

$$v_{out} = g_m v_{gs} R'_L$$

and the input voltage is

$$v_{in} = v_{gs} + v_{out} = v_{gs}(1 + g_m R'_L)$$

These two equations yield

$$A_v = \frac{v_{out}}{v_{in}} = \frac{g_m R'_L}{1 + g_m R'_L} \tag{10.12}$$

where $R'_L = R_L // R_D$ and the minus sign means a phase reversed.
   • Open-circuit voltage gain

$$A_{vo} = \frac{v_{out}}{v_{in}}\Big|_{R_L=\infty} = \frac{-g_m v_{be} R_C}{v_{be}} = -g_m R_C = -\frac{\beta}{r_\pi} R_C < 1 \tag{10.13}$$

- Input impedance seen looking into the input terminals

$$Z_{in} = \frac{v_{in}}{i_{in}} = R_G \tag{10.14}$$

- Current Gain

$$A_i = \frac{i_{out}}{i_{in}} = \frac{\frac{v_{out}}{R_L}}{\frac{v_{in}}{Z_{in}}} = A_v \frac{Z_{in}}{R_L} \tag{10.15}$$

- Output impedance seen looking back from the output terminals with source zeroed

$$Z_{out} = R_D \tag{10.16}$$

- Power gain

$$A_p = A_v A_i$$

10.5.3 Common-gate amplifier (CG)
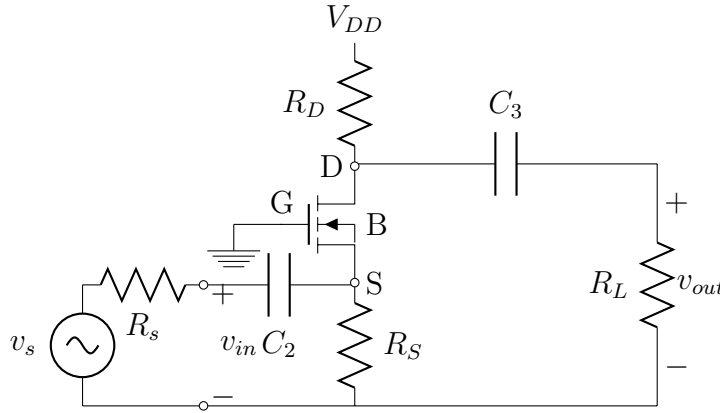
Figure 10.18: Common-Gate Configuration

where $R'_L = R_D//R_L$.
- Voltage gain

$$A_{vo} = \frac{v_{out}}{v_{in}}\Big|_{R_L=\infty} = \frac{g_m v_i R_o}{v_i} = g_m(R_C//r_o)$$

the short-circuit current gain

$$A_{is} = \frac{i_o}{i_i}\Big|_{R_L=0} = \frac{g_m v_i}{\frac{v_i}{R_i}} = g_m R_i = g_m(R_E//r_e) = g_m r_e = \alpha < 1$$

the overall voltage gain

$$A_v = \frac{v_o}{v_s} = \frac{v_o}{v_i}\frac{v_i}{v_s} = [g_m(R_o//R_L)]\frac{R_i}{R_i + R_S} = (\frac{r_e}{r_e + R_S})g_m(R_C//r_o//R_L)$$
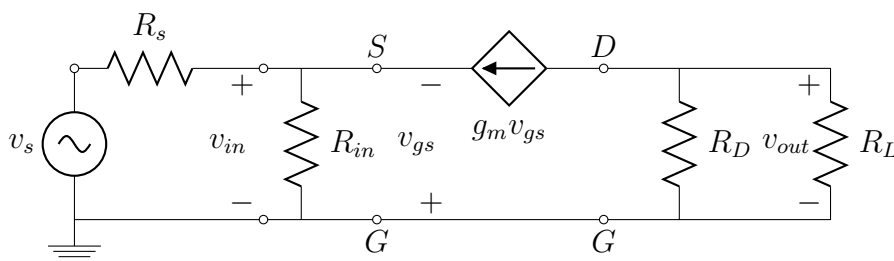
Figure 10.19: Small Signal AC Circuit for CG Configuration

10.6 PMOS Transistors

Interchanging the n and p region of n-enhanced NMOS devices establishes p-enhanced PMOS devices. The characteristics of PMOS is similar to those of NMOS and we will stop short on discussing their external properties further. However, the bias circuit merits an investigation. PMOS is constructed by exchanging p and n material and a **negative voltage** is applied to the gate relative to the source, resulting in a p-enhanced channel under the gate area.
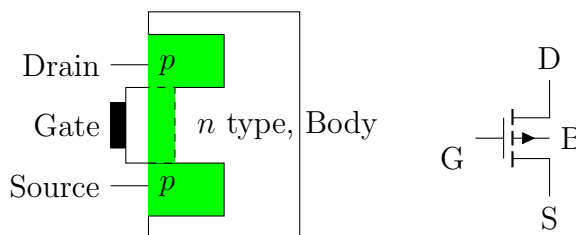
Figure 10.20: (a) PMOS/p Enhanced MOSFET Transistor, (b) Symbols
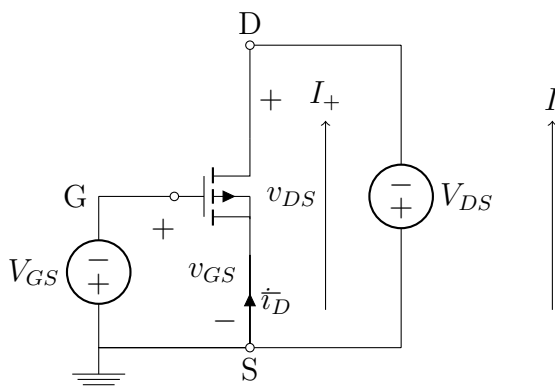
Figure 10.21: Bias Circuit for PMOS

Compare Figure 10.21 with Figure 10.8(a), we readily see that the voltage polarities and current direction are inverted. Notice that for PMOS, all v_{DS} and v_{GS} assume negative values and $V_{th} < 0$ while for NMOS, both assume positive values and $V_{th} > 0$.

When NMOS and PMOS are constructed on the same wafer, it is known as CMOS (complementary MOS)

PSpiceLab 10.2 (CMOS NOT Gate) *Verify the CMOS circuit via PSpice where a CMOS inverter is constructed with two MOS transistors. One is PMOS at the top and NMOS is at the bottom.*
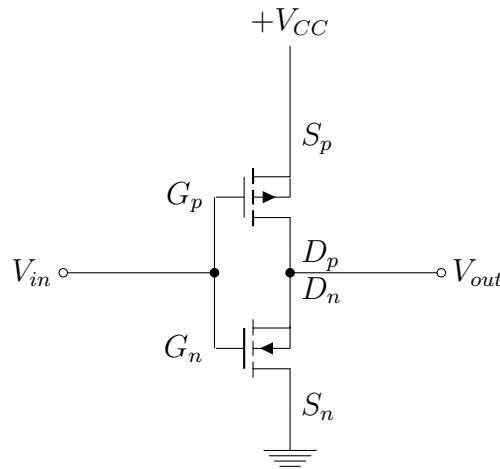
Figure 10.22:   NOT GATE

Solution:
Objectives: NOT gate is the key to modern computer.
PreLab: NMOS at the top requires a positive voltage with respect to its source (which is connected to a $+V_{CC}$) to conduct while PMOS requires a negative voltage with respect to its source. Therefore. V_{in}=high $> V_{th}$, NMOS is shorted and PMOS is open. $\Rightarrow$ V_{out}=low.
V_{in}=low $< V_{th}$, NMOS is open and PMOS is shorted. $\Rightarrow V_{out}$=high.
Lab: Follow the steps to see confirmation.
PostLab: (1) CMOS NOT gate is known as logic gate since CMOS NAND gate and CMOS NOR gate can be constructed in a similar fashion. They are the backbone of VLSI (Very Large Scale Integration) circuits .

$\square$

10.7   Recap

In this chapter, we learned

• Diode physics for pn junctions are crucial to understand the working principles of all unipolar devices.

• All sources are the providers of mobile carriers. n-type provides free electrons while p-time provides holes.

• NMOS can have 3 operating regions – triode, saturation and cutoff. It is a voltage-controlled current source.

• Input current $i_G = 0$ is a unique feature in unipolar analysis. On the other hand, BJT requires input current I_B. This explains why current-controlled and voltage-controlled devices is named after this property.

• In triode region, it is linear region and serves as a resistor.

• Be aware of differences in the bias circuits for unipolar devices.

10.8   Problems

Problem 10.1 *For the n-channel enhancement-only ideal MOSFET in Figure 10.23, the manufacturer specifies $V_T = 4V$ and $I_{DS} = 7.2mA$ at $V_{GS} = 10V$. For $V_{DD} = 20V$ and $R_G = 100M\Omega$, (a) find the constant K. (b) Specify R_D for operation at $V_{DS} = 5$ V.*
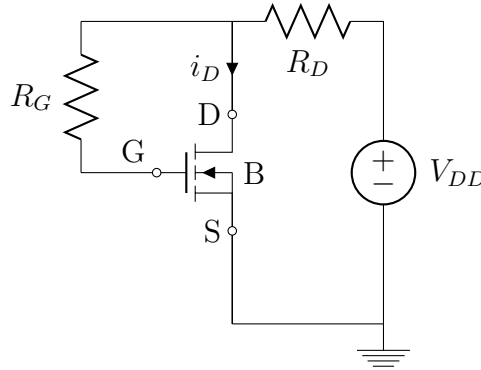
Figure 10.23:   Circuit Diagram for Problem 10.1

Answer: *(a) $I_{DS} = K(V_{GS} - V_T)^2$ leads to $K = 2 \times 10^{-4} A/V$. (b) Since $I_{DS} = 0.2mA$. $R_D = 75K\Omega$.*

Problem 10.2 *Knowing that for a FET, the drain current i_D and gate-to-source voltage v_{GS} at Q-point has the following identities*

$$i_D = I_{DQ} + i_d, \quad v_{GS}(t) = V_{GSQ} + v_{gs}(t), \quad i_D = K(v_{GS} - V_{themal})^2$$

(a) Find the trans-conductance $g_m = \frac{i_d}{v_{gs}}$. (b) Plot the small signal equivalent circuit.
Answer:
$$\frac{di_D}{dv_{GS}}|_Q = 2K(v_{GS} - V_{thermal})$$
Thus, $i_d = 2K(v_{GS} - V_{thermal})v_{gs}$.
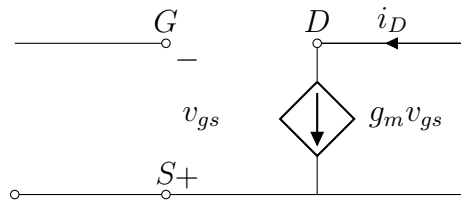
Figure 10.24: Circuit Diagram for Problem 10.2

Chapter 11

PSpice Simulation Procedures

PSpice is a PC version of SPICE (which is currently available from OrCAD Corp. of Cadence Design Systems, Inc.). A student version (with limited capabilities) comes with various textbooks. The OrCAD student edition is called PSpice AD Lite. The PSpice Light version has the following limitations: circuits have a maximum of 64 nodes, 10 transistors and 2 operational amplifiers[6]-[11].

In this final chapter, we will pile up all the simulation results in each Chapter, obtained by using PSpice 9.1/9.2 simulation program. It is assumed that the readers have a PSpice program installed and have learned some basic knowledge such as
• Create a new Analog, mixed AD project.
• Place circuit parts.
• Connect the parts.
• Specify values and names.
If not, there are many wonderful web sites [6]-[11] providing such information and readers are encouraged to search and browse suitable web sites for a quick start.

Note: All circuits for **Examples** and **PSpiceLab** are drawn and tested when preparing the PSpice simulations. The step by step procedure for conducting a PSpice simulation is written along with the corresponding circuits. Most elements can be found by part search, if not, try searching GND directory by clicking Part / Ground / CAPSYM where a ground node can be found. (DON'T FORGET to name it 0, otherwise PSpice won't run)

11.1   Chapter 1

There are three PSpice lab experiments in this chapter. Aimed at introducing type of simulation analysis (Bias, DC sweep, AC sweep, and Time transient), this chapter brings **DC sweep** and **Time transient** analysis into attentions. All simulation procedures are listed, side by side, with PSpice circuits. It is imperative that first-time readers follow the step by step instructions to gain experiences and then modify

them later.

11.2   Chapter 2

The focus of this Chapter is to be familiar with the voltage polarities, current directions. They are assigned according to passive element convention, mostly, before computations. Yet, the calculated results can be different and how to interpret these result and to confirm with PSpice becomes important. All examples are verified via PSpice using Bias Point analysis.

11.3   Chapter 3

Circuit theorems are the focus of this chapter where equivalent circuits are sought. Among them, Thevenin and Norton equivalents are important. By attaching a switch across the terminals of interest, Pspice can be used to plot V_{oc} and I_{sc}, resulting in Thevenin and Norton equivalent circuits. Another approach is connecting 1 MEGΩ and 1 mΩ resistors, respectively at the terminals to find V_{oc} and I_{sc}, respectively. All examples solved via node-voltage and loop-current method are verified by PSpice. Superposition is verified by zeroing the sources.

For Chapter 1 to Chapter 3, DC bias point analysis is the main simulation tool in PSpice for DC circuit analysis.

11.4   Chapter 4

Turning to a new chapter, sinusoidal signal representing Alternating Current is introduced. Other than magnitude values, angle information is involved in dealing AC circuit, resulting in phasor representation of AC signals. Therefore, the complex computation is more involved than real number computations. Bias point analysis fails to provide a correct answer. Instead, sinusoidal steady-state solution requires **Frequency Sweep** for a single frequency and markers to show magnitudes and phases are often seen. Auxiliary commands/parts IPRINT and VPRINT2 are used to save the complex results into output files.

11.5   Chapter 5

In this chapter, we introduce switching circuits where ISIN, VSIN are the main current and voltage sources because this is a time solution which requires a fixed frequency in Hz be given. **Time Domain Transient** is the key analytical tool.

11.6 Chapter 6

This chapter focuses on frequency responses where VAC and IAC are selected for such purpose. **AC Sweep** is used to generate frequency responses. DB command and log scale are often seen in plotting a frequency response. In addition, filters and resonances are demonstrated via PSpice.

11.7 Chapter 7

For diodes circuits, we use PSpice to investigate $i-v$ characteristics of two important diodes, real diodes and Zener diodes and some examples on clipper circuits. DC sweep and Time transient are repeated here. Yet more plotting techniques are introduced. For example, (1) change the variables of x-axis, whose default variable is Time. (b) How to add text, line, find extremes, and/or insert its datum to an existing plot for better presentation of output.

11.8 Chapter 8

Since only two op-amps are allowed to use, we demonstrate via PSpice that an ideal amplifier is equivalent to a voltage-controlled voltage source from an input-output perspective. So VCVS can be a substitute for op-amps if more than two op-amps are needed. Butterworth low-pass filter constructed by op-amp are demonstrated in frequency and transient response.

11.9 Chapter 9

For BJT circuits, we introduce dual **DC Sweep** to generate output characteristic of a common-emitter BJT amplifier. With the load line technique taught in Chapter 7. Reader are able to find Q-point for small-signal analysis. Furthermore, such Q-point cab be found directly by DC bias point analysis,without using load line, .

11.10 Chapter 10

Again the dual **DC Sweep** learned from Chapter 9 works well for MOSFETs when $i-v$ characteristic curve are desired to plot. Load line analysis is repeated in this chapter for n enhanced MOSFETs where Q point analysis is obtained by load line as well as DC bias point. To appreciate the huge applications of MOSFETs in modern PC and communications, a CMOS inverter gate is demonstrated as a logic gate in this chapter.

11.11   PSpice Circuit Diagrams

Starting from next page, the circuit examples in this Reader are drawn and run by PSpice. To run the simulations, simple follow the step by step procedures written, mainly, for each circuit. Hope this will help!
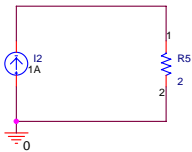
1. Construct the circuit on the left.
2. To verify Ohms' Law, open up the Simulation Settings and check DC Sweep/Primary Sweep, fill in the variable name I2, then Start value 0, End value 10, and increment 2 using linear scale.
3. Run the simulation by clicking the Big Blue Right Arrow.
4. When the probe window shows up, click Trace/Add Trace to find V1(R5) for output.
5. To find the numerical value of a particular point, click Trace/Cursor to get the cursor, move the cursor to the point you want, and click Plot/Label/Mark to add the numerical value on the graph.
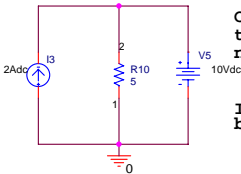
Or simply choose DC Bias Point analysis by editing Simulation Settings again. Then run the simulation. After that, click V and/or I to obtain the answer right away. But notice that this is valid only for one-time solution.

In the second example, there are two independent sources. You may explore the solution by using DC analysis again.
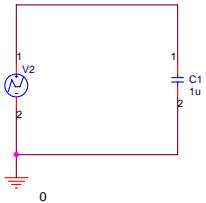
1. Construct the circuit on the left.
2. To verify Faradays' Law, open up the Simulation Settings and select Time Domain Transient analysis, set time period to 0.01ms.
3. Run the simulation.
4. When Probe window pops up, click Trace/Add Trace to select V1(V2) and I(C1), using comma to seperate them.

You may use the circuit above with C being replaced by L and voltage source replaced by IPWL, then verify the Henry's Law v=L di/dt. Or equivalently, check its intergral form as shown in the last circuit.
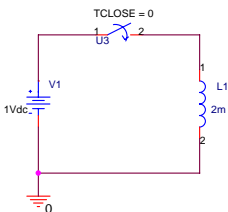
1. Construct the circuit on the left.
2. Open up the Simulation Settings, click Time Domain Transient and fill in Tstop=40ms.
3. Click the Blue Arrow.
4. When the Probe Window shows up, click Trace/Add Trace to add I(L1) and see the result.

Title			
	Electrical Laws		
Size A4	Document Number Chapter 1, JCLO		Rev 1
Date:	Wednesday, August 24, 2011	Sheet 1 of 1	

To solve DC circuits for current and voltage is to
1. Open up the Simulation Settings and select Bias Point analysis.
2. Run the simulation by clicking the Big Blue Arrow.
3. Once it is done, click V, I, W icons respectively to find solutions printed on the circuits.
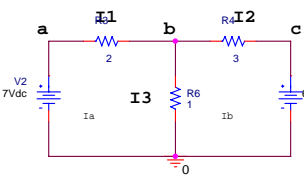
Example 2.5-2.7
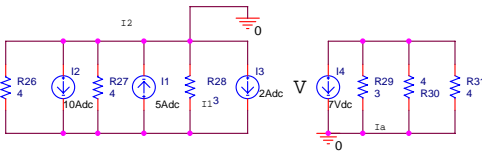
Example 2.13
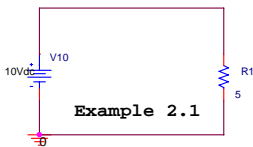
Example 2.1
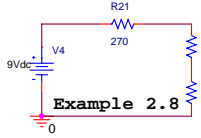
Example 2.8
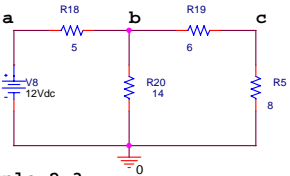
Example 2.3
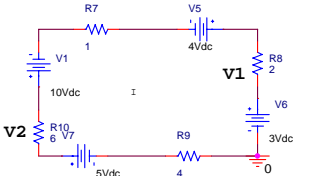
Example 2.10
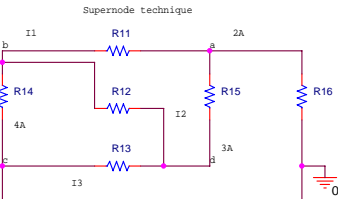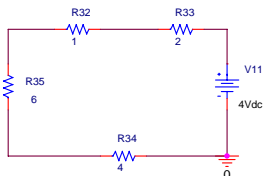
Example 2.4
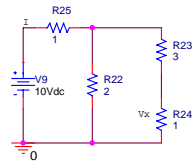
Example 2.12

Title			
	Circuit Laws		
Size	Document Number		Rev
A4	Chapter 2, Page 1, JCLO		1
Date:	Wednesday, August 24, 2011	Sheet 1 of 1	

v-i Characteristics for Thevenin equivalent
1. Construct the circuits below.
2. Open up the Simulation Settings, check the Time Domain Transient analysis, and set time period to 10ms.
3. Run the simulation. (it is noted that the switch yields short- and open-circuits)
4. Click Trace/Add Trace to select I(U?:2).for y-axis.
5. Since time domain t is the default x-axis, we need to change it. Click Plot/Axis Setting/Axis Variables to select x axis = V(U?:2). The slope is 1/R.
6. If one exahcnges x and y axis, then the slope is R.
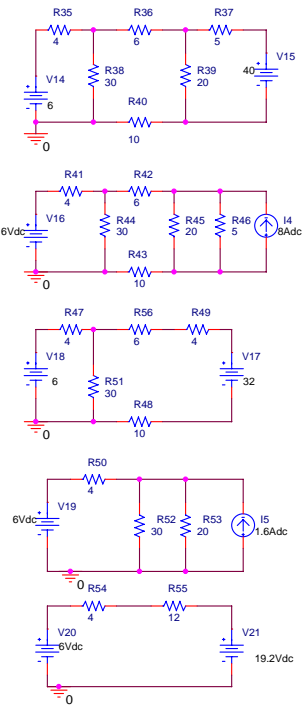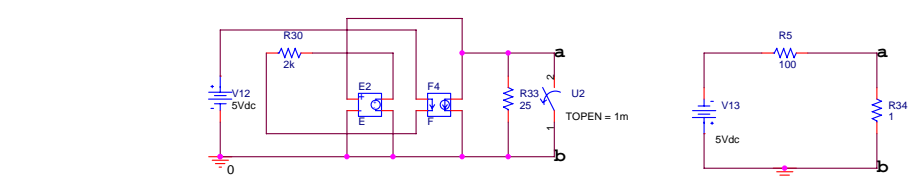
Examples 3.5
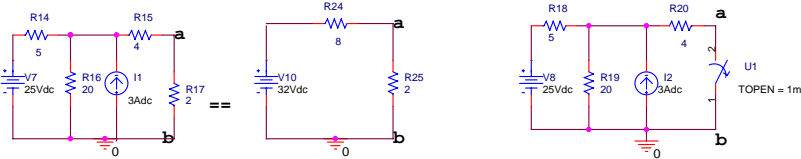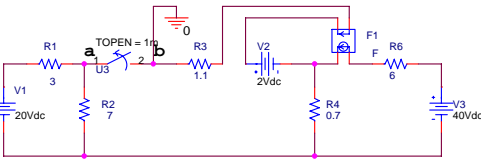
Examples 3.3-3.4

Example 3.2
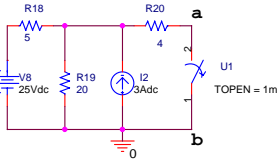
Title				
	DC Circuit Analysis, Equivalence and Thevenin			
Size	Document Number			Rev
A4	Chapter 3, Page 1, JCLO			1
Date:	Wednesday, August 24, 2011	Sheet	1 of 4	

Loop-Current Approach
To find solutions for the the problems below is straightforward.
1. Open up Simulation Settings and choose Bias Point analysis.
2. Click the Big Blue Arrow to Run.
3. After simulation is complete, click V and I icon at the top of Capture menu.
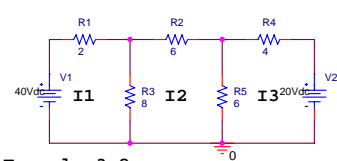
Example 3.8
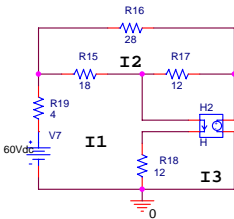
Example 3.11
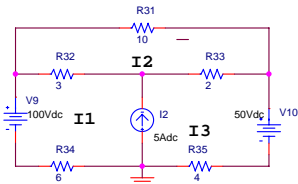
Example 3.14
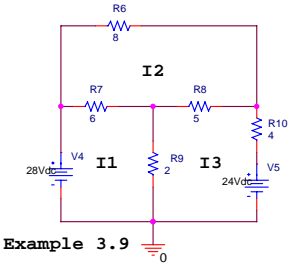
Example 3.9
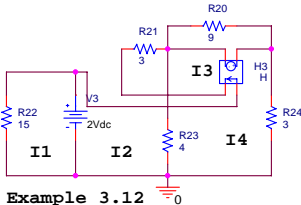
Example 3.12
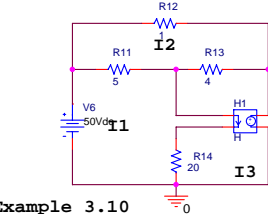
Example 3.10
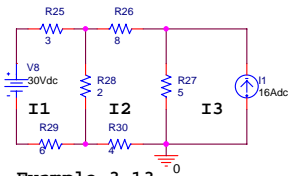
Example 3.13

Title	DC Circuit Analysis				
Size A4	Document Number Chapter 3, Page 2, JCLO				Rev 1
Date:	Wednesday, August 24, 2011	Sheet	2	of	4

Node-Voltage Approach
To find solutions for the the problems below is straightforward.
1. Open up the Simulation Settings and choose Bias Point analysis.
2. Click the Big Blue Arrow to Run.
3. After simulation is complete, click V and I icon at the top of Capture menu.

Va R36 **Vb**

I3 5Adc R39 16 R38 20 R37 80 I4 12Adc

Example 3.16 0

Va R56 **Vb** R57

I10 4.5Adc R54 1 R55 12 V11 30Vdc

Example 3.19 0

Va R40 **Vb** R41

I5 20Adc R44 2 R43 10 R42 4 I6 1Adc

Example 3.17 0

R58 **Va**

V12 24Vdc R60 15 I11 1Adc R59 10

Example 3.21 0

R50 9

R49 3

F2 F

Va

Va

R53 15 I9 2Adc R51 4 R52 3

0 **Example 3.17**

F1 F

Va R45 **Vb**

I7 1.5Adc R46 4 R47 20 R48 5 I8 16Adc

Example 3.18 0

Node-Voltage Approach
To find solutions for the the problems below is straightforward.
1. Open up Simulation Settings and choose Bias Point analysis.
2. Click Run.
3. After simulation is complete, cick V and I icon at the top of Capture menu.

For supersition techniques
1. Basically this uses Bias Point analysis.
2. Replace on current source by an open circuit and replace an voltage source by an short circuit and leave only one active source to run.
3. Leave dependent sources alone.
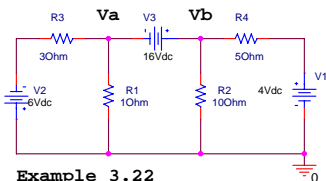
Superposition

Example 3.22

Example 3.26

=== **Isource=0** **+** **Vsource=0**
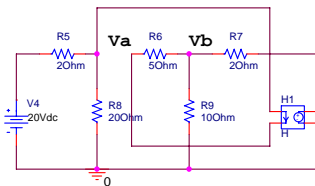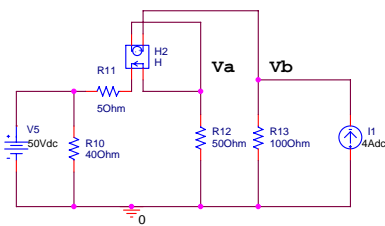
Example 3.23

Example 3.24

Example 3.27 **===** **Vsource=0** **+** **Vsource=0**

Title	DC Circuit Analysis					
Size	Document Number					Rev
A4	Chapter 3, Page 4, JCLO					1
Date:	Wednesday, August 24, 2011	Sheet	4	of	4	

Example 4.3

R1 90
L1 32mH
V1
C1 5uF
VOFF = 0
VAMPL = 750
FREQ = 795.775
0

Freq=5000/2pi=795.775

IPRINT
R2 90
L2 32mH
V3
750Vac
0Vdc
C2 5uF
0

AC Power

V2
VOFF = 0
VAMPL = 180
FREQ = 15915.5078
C6 10u
0
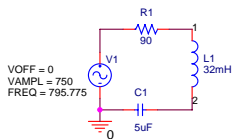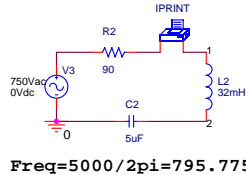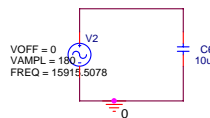
Real P=vi=180*180m/2=16.2W

Reactive P=vi=180*180*cos(-90/57.3)/2=0Var

180cos(10^5t), R=1k, C=10u, L=10u
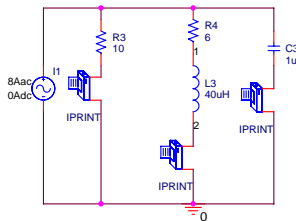
Example 4.4
Freq=200000/2pi=31831.015

R3 10
R4 6
C3 1u
I1 8Aac 0Adc
L3 40uH
IPRINT
IPRINT
IPRINT
0
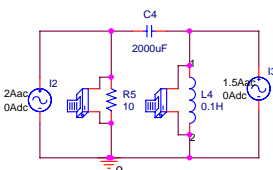
Example 4.5
Freq=100/2pi=15.915

C4 2000uF
I2 2Aac 0Adc
R5 10
L4 0.1H
I3 1.5Aac 0Adc
0

ACMAG = 10Vac
ACPHASE = -90
V6
IPRINT
L5 0.1H
R6 100
C5 10uF
IPRINT
IPRINT
0
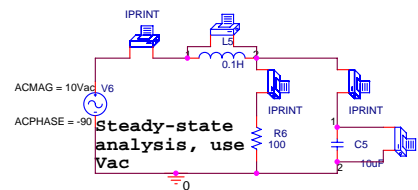
Steady-state analysis, use Vac

1. To find transient response selects Vsin/Isin functions as sources.
2. draw the circuit.
3. Open up the Simulation Settings to select Time Domain Transient and fill in the time period.
4. Run the simulatiion.
5. When probe window appears, click Trace/Add Trace to add desired variables for plottings.
5. Actually, the steady-statee magnitude still can be found from the time trajectory.

1. To find steady-state response needs Vac/Iac functions
2. Select Simulation Settings/AC Sweep analysis and let Start = End frequency, using frequency in Hz, w=2\pi f, NOT in w.
3. Click PSpice/Markers/Advanced and select appropriate markers, connect them to the node.
4. Run the simulation.
5. Results will be shown on the probe window.
6. Another way is to place VPRINT2 and IPRINT in circuits and the outputs are saved in the output text fiile.

Title			
	Steady-State Anlysis		
Size A4	Document Number Chapter4, Page 1		Rev 1
Date:	Monday, October 31, 2011	Sheet 1	of 1

R7
30

V4
360Vdc

R8
150

R9
{RL}

0

Maximum Power Transfer
1. Construct the circuit on the left.
2. Click R9 and fill in the value with {RL} (curly bracket is necessary)
3. Click Place Part/Special/PARAM and drag it to the place near R9.
4. Click the PARAMETERS to edit its property by adding a new column RL, insert a value except zero.
4. Click DC Sweep, check Global Parameter and give it a name RL, fill in (0:1:100) for sweeping range.
5. After Probe Window shows up, click Trace/Add Trace, select W(R9), to see the output vurve.

Tranisent simulation
1. Open up Simulation Settings and choose Time Domain Transient analysis.
2. Fill in the Stop time. (Some suggestions are given)
3. Click Run.
4. Clici Trace/Add Trace to select the variables of concern.
5 .Check if the time trajectory is what you expect.

Example 5.1

L1 2mH
R1 25
C1 2uF
U1 TOPEN = 0
I1 2Adc
0

Example 5.2

TCLOSE = 0 R2
L2 2mH
U3 V8 20Vdc
5
R3 10
C2 2uF
R4 10
0
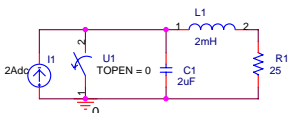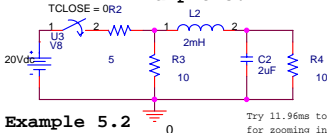
Try 11.96ms to 12.06ms for zooming in.

Example 5.3

TCLOSE = 5m R7 50
U5
V2 100Vdc
L4 0.1
tau=L/R=0.002, TSTOP=5tau.
0

TCLOSE = 0m R5 10k
U4
V1 10Vdc
C3 1uF
R6 10k
tau=RC/2=0.005, TSTOP=5tau.
0

Example 5.4

TCLOSE = 0 R8 10k
TCLOSE = 60ms
U6
U8
V3 10Vdc
C4 1uF
R9 10k
tau=RC=0.01, TSTOP=5tau.
tau=RC/2=0.005, TSTOP=5tau.
0

Example 5.5

I3 1Adc
R10 4k
U9 TOPEN = 5ms
R11 1k
C5 1u
tau=(R1+R2)C=0.005, TSTOP=5tau.
0

Example 5.6

R14 4k
TOPEN = 12ms
U7
TCLOSE = 12ms R13
U10
20
V4 90
C6 0.5u
R12 60
V5 40
tau=RC=2m, TSTOP=5tau.
tau=7.52u, TSTOP=5tau.
0

Example 5.7

R15 2
TOPEN = 0.5
U11
TCLOSE = 0.5
U12
I4 8Adc
V6 24Vdc
L3 200mH
R16 10
tau=L/R=0.1, TSTOP=5tau.
tau=L/R=0.02, TSTOP=5tau.
0

R18 18
IPRINT
V9 120 0Vdc
C8 0.7mF
0

Steady-state selects Vac & AC sweep

TCLOSE = 0 R17 18
U13
V7
VOFF = 0
VAMPL = 169.68
FREQ = 9.549
C7 0.7mF
0
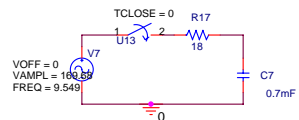
tau=RC=0.0126,TSTOP=5tau. Noting cos should be changed to sin, adding 90 in phase.

Example 5.8

Title	Transient Analysis			
Size A4	Document Number Chapter 5, Page 1			Rev 1
Date:	Monday, October 31, 2011	Sheet 1	of	1

PARAMETERS:
RESISTANCE = 10k

C1
0.125uF
IC = 0V

L1
8H
IC = -12.25mA

R1
{RESISTANCE}
Use Parameter sweep

Examples 5.11-5.12

TCLOSE = 0
U2

C2
0.5uF
IC = 30V

L2
0.5H
IC = 0A

R2
400

TSTOP=5m

Example 5.13

TCLOSE = 0
U3
R3
560

C3
0.1uF
IC = 100

L3
100mH
IC = 0

TSTOP=3m

Example 5.14

TOPEN = 2
U5

TCLOSE = 2
U4

PARAMETERS:
RESISTENCE = 200
Use Parameter sweep

R5
200

R4
200

L4
10uH

V1
10Vdc

C5
1mF

RC=0.2
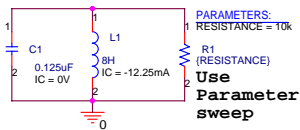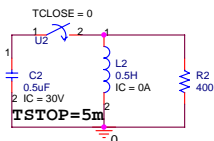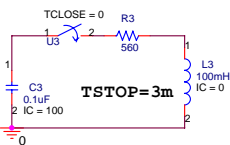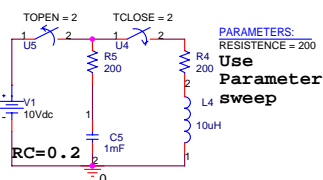
Example 5.15
TSTOP=10. Also try 10uH for inductor whose charateristic equation is 10^-5s^2+400s+1000

24m I1

U6
TOPEN = 0

C6
25n

L5
25m

R6
400

Example 5.16

TCLOSE = 0
U7
R7
280

V2
48Vdc

TSTOP=3ms, freq=764.944Hz

L6
0.1H

C4
0.4u

Example 5.17

TCLOSE = 0
U8
R8
100

V3
VOFF = 0
VAMPL = 10
FREQ = 9.549

TSTOP=0.3s

L7
1H

C7
25uF

R9
100

V4
10Vac
0Vdc

IPRINT

L8
1H

C8
25uF
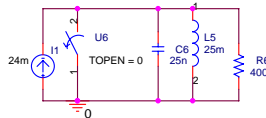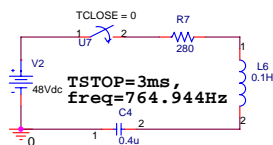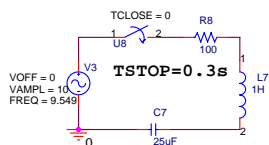
Example 5.19

Tranisent simulation
1. Open up Simulation Settings and choose Time Domain Transient analysis.
2. Fill in the Stop time.
3. Click Run.
4. When Probe Window appears, click Trace/Add Trace to add variables of concerns to see the plot.

Parameter Sweep
1. Open up Simulation Settings and select Time Domain Transient/Parameter Sweep.
2. Fill in Parameter Name xxx. and select a Sweep type or key in a few values of interests in the List.
3. Go back to your circuit and click the element to name its value to be {xxx}
4. Click Run.
5. See the results.

---

hpin⟫

C5
0.001uF

⟫hpout

V2
1Vac
0Vdc

R5
10k

0
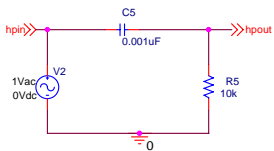
Example 6.2 -- Use VAC for frequency sweep
1. Construct the circuit on the left.
2. Click Simulation Settings, select Frequency Sweep, fill in (10:10:10E6).
3. When Probe Window appears, clcik Trace/Add Trace to add V(hpout) for linear scale
or DB(V(hpout)) for log scale to generate the results.

R1
Input ⟫
159.155
⟫Output

V4
VOFF = 0
VAMPL = 5
FREQ = 10

V5
VOFF = 0
VAMPL = 5
FREQ = 100

Transient simulation

C1
10uF

V6
VOFF = 0
VAMPL = 5
FREQ = 1000

0
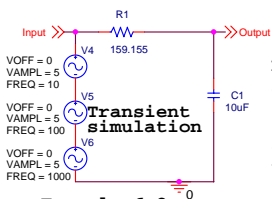
Example 6.3

Example 6.3
1. Construct the circuit on the left.
2. Open up Simulation Settings, select Time Domain Transient, fill in Stop time=100ms.
3. Run the Simulation.
4. When the Probe Window appears, click Trace/Add Trace to add V(output) and V(input)
to see results, respectively.

R2
159.155

V7
5Vac
0Vdc

C2
10uF

0

For Bode Plot
1. Use VAC source.
2. Open up Simulation Settings, select AC Sweep and fill in frequency range
(0.1:10:10E4).
3. When Probe Window appears, click Trace/Add Trace to add DB(V1(C2)) for log scale.

R6
4.22

V3
1Vac
0Vdc

1
L3
4uF

C6
0.01u
2

0
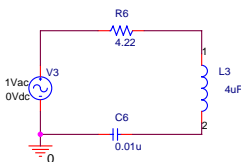
Example 6.4
1. Construct the circuit on the left.
2. Open up Simulation Settings, click AC Sweep, fill in (1K:10 10E6) and check log
scale.
3. Run the Simulations.
4. When the Prob Windeow appears, click Trace/Add Trace to add DB(I(L3))
Freq=796159Hz<=>5002410rad/sec=w
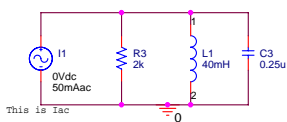
Example 6.6 -- Use IAC for frequency sweep
1. Construct the circuit on the left.
2. Click Simulation Settings, select Frequency Sweep, fill in (100:10:100K).
3. When Probe Window appears, clcik Trace/Add Trace to add I(R3) for linear scale or DB(I(R3)) for log scale to generate the results.

Circuit (top left):
I1 — 0Vdc 50mAac — "This is Iac"
R3 2k
L1 40mH
C3 0.25u
0 (ground)
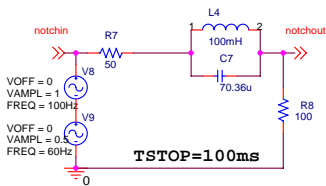
Example 6.7 Notch Filter
1. Construct the circuit on the left.
2. Open up Simulation Settings, select Time Domain Transient, fill in Stop time=100ms.
3. Run the Simulation.
4. When the Probe Window appears, click Trace/Add Trace to add V(notchout) and V(notchin)-V9 to see results, respectively.
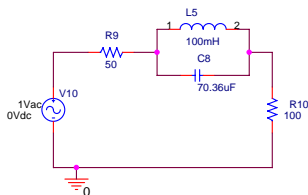
Circuit (second left):
notchin
R7 50
L4 100mH
C7 70.36u
notchout
R8 100
V8 — VOFF = 0, VAMPL = 1, FREQ = 100Hz
V9 — VOFF = 0, VAMPL = 0.5, FREQ = 60Hz
TSTOP=100ms
0 (ground)

For Bode Plot
1. Use VAC source.
2. Open up Simulation Settings, select AC Sweep and fill in frequency range (10:10:100).
3. When Probe Window appears, click Trace/Add Trace to add DB(V1(R10)) for log scale.

Circuit (third left):
R9 50
L5 100mH
C8 70.36uF
R10 100
V10 — 1Vac 0Vdc
0 (ground)
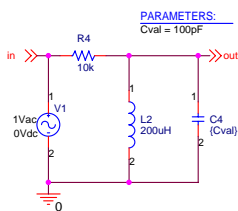
Example 6.9
1. Construct the circuit on the left.
2. Click C4 and fill in the value with {Cval} (the curly bracket is necessary)
3. Click Place Part/Special/PARAM and drag it to the place near C4.
4. Click the PARAMETERS to edit its property by adding a new column Cval, insert a value except zero.
5. Click dual AC Sweep, set (300K:10:3M) for primary, check Global Parameter and give it a name Cval, key in (100p, 200p, 300p) for Value list.
6. After Probe Window shows up, click Trace/Add Trace, select V(out), to see the output curve.

Circuit (bottom left):
PARAMETERS:
Cval = 100pF
in
R4 10k
out
V1 — 1Vac 0Vdc
L2 200uH
C4 {Cval}
0 (ground)

R3
1k

V3
0Vdc

D4
1

D1N4002
2

0

1. Construct the circuit diagram on the left.
2. Open up the Simiulation Settings by selecting DC Sweep where a dialog box will show up. Fill in sweep variable name V3 and sweep type (linear, start value -10, end value 2 and increments 0.1)
3. Run the simulation by clicking the blue solid right arrow.
4. After a blank graphic probe window appears, click Trace\Add Trace to add trace I(D4) for y-axis. Since the x-axis should be V(D4), we click Plot\Axis Settings to open up a dialog box and click axis variables to find V(D4:1).

R1
1k

V9

D10
2
D1N4002
1

V2
6Vdc

0
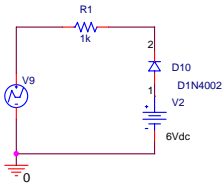
1. Construct the circuit on the left.
2. Use Transient analysis. Set final time to10ms.
3. Run the simulation by clcking the big right arrow on the menu.
4. Click Trace\Add Trace to add input and output signals, V1(V9) and V2(D10)), respectively.
5. To find the transfer function, change x-axis in time to V1(V9).
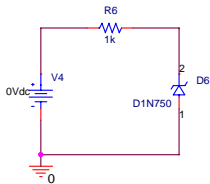
1. Construct the circuit diagram on the left.
2. Edit simiulation settings by selecting DC sweep where a dialog box will show up. Fill in Sweep Variable name V4 and Sweep Type (linear, start value 0, end value 20 and increments 0.1)
3. Run the simulation by clicking the blue solid right arrow.

R6
1k

V4
0Vdc

D6
2
D1N750
1

0

4. After a blank graphic probe window appears, click Trace\Add Trace to add trace -I(D6) for y-axis. Since the x-axis should be V(D6), we click Plot\Axis Settings to open up a dialog box and click axis variables to find V(D6:2).
5. Draw a load line by clicking Plot\Label\Line and then draw the line from y-axis to x-axis or vice versa.

6. Find cursor from Trace\Cursur and click the intersection Q-point. Once this is done, go back to Plot\Label\Mark to insert the numerical value of the load line.
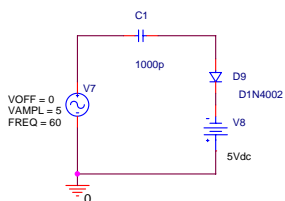
Title			
	Diodes		
Size	Document Number		Rev
A4	Chapter 7, Page 1, JCLO		1
Date:	Tuesday, November 08, 2011	Sheet 1 of 2	

C1

1000p

V7
VOFF = 0
VAMPL = 5
FREQ = 60

D9
D1N4002

V8
5Vdc

0

1. Construct the circuit on the left.
2. Use Transient analysis. Set final time to 33.33m.
3. Run the simulation by clcking the big right arrow on the menu.
4. Click Trace\Add Trace to add input and output signals, V1(V7) and V1(D9), respectively.
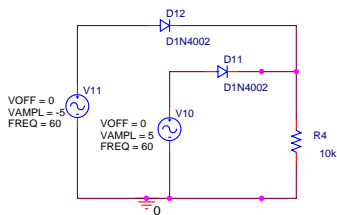
D12
D1N4002

D11
D1N4002

V11
VOFF = 0
VAMPL = -5
FREQ = 60

V10
VOFF = 0
VAMPL = 5
FREQ = 60

R4
10k

0

1. Construct the circuit on the left.
2. Use Transient analysis. Set final time to 33.33m.
3. Run the simulation by clcking the big right arrow on the menu.
4. Click Trace\Add Trace to add input and output signals, V1(R4).
5. Add one smoothing capacitor in parallel with the load.

R2
2k

V1
VOFF = 0
VAMPL = 15
FREQ = 60

D2
D1N4002

V6
5.3Vdc

8.3Vdc

V5

D3
D1N4002

0
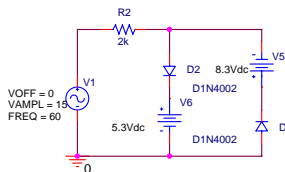
1. Use Transient analysis. Set final time to 33.33m.
2. Run simulation by clcking the big right arrow on the menu bar.
3. Click Trace/Add Trace to find V1(V1) and V1(D2)+V1(V6) respectively.
4. To find the transfer function Vout/Vin, clcik Plot/Add Plot to Window to generate a new blank plot and then Plot/Plot Settings/Axis Variables V1(V1) as x-axis and Add/Add Trace V1(D2)+V(V6) as y axis.

Title					
	Diodes				
Size	Document Number				Rev
A4	Chapter 7, Page 2, JCLO				<RevCo
Date:	Monday, October 31, 2011	Sheet	2	of	2
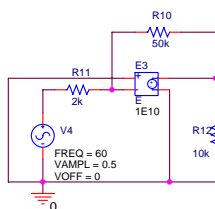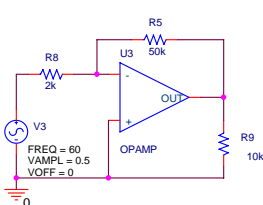
1. Construct the circuit on the left.
2. Open up the Simulation Settings and select the Traisnent analysis, setting simulation time period to 33.33ms.
3. Run the simulation.
4. Click Trace/Add Trace to add V1(R9) and V1(R12) to see identical plot, meaning VCVS = op-amp.
5. Click Trace/Cursor/Displace to find cursor and then click Plot/Label/mark to insert numerical values.

Left upper circuit 1 (U3 OPAMP):

R5 50k
R8 2k
U3 OPAMP
OUT
R9 10k
V3 FREQ = 60 VAMPL = 0.5 VOFF = 0
0

Left upper circuit 2 (E3):

R10 50k
R11 2k
E3 E 1E10
R12 10k
V4 FREQ = 60 VAMPL = 0.5 VOFF = 0
0
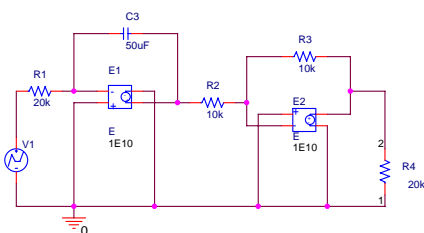
1. Construct the circuit on the left.
2. To verify integration, open up the Simulation Settings and select Time Domain Transient analysis, set time period to 4s. where pulse function of 4 second is given by VPWL.
3. Run the simulation.
4. When Probe window pops up, click Trace/Add Trace to select V1(V1) and V2(R2), using comma to seperate them.

Middle circuit:

C3 50uF
R1 20k
E1 E 1E10
R2 10k
R3 10k
E2 E 1E10
R4 20k
V1
2
1
0
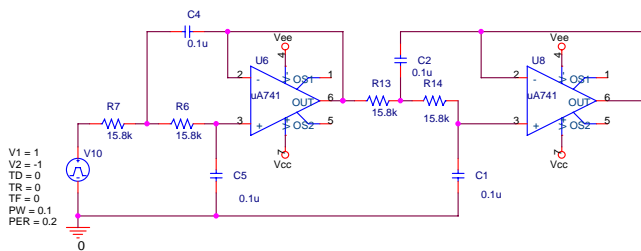
To obtain Frequency response, use VAC
1. Construct the circuit on the left.
2. Open up Simulation Settings, click AC Sweep, fill in (1k:10:10K).
3. Click the Big Right Arrow to run the simulation.
4. When the Probe Window appears, click Trace/Add Trace to add V(U6out) and V(u8out) to see the Bode plot.

To find transient response, use VPULSE
2. Open up Simulation Settings, click AC Sweep, fill in (1k:10:10K).
3. Click the Big Right Arrow to run the simulation.
4. When the Probe Window appears, click Trace/Add Trace to add V(U6out) and V(U8out) to see the Bode plot.

VCC_CIRCLE can be found at GNG/CAPSYM
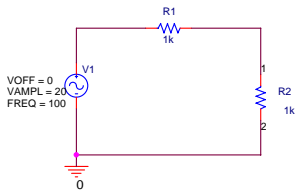
Bottom circuit:

C4 0.1u
Vee
U6 µA741
C2 0.1u
Vee
U8 µA741
R7 15.8k
R6 15.8k
R13 15.8k
R14 15.8k
V1 = 1
V2 = -1
TD = 0
TR = 0
TF = 0
PW = 0.1
PER = 0.2
V10
C5 0.1u
Vcc
C1 0.1u
Vcc
0

Vcc V9 V7 Vee
15Vdc 15Vdc
0

Title				
	Operational Amplifier			
Size A4	Document Number Chapter 8, Page 1, JCLO			Rev 1
Date:	Wednesday, August 24, 2011	Sheet 1	of 1	

R1
1k

V1
VOFF = 0
VAMPL = 20
FREQ = 100

R2
1k
1
2

0

Linear element --- V-I characteristics
1. Construct the circuit on the left.
2. Open up the Simulation Settings, check the Time Domain Transient analysis, and set time period to 10ms.
3. Run the simulation.
4. Click Trace/Add Trace to select I(R2:1). A sine wave is shown.
5. Since time domain t is the default x-axis, we need to change it. Click Plot/Axis Setting/Axis Variables to select x axis =V(R2:1).
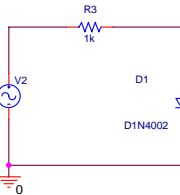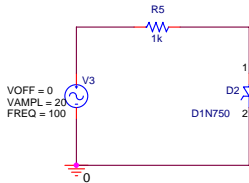
R5
1k

V3
VOFF = 0
VAMPL = 20
FREQ = 100

D2
D1N750
1
2

0

R3
1k

V2
VOFF = 0
VAMPL = 20
FREQ = 100

D1
D1N4002
1
2

0

Nolinear element --- v-i characteristics
1. Construct the circuit on the left.
2. Open up the Simulation Settings, check the Time Domain Transient analysis, and set time period to 10ms.
3. Run the simulation.
4. Click Trace/Add Trace to select I(D1:1)
5. Since time domain t is the default x-axis, we need to change it. Click Plot/Axis Setting/Axis Variables to select x axis =V(D1:1).
5. Change D to D2, Zener v-i property is obtained.
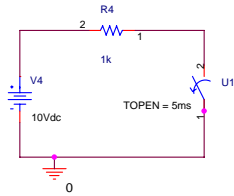
R4
1k
2
1

V4
10Vdc

U1
TOPEN = 5ms

0

v-i Characteristics for Thevenin equivalent
1. Construct the circuit on the left.
2. Open up the Simulation Settings, check the Time Domain Transient analysis, and set time period to 10ms.
3. Run the simulation. (it is noted that the switch yields short- and open-circuits)
4. Click Trace/Add Trace to select I(U1:2)
5. Since time domain t is the default x-axis, we need to change it. Click Plot/Axis Setting/Axis Variables to select x axis = V(U1:2).

Q1
Q2N3904

V7
1Vdc

I2
0Adc

0

1. To find input characteristic Ib-Vbe, use DC sweep analysis by open up the Simulation Settings and select primary for current source I2(=Ib) using (0:10u:150u).
2. Run the simulation.
3. Click Trace/Add Trace to find IB(Q1) for y-axis.
4. Click Plot/Axis Settings/Axis Variable to find V(Q1:b) - V(Q1:e) for x-axis.
5. To find output characteristic Ic-Vce, use dual DC sweep where primary sweep is V7(=Vce) using (0:0.01:10) and the second sweep is I2(=Ib) using (0:10u:50u).
6. Click Trace/Add Trace to find IC(Q1) for y-axis.
7. Click Plot/Axis Settings/Axis Variable to find V1(V7) for x-axis.

R7
1k

Q3
Q2N3904

R6
20k

V6
20Vdc

V5
1.8Vdc

0
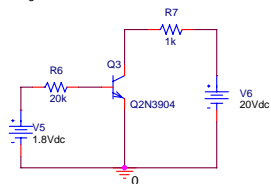
To find input characteristic Ib-Vbe, use DC sweep on v5 (0:0.01:10)
To find output characteristic Ic-Vce, use dual DC sweep on v6 (0:0.1:10) and V5 (0:0.2:2)

R63
2k

Q4
Q2N3904

R62
380k

V12
20Vdc

V11
20Vdc

0
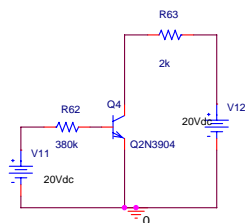
To find Q point, simply run bias point analysis and click V and I button.

R9
3.3k

C2
10u

Vout

R8
100k

Q5
Q2N2222

V9
10Vdc

R10
1MEG

V10
VOFF = 0
VAMPL = 1.8
FREQ = 1k

V8
2.1Vdc

0
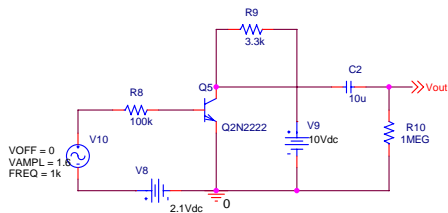
Title				
	BJT			
Size	Document Number			Rev
A4	Chapter 9, Page 2			1
Date:	Wednesday, August 24, 2011	Sheet	2 of 2	

R4
3meg

R2
4.7k

M1
Mbreakn

V1
20Vdc

R1
1meg

R3
2.7k

0

Mbreakp
M2

V2
5Vdc

V3

M3
MbreakN

0
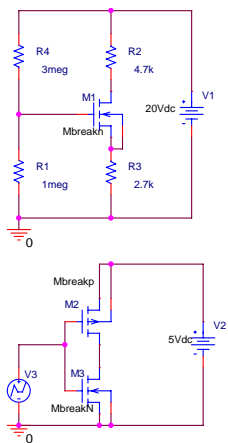
To verify input characteristic:
1. Click Place Part/Breakout/Mbreakn or Mbreakp, drag it to the
place you favor. Click the Mbreakn once and from top menu, choose
Edit/Model to add/copy the following
.MODEL Mbreakn NMOS (KP = 50E-6,Vto=2,lambda=0.01)
.MODEL Mbreakp PMOS (KP = 20E-6,Vto=-2,lambda=0.01)
to the model editor and then save it.
2. Click twice to edit NMOS, fill in W and L values.
3. Open up the Simulation Settings and select the Primary DC Sweep
for V1 (1:1:5).
4. Run the Simulation by click the Big Blue Arrow.
5. When the probe window appears, click Trace/Add Trace and select
ID(M1) for y-axis. Click Plot/Axis Setting/Axis Variables and
select V(M1,g)-V(M1,s).
6. Click Plot/Label/Line to draw the load line. When drawing,
change range of x- and y-axis if necessary.

To verify output characteristic:
1. Open up the Simulation Settings and use DC Dual Sweep. Let
Primary Sweep be V2 (1:1:30) and secondarysweep be V1 (1:1:5).
2. Run the simulation.
3. When the probe window appears, click Trace/Add Traceand select
ID(M1) for y-axis. Click Plot/AxisSetting/Axis Variables and
select V(M1,d)-V(M1,s).
4. Click Plot/Label/Line to draw the load line. When drawing,
change range of x- and y-axis if necessary.

DC Bias Point analysis
1. The easist way is to use Bias Point and then click the icons V
and I to find Q point.

CMOS Inverter Gate
1. Construct the circuit on the left.
2. Open up Simulation Setting and choose Time Domain
Transient analysis for 5 sec.
3. Run the simulation by clicking the big blue arrow.
4. After the probe window appears, click Trace/Add
Trace to select V1(V3) and V(M2:d) for outputs.
5. Adjust range of y-axis for better presentation.

Title					
	MOSFET				
Size	Document Number				Rev
A4	Chapter 10, Page 1				1
Date:	Monday, October 31, 2011	Sheet	1	of	1

Index

Bibliography

[1] A. R. Hambley, *Electrical Engineering, Principles and Applications, third Edition.* Prentice Hall, 2005.

[2] C. R. Paul, *Fundamentals of Electric Circuits Anslyis.* Wiley, 2001.

[3] J. W. Nilsson, *Electric Circuits.* Addison Wesley, 1984.

[4] P. Z. Peebles and T. A. Giuma, *Principles of Elecrical Engineering.* McGraw Hill, 1991.

[5] J. Clemons, F. Kerr, F. Evangelisti and C. Klingensmith *Introductory Electronic Devices and Circuits.* Prentice Hall, 1994.

[6] http://www.ee.cyu.edu.tw/garylee/pspice/animation/index.htm

[7] http://www.seas.upenn.edu/ jan/spice/PSpicePrimer.pdf

[8] http://www.electronics-lab.com/downloads/schematic/013/tutorial/PSPICE.pdf

[9] http://people.msoe.edu/ saadat/pspiceintro253.htm

[10] http://www1bpt.bridgeport.edu/ thapa/eleg458/tut/pspice/ PSPICE_MOS_TUT5.pdf

[11] http://www.ee.nmt.edu/ rison/ee321_fall02/Tutorial.html
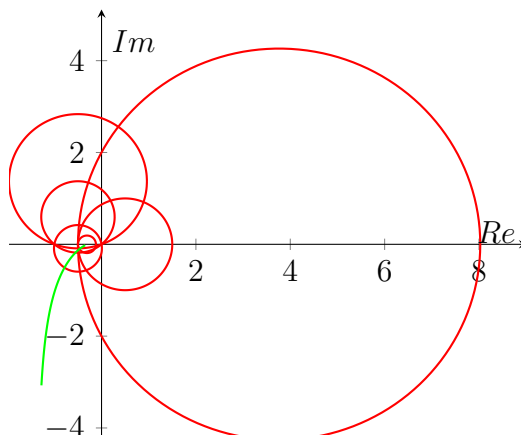
$$G(s) = \frac{50}{s(s+3)(s+6)}$$

About the author

J.C. LO is a Professor of Mechanical Engineering at National Central University, Taiwan, receiving his Ph.D. degree in Electrical Engineering from Michigan State University, East Lansing, Michigan, in 1990. Since graduation, he jointed the Mechanical Engineering, actively teaching in circuits, microprocessor, and automatic control and deeply indulging in the area of fuzzy, robust, linear and nonlinear control.

He has served as a regular peer reviewer for many renowned technical Journals and Institutions, domestic and abroad. His current interests focus on homogenously polynomial parameter dependent Lyapunov methods analyzing stability/stabilization problems via Linear Matrix Inequalities and Sum of Squares, with publication credits for numerous papers and reports in his area of expertise.

National Central University `http://www.ncu.edu.tw` **Cover Illustration by J.C. LO**

LO